Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/materialsforgerm00buchuoft

G.Gr
B9194m

MATERIALS

FOR

GERMAN PROSE COMPOSITION;

OR,

Selections from Modern English Writers,

WITH

GRAMMATICAL NOTES, IDIOMATIC RENDERINGS OF DIFFICULT PASSAGES, A GENERAL INTRODUCTION, AND A GRAMMATICAL INDEX.

BY

Karl Adolph
(C.) A. BUCHHEIM, PHIL. Doc., F.C.P.,

PROFESSOR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN KING'S COLLEGE LONDON; EXAMINER IN GERMAN TO THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON.

SEVENTH EDITION.

221522.
21.3.28.

LONDON:
GEORGE BELL AND SONS, YORK STREET,
COVENT GARDEN.
1881.

LONDON:
R. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR,
BREAD STREET HILL, E. C.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PAGE

PREFACE vii
GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION xiii

PART I.

MINOR EXTRACTS 1

PART II.

I.—THE DEFENCE OF A FORD . . (*Walter Scott*) 14
II.—SCHILLER'S FLIGHT FROM STUTTGART (*Thomas Carlyle*) 17
III.—SILHOUETTES 19
IV.—PERHAPS IT WAS HIS UNCLE . (*Sir S. W. Baker*) 20
V.—A ROMAN STRATAGEM . . (*Prof. George Long*) 21
VI.—A SIGN OF THE TIMES . . . . (*H. Merivale*) 25
VII.—THE SHAKERS' DINNER . . (*Hepworth Dixon*) 27
VIII.—BEN JONSON 29
IX.—A MAIDEN SPEECH . . . . . (*Macaulay*) 30
X.—A SELF-DUBBED MESSENGER . . (*Capt. Hozier*) 33
XI.—DON JOHN OF AUSTRIA. . . . . (*Motley*) 34
XII.—WORSE THAN HIS REPUTATION (*W. G. Palgrave*) 36
XIII.—SPEEDY PROMOTION . . . . (*Sir Edw. Cust*) 39
XIV.—GOETHE AT THE AGE OF TWENTY (*G. H. Lewes*) 41

PAGE

XV.—The Pilgrims . . . . . (*G. Bancroft*) 44
XVI.—Slave-making Instinct of Ants . (*Darwin*) 47
XVII.—The Battle of the Alma . . . (*Kinglake*) 49
XVIII.—The Apostle of the Goths . . . . (*Gibbon*) 53
XIX.—The Prairie . . . . . (*E. Dicey*) 55
XX.—Chivalry in Spain . . . . . (*Prescott*) 57
XXI.—Charles the Great . . . . . (*J. Bryce*) 59
XXII.—Love of Flowers . . . . . (*J. Ruskin*) 62
XXIII.—Life among the Bedouins . . . (*Layard*) 64
XXIV.—Sir Sidney Smith at Bath . . (*De Quincey*) 67
XXV.—Of Style 70
XXVI.—The Border Feuds . . . . (*G. A. Froude*) 72
XXVII.—A German Hautboy-player . . . (*Southey*) 74
XXVIII.—Cranford . . . . . (*Mrs. Gaskell*) 76
XXIX.—Before the Battle of Königgrätz (*Capt. Hozier*) 79
XXX.—A Disputed Boundary (*Dr. W. B. Carpenter*) 82
XXXI.—Thomas Carlyle to Goethe (A Letter) . . 84
XXXII.—A Sturdy Squire . . . (*Miss A. Strickland*) 88
XXXIII.—The History of Sciences (*Prof. Max Müller*) 91
XXXIV.—The Wartburg . . . . . (*Dean Stanley*) 94

PART III.

I.—A Letter from Charlotte Brontë 98
II.—Wildbad . . . . . (*Wilkie Collins*) 99
III.—Death of James I. of Scotland (*Prof. H. Morley*) 102
IV.—The Fiords of Norway . . (*Miss Martineau*) 103
V.—Hellenic Traits in Modern Persia (*The Right Hon. W. E. Gladstone*) 106
VI.—A Night March . . . . . (*Motley*) 109
VII.—The Study of Nature (*The Rev. C. Kingsley*) 112
VIII.—A Funeral Dance . . . (*Sir S. W. Baker*) 115
IX.—Sir Robert Peel . . . . . (*B. Disraeli*) 117

PAGE

X.—A Ball at the Bastille (*The Rev. Prof. J. S. Brewer*) 119

XI.—A Popular Fallacy . . . (*Charles Lamb*) 121

XII.—A Single Combat . . . . . (*Bulwer*) 124

XIII.—German Poetry . . . . (*Matthew Arnold*) 127

XIV.—Embarkation of an Athenian Fleet (*George Grote*) 128

XV.—The Charge of Balaklava (*Dr. W. H. Russell*) 131

XVI.—A Letter from S. T. Coleridge 135

XVII.—Pigeon Chase in Samoa . (*W. T. Pritchard*) 138

XVIII.—Early Experiences . . . . (*Charles Dickens*) 140

XIX.—John Ziska . . . . . (*Henry Hallam*) 146

XX.—The Gentleman . . . . . (*R. W. Emerson*) 147

XXI.—Civilization in America (*Sir Charles Lyell*) 149

XXII.—Pepi's Cottage . . . . . (*Charles Boner*) 151

XXIII.—Barren Honours . . . . (*W. H. Prescott*) 154

XXIV.—Copyright (A Speech) . . . . . (*Macaulay*) 157

XXV.—The Election of a Pope . . . (*W. Roscoe*) 159

XXVI.—Reminiscences of Goethe (*W. M. Thackeray*) 161

XXVII.—A Parade in Canada . . (*Mrs. Jameson*) 165

XXVIII.—Dangerous Cannonades . (*Prof. J. Tyndall*) 167

XXIX.—A Prison Scene . . . . . (*Douglas Jerrold*) 170

XXX.—A Word for the Germans (From the *Pall-Mall Gazette*) 175

PART IV.

I.—Leigh Hunt . . . . . (*N. Hawthorne*) 179

II.—Byron to Goethe (A Letter) 180

III.—The Flood . . . . . (*George Eliot*) 182

IV.—Industry of Musicians . . . . (*S. Smiles*) 186

V.—Courage (An Essay) (From the *Saturday Review*) 188

VI.—Martin Luther . . . . . (*W. Robertson*) 190

PAGE

VII.—Christmas . . . . . (*Prof. Wilson*) 191

VIII.—An Innocent Forgery (Dramatic Scene) (*John Oxenford*) 193

IX.—Sir James Mackintosh . . (*Sydney Smith*) 196

X.—The Science of History . . (*J. S. Mill*) 197

XI.—The Earl of Clancarty . . . (*Macaulay*) 198

XII.—From a Speech of Lord Derby 202

XIII.—Bürger's Lenore . . . (*Capt. Basil Hall*) 203

XIV.—Among the Icebergs . . (*Capt. J. C. Ross*) 205

XV.—The Man who hunts and doesn't like it (*Anthony Trollope*) 207

XVI.—Limits of material Improvement in Ancient Civilization . . . (*The Rev. C. Merivale*) 209

XVII.—Light and Warmth . . . . . (*Bulwer*) 211

XVIII.—From the Diary of Thomas Moore . . . 212

XIX.—A Letter from Washington Irving . . . 215

XX.—Effect of Cold . . . . (*Sir W. E. Parry*) 216

XXI.—De Quincey on German Literature . . . 217

XXII.—Influence of Natural Agencies . (*Buckle*) 220

XXIII.—A Fatal Joke . . . . . (*Dr. Doran*) 221

XXIV.—English Trade under Elizabeth (*J. A. Froude*) 223

XXV.—Modern Border Feuds . . (*T. C. Grattan*) 225

XXVI.—German Popular Books . . (*Henry Hallam*) 227

XXVII.—Strawberry Weather . . . (*Leigh Hunt*) 229

XXVIII.—Progress of Mankind . (*Dr. W. B. Hodgson*) 230

XXIX.—Athenian Education . (*Prof. E. H. Plumptre*) 232

XXX.—A Conversion by Poetry . (*Arthur Helps*) 234

XXXI.—A Parallel . . . . . (*Prof. Huxley*) 238

XXXII.—Interlachen . . . . . (*H. W. Longfellow*) 240

XXXIII.—The History of a Word (*Archbishop Trench*) 242

XXXIV.—Shakespeare's Biography . (*R. W. Emerson*) 243

XXXV.—Distinctive Character of Nations (*Sir James Stephens*) 244

Grammatical Index 246

PREFACE.

THE present volume is intended to serve as a practical and theoretical guide to those who, having a full knowledge of German accidence and of the rules of the order of words, are anxious or obliged to acquire the art of translating from English into German.

There is no better means of mastering a foreign language than that of using it as a medium of translation from our own, and there is at the same time no better criterion for testing a person's knowledge of foreign languages. Translations from English into German form, therefore, justly an essential part in the B.A. Examinations at the London University, in the competitive Examinations for the Civil Service of India, and for the Military Service, and in the Examinations at the College of Preceptors for First Class Candidates. In producing a correct version of an English passage into German the candidate furnishes incontestible evidence of his knowledge of the latter, and, perhaps, also of the former.

The daily increasing intercourse between this country and Germany makes it, besides, for many highly desirable and, frequently, necessary to acquire a practical knowledge

of German. I had also this class of students in view, in giving not only narrative and descriptive Extracts, but also letters, dialogues, &c.*

There is, finally—and I would add, fortunately—another class of students, with whom the study of German is not a mere matter of practical expediency, but a labour of love; who cultivate the language and literature of Germany as a discipline for the mind, and as a medium of enlightenment and refinement. To this class of students, it is hoped, the present volume will prove equally useful.

I have myself made the selection of all the following Extracts from the authors' works, and not taken them 'ready cut' from any of the numerous compilations of specimens of English prose. I imposed this arduous task upon myself, because I wished to give such Extracts only as seemed to me most suitable to illustrate both the differences between English and German construction, and the idiomatic peculiarities of the latter. I was also solicitous to avoid all those hackneyed Extracts which are invariably found in all similar works, and of which both teachers and pupils must already be heartily tired.

I have further confined myself to Selections from modern authors. The legitimate claims of modern writers are generally, however excellent their sentiments and style may be, only too much neglected in books of Extracts.

---

* In the "Report of the School Commission Inquiry" (vol. i. p. 28) the following remark—which does some justice to the German language—occurs with reference to the 'position of German' in this country: "German has at present, in most parts of England, in a less degree than French the claim of practical utility; but in another respect it must be ranked higher, for its numerous inflections peculiarly adapt it for teaching grammar, and for that purpose it would stand next to Latin."

It seems to me, besides, impossible to learn to write modern German by translating those old English authors, whom we admire, and with whom every English scholar should be acquainted, but whose style no modern English writer imitates. In almost every period a peculiar mode of expression is prevalent. In former times it was entirely different in every country; but at the present epoch, in which the intellectual international relations are greater than ever, and the eminent writers of one country are generally acquainted with the productions of the master minds of other countries, there may be discovered a certain uniformity between the expression of thought of various nations—more particularly in the better productions of the three leading literatures: the English, German, and French.

In making the present Selection it has also been my endeavour to give throughout interesting Extracts only; some of a lighter stamp, and the majority of an instructive kind: but none of the latter will be found dull. Though merely Extracts, the following specimens are mostly complete in themselves; and where this is not absolutely the case,—as, for instance, in the dramatic scenes and a few other pieces,—I have given the necessary explanation in a foot-note. I have also explained all historical and other allusions throughout the work,—in fact, everything which I deemed necessary for making the text fully understood; which seems to me the primary condition before a translation is attempted at all.

It has been found expedient to divide the present volume into four *graduated* parts. The *first* part consists of easy detached Sentences and minor Extracts,—taken from English standard works,—which are to serve for

practice in the order of words and the less complicated construction of sentences. The *second* part contains longer Extracts, as is also the case with the two remaining parts.

The Notes to the first two parts have this in common: that they contain, besides copious renderings of expressions and idiomatic phrases, also numerous philological remarks and grammatical rules. This section of the work contains, in fact, almost *the whole of the German Syntax*, and a general recapitulation of the most important features of the Syntax will be found in the *Grammatical Introduction*, to which I wish to call the particular attention of the translators.

In the Notes to part the *third* will be found chiefly renderings of idiomatic phrases, hints for translation, definitions of synonyms, and numerous references to the grammatical notes occurring in the two preceding parts.

The Notes to part the *fourth* are very few in number, and towards the end of the book none at all are given. Only the most difficult expressions and phrases are translated, but there occur numerous references to the preceding parts, and the proper renderings are in this part more frequently indicated by English periphrases than in the previous parts. These periphrases form, though not a novel, still a principal and, it is hoped, a very useful feature of the present publication. By this means a sure guide is given to the student, without actually stating the translation. Thus it is indicated on page 87, note 11, that the expression *to the west* is in this particular instance to be rendered by the equivalent for 'westward,' and the expression *of it* (note 13, same page) by the equivalent for 'of the same.' In carrying out this plan, it has always

been my endeavour to make use of correct English. Only in two or three cases, where it could not be helped, I deviated from this course.

As regards the *amount* of help I have given, I aimed at keeping the middle path—by giving neither too much nor too little. I have, therefore, confined myself to give renderings of really difficult expressions and idiomatic phrases only. I adopted in this respect the plan which I have pursued, in general, in my edition of "Schiller's Wallenstein." First I translated throughout every Extract contained in the following pages into German; then I examined the dictionaries commonly in use in this country, and when I found that most of them did not give the requisite translation of certain expressions or phrases, I put the translation in the notes. A few of these renderings have been adopted from the translations of the works published in Germany. In most cases, however, I was obliged to deviate from the translators. I generally gave, what I should venture to call, a literary translation, but I avoided as much as possible free renderings.

I can hardly expect that all my versions will be accepted by every German scholar. There are phrases and passages which admit of various correct translations, and some may give the preference to those versions which I thought proper to reject. Such a difference of opinion cannot be avoided, especially in the translation of so great a variety of Extracts.

PREFACE TO THE FIFTH EDITION.

THE great success with which the present volume has met is strikingly proved by the rapid succession of new Editions, notwithstanding the advanced character of the work. This circumstance is so much the more encouraging, because it demonstrates the serious attention which the study of German is now receiving in this country; for by using this and similar advanced works, people show that they are no longer satisfied with a mere smattering of the language, but are anxious to obtain a thorough knowledge of its genius, its idiomatic peculiarities, and grammatical niceties.

In issuing the present *Fifth* Edition, I have again most carefully revised the *Notes;* but the principal improvement consists in the addition of an *Index* giving not only references to the numerous *Grammatical Rules* contained in this volume, but also to a number of *idioms* and renderings of unusual expressions not to be found in any Dictionary. It is therefore hoped that this *Grammatical Index*, which, as far as I know, is the first of the kind in publications like the present, will be found of considerable advantage by translators, both in rendering passages from this or any other book.

C. A. B.

KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON,
22 *January*, 1878.

I have to express my sincerest thanks for permission to reprint some of the following Copyright Extracts:—to Lady Trevelyan, Messrs. A. and C. Black, Messrs. Blackwood and Sons, Messrs. Longmans and Co., Messrs. Macmillan and Co., Mr. John Murray, and Messrs. Smith, Elder, and Co.

GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.

GERMAN is a strictly grammatical language, and this circumstance forms the basis of the construction of German sentences. The grammatical inflections, which have not been lost in German as in English, claim inexorably their right, but offer at the same time the great advantage of effecting a distinctness which leaves room neither for a real nor for a merely grammatical ambiguity. Apart from these formal exigencies, there is the same freedom of movement in the expression of thought in German as in English—a freedom which is of incalculable advantage to prose, but still more so to poetry.

The German language possesses, besides, an adaptability which most other languages lack, and to which the fact may be attributed that German can boast—as has been universally acknowledged—of unrivalled translations from foreign languages, especially from the English. The fact just pointed out may serve as an encouragement to English students of German, proving, as it does, that the difficulties of translating into German are by no means so

overwhelming as is generally asserted, more particularly by those whose knowledge of the language is only superficial. Any one who has a fair knowledge of German, and is familiar with the Grammar, will, by the help of a comprehensive Dictionary, be able to produce such a translation as, though not elegant, would not be stamped as absurd or as 'un-German,' since the mode of expression is by no means prescribed by implacable laws. There is, it is true, a peculiarly German order of words; but this order can easily enough be learned by means of certain rules: and so can the peculiarity of the construction of German sentences in general, especially if it is constantly borne in mind that German is, as has been stated before, a strictly grammatical language, and requires all the various relations between subject, object, &c. to be pointed out with grammatical distinctness.

The following general recapitulation of some of the most important features of German Syntax will fully bear out my assertion as regards the thorough grammatical character of the language.

I. One of the chief characteristics of German construction is that of placing the qualifying expressions and clauses before the qualified term; which mode of expression gives great vigour and compactness to the sentences. For example: Ein

auf dem Hügel ſtehendes Haus, *a house standing on the hill.* This mode of construction enables us to avoid the too frequent use of relative clauses which, in German, cannot be contracted by the omission of the relative pronoun.

The student of German should, however, be very cautious in forming such adjective sentences. They should never be too long, and it is far better to make use of relative clauses than to compress a number of clauses into one protracted adjective sentence. It is in this respect, before all, that modern German prose has materially improved, and the present *Guide* has been arranged in accordance with that improvement.

II. *Participial Constructions*, so very frequently employed in English, are in German generally turned by a different form. This important topic has been fully explained in the present volume, and one Extract (part ii. page 82, No. xxx.) has been inserted for special practice in the various rules referring to the Present (or 'Imperfect') Participle. The most important of the rules alluded to are here recapitulated.

(*a*) In adverbial clauses of time *participial Constructions are* usually changed into a regular clause with a conjunction indicating time, (as: indem, während, *whilst;* als, da, *when;* nachdem, *after,* etc.) and a finite verb *e.g.; (while) speaking with me, he saw, etc.,* während (or indem) er mit mir ſprach, etc. Tense

and conjunction must be employed according to the sense of the passage.

(*b*) The Present Participle which qualifies a preceding noun or pronoun is generally changed into a regular relative clause; that is to say, the Present Participle is changed into a finite verb and is introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb. The sense of the passage will generally show which tense is to be used. Thus we should turn *retaining* in Extr. 19 by 'which had retained,' because it refers to the past; and *enabling* in Extr. 21 by 'which enable,' because it contains the notion of the present tense.

(*c*) When the Present Participle expresses a logical cause, it is changed into a regular sentence, and introduced by da; e.g. *Not finding him at home, I went away,* da ich ihn nicht zu Hause fand, so ging ich weg.

(*d*) Present Participles having the force of an adjective, are, in some cases, actually changed into attributive adjectives, (cf. p. xiv. I).

(*e*) Present Participles are often turned by a finite verb, and connected by *and* with a preceding clause. Cf. p. 28, l. 12.

(*f*) A very convenient way of rendering briefly the Present Participle is the employment of adverbial expressions with which the German language

abounds. This expedient has been resorted to in various passages of the present volume, as page 112, where the clause *having sustained considerable losses* has been briefly rendered by the adverbial expression, mit großem Verluſte.

(*g*) In one case the Present Participle may also be used in German, more particularly in elevated diction,—viz. when it denotes an action which is represented as taking place simultaneously with the action expressed by the predicate; e.g. Dies alles bei mir denkend ſchlief ich ein (*Sch.*), *thinking on all these matters I fell asleep*, i.e. 'whilst I thought of all these matters I fell asleep.' Cf. Extract 42, note *b*.

In common prose, however, we generally use a finite verb introduced by indem (and sometimes by da), as: *in walking through the town, I observed, etc.* indem ich durch die Stadt ging, etc., (Cf. above II. *a*).

III. The construction of the *Accusative with the Infinitive*, so frequently occurring in Latin, Greek, and English, is inadmissible in German, since the verb governs in such a construction two objects of a perfectly different *grammatical* character—if we may say so; a process quite adverse to the character of the German language, which requires all grammatical relations to be logically and distinctly pointed out. We must, therefore, generally change the accusative into the nominative, the infinitive

into a finite verb, and introduce the sentence by the conjunction daß. For instance: *I wish you to write the letter immediately,* ich wünſche, daß Sie den Brief ſogleich ſchreiben.

The Infinitive may, however, be used in German with some verbs, as ſehen, hören, finden, fühlen, haben, etc., and also with the intransitive verbs gehen, reiten, fahren, bleiben; but all these and similar verbs form with the infinitive a kind of compound verbal expression, expressing one idea only, as: *I see him coming,* ich ſehe ihn kommen; *we go for a walk,* wir gehen ſpazieren. In these examples the verbs kommen ſehen and ſpazieren gehen express one notion only. Cf. Extract 17.

The reason stated with reference to the inadmissibility of the Accusative with the Infinitive in German may, in some measure, also explain the circumstance that verbs of choosing, appointing, declaring, considering, etc. do not govern in German *two* accusatives, as is the case in Greek, Latin, and English; but put the suffering or direct object alone in the accusative, and the word expressing the office to which a person has been appointed, or that which a person or thing is declared to be, is preceded by the preposition zu with the dative (after the verbs of choosing, electing, and declaring), and by the accusative with the prepositions als or für (after verbs of considering and declaring): e.g. *They*

appointed him president of the society, ſie ernannten ihn zum Präſidenten der Geſellſchaft; *I esteem it a favour,* ich betrachte es als eine Gunſt. Cf. page 36, note 4, and page 85, note 2.

IV. The rule with reference to words in *Apposition* requires in German the greatest attention.

A noun (or its substitute, viz. a personal pronoun) or adjective or ordinal number is said to stand in the relation of *Apposition,* when it qualifies or explains another noun previously mentioned.

The *Apposition* agrees, for the sake of grammatical distinctness, with the noun qualified, in gender, number, and case. Thus, in the extract No. 17, page 4, we must render the sentence, *The flax plant is composed of three distinct parts, the wood, the fibres, and the gum resin,* &c., by der Flachs beſteht aus drei verſchiedenen Theilen, dem Holze, den Faſern und dem Harze, &c. The terms Holz, Faſern, and Harz stand here in *apposition* to Theilen, and must therefore, like the latter expression, be used in the dative case. See page 85, note 9.

The rule that the *Article* must be repeated before nouns of different gender or number—which is merely owing to the requirements of grammatical distinctness—may here appropriately be appended to the rule concerning the *Apposition.* See page 42 note 9.

V. Grammatical distinctness requires in German —though not rigorously—that the place of the object be supplied in the principal clause by the pronoun es when the leading verb governs the accusative case, and the object consists of a whole clause or a supine; e.g. *He had ventured to go in secret*, &c. (see page 17, note 7), er hatte es gewagt ſich heimlich aufzumachen, &c.

If, however, the verb or adjective in the principal clause require a preposition, the latter is added to the demonstrative pronoun da or dar; e.g. *This castle is remarkable as containing* &c. (see page 97 note 2), dieſes Schloß iſt dadurch merkwürdig, daß, &c.

Words printed in *italics* in the text are not to be translated.

When two words are separated by a dash (—) in the Notes, the German rendering refers to the whole clause of which the first and last word are given.

When words are separated by dots (...), the German rendering in the Notes is the equivalent for these words only, and not for the intervening expressions.

In Part I. the rules and renderings referring to each Extract are given in a single Note.

GERMAN PROSE COMPOSITION.

PART I.

1. TIME is an important element in the action of force.
2. The hearing of birds is most acute.
3. The dome of St. Paul's Cathedral is built of wood.
4. The silver fir was introduced into England in the seventeenth century.

[1] *Important* in the sense of affecting considerably some result, wich-tig; *element* denotes here an 'essential condition,' and is to be rendered by Umſtand, or by the more scientific term Moment, *n.*; *action* signifying 'effect of power' is rendered by Wirkung and *force* denoting 'active power' by Kraft. — Use the word *time* with the definite article, which is frequently required in German with *abstract nouns* when the abstract idea is expressed in a *general* sense.

[2] *Hearing*, (the sense of) Gehör; *most*, here äußerſt; *acute*, with reference to the senses, ſcharf. — Use *birds* with the definite article, because *common names* denoting 'an aggregate whole or entire genus,' require in German the definite article.

[3] *Dome*, denoting 'cupola,' (It. and Engl.) Kuppel; *St. Paul's Cathedral*, die Paulskirche; cf. p. 59, n. 3; *wood*, (the substance) Holz. The prep. *of* referring to a material of which a thing is made, is translated by aus or von; by the former more generally when a verb is used at the same time, and by the latter when the verb is understood.

[4] *Silver fir*, Silbertanne; *to introduce into*, here bringen nach; *century*, Jahrhundert. (*a*) Adverbial expressions of time precede in German adverbial expressions of place. Construe therefore: was in the seventeenth century into England, &c. (*b*) Use the verb bringen in the imperf. of the passive voice. This form is always required in German when the suffering of an action by the subject is to be expressed. In the preceding sentence the action is represented as completed; we must, therefore, use the auxiliary verb ſein in order to express the 'state' of the subject; but in the present instance we represent the subject as suffering the action, and have therefore to employ the auxiliary verb werden.

5. Water in the act of freezing becomes electrical.

6. The Assyrians, like the Egyptians, appear to have had organized and disciplined troops.

7. When hair becomes very fine and crisp, it is termed wool.

8. The last years of John Locke's existence were spent at Oates in Essex.

9. The Berber language has no terms for expressing abstract ideas, and is obliged to borrow them from the Arabic.

10. Green is a common colour in the vegetable kingdom; it is very rare in the mineral kingdom.

[5] *In—freezing*, im Gefrieren. (*a*) When the entire genus of a material is to be expressed, we generally use the definite article. (*b*) When a sentence begins with the subject, the assertion, *i.e.* the verb containing a personal inflection, is, as a rule, placed immediately after the subject; construe, therefore, (*the*) *water becomes in, &c.*

[6] *Assyrians*, Aſſyrer; *like*, gleich, which adjective governs the dative; *to appear*, ſcheinen; *organized*, organiſirt; *disciplined*, disciplinirt; *troops*, here Armeen.—In this sentence the subject stands first, and *appear* forms the assertion.

[7] *Fine*, fein; *crisp*, kraus. Render *it is termed* by ſo nennt man es. For the rendering of the term *hair* compare Extr. 5 n. *a.*, and for the place of wird (becomes) cf. Extr. 12 n. *b.*—The conjunction ſo is here used in accordance with the rule that, when a sentence, expressing a condition, precedes a principal clause, the latter is generally introduced by the expletive ſo, and given in an inverted form.

[8] According to the rule mentioned in n. *b* to Extr. 4, we ought to use here the passive voice; but this form is generally changed into the active voice when the agent from whom the activity proceeds is, on account of its greater importance than the subject suffering the action, to be made more prominent. Turn, therefore, the above sentence by 'John Locke spent (brachte...zu) the last years of his existence (Lebens) at (zu) Oates, &c.'

[9] The Berber language (Berberſprache) is spoken in the mountainous districts of the north coast of Africa by the aborigines. *Arabic* (das Arabiſche) is spoken by the Arabs in the adjoining plains. When *term* is synonymous with 'word' or 'expression,' it must be rendered by Wort or Ausdruck; *to be obliged*, müſſen, to borrow (*from*), entlehnen. (*a*) Render *for expressing* by um auszudrücken, because the *Supine, i.e.* the infinitive with the preposition zu before it, is required in German with verbs expressing a purpose, or forming the object of a clause. Frequently the preposition um, 'for,' is made to precede the *Supine*. (*b*) The verb entlehnen governs the dative of the indirect object—here *Arabic*—like many other inseparable compound verbs.

[10] *Vegetable Kingdom*, Pflanzenreich; *rare*, ſelten; *mineral kingdom*, Mineralreich. Adjectives denoting colour in general, are used in German as neuter substantives and require the definite article.

11. The prose of Dryden, says Sir Walter Scott, may reckon with the best in the English language.

12. In the reign of Elizabeth the town of Brighton was situated on that tract where the chain-pier now extends into the sea.

13. We command nature, according to the saying of a philosopher, by obeying her laws.

14. The swiftest and most agile quadrupeds, as well as the most graceful and beautiful, also those which are most useful to man, belong chiefly to the old continent.

15. Demosthenes felt such delight in the history of Thucydides, that to obtain a familiar and perfect mastery of his style, he copied his history eight times.

16. The inhabitants of the Marianne Islands pretended to be the only people in the world.

[11] *May reckon with*, kann zu... gerechnet werden. (*a*) Turn *the prose of Dryden* by 'Dryden's prose,' in accordance with the rule that, when a proper name occurs in the genitive case, it is generally placed before the noun which it qualifies. (*b*) Cf. for *Sir*, p. 31, n. 7.

[12] The preposition *in* referring to *reign* (Regierung) is rendered in German by unter. For the construction of *In—Elizabeth*, cf. n. *a* to preceding Extr.; *to be situated*, ſich befinden; *on*, here auf; *tract*, Stelle. The *chain pier* here alluded to refers, of course, to the old Brighton pier, which, being a 'landing bridge projecting into the sea,' may be rendered by the abbreviated form Kettenbrücke (omitting the word Landungs between the two nouns); *extends into*, ſich... hinaus erſtreckt. (*a*) When a clause does *not* begin with the subject, the assertion must be placed before it; put *therefore was situated* before *the town*. (*b*) The verb erſtreckt must here be placed at the end, the clause being a dependent one.

[13] *To command*, here beherrſchen; *according to*, nach; *saying*, here Ausſpruch. Place *nature* with the def. art. after *philosopher*, and turn *by obeying* by 'whilst (intem) we obey.' Cf. Int. p. xv. II. *a*.

[14] *Swift*, ſchnell; *agile*, behend; *quadruped*, Vierfüßler; *as well as*, ſowie; *graceful*, here zierlich; *as also*, wie auch; *most useful*, am nützlichſten; *to belong*, angehören; *chiefly*, vorzüglich; *continent* = world.—*Man* denotes here human being; use therefore the noun Menſch, which corresponds to the Latin *homo* and the Greek ἄνθρωπος. Cf. the *note* to Extr. 2.

[15] *Felt—in*, war von...ſo ſehr entzückt; *to—style*, um deſſen Stil vollſtändig in ſeine Gewalt zu bekommen; *eight times* is a reiterative numeral. (*a*) The genitive case is with *foreign proper names* ending in a sibilant, generally pointed out by means of the definite article. (*b*) The pronoun *he* in the above sentence should be placed after *that*, because, as a rule, *inversions do not take place in dependent sentences*, or with other words, the subject is placed immediately after the word, introducing the dependent clause; when the subject is to be made more emphatic, it takes the place of the principal object after one or more objects.

[16] *Inhabitant*, Bewohner; or here

17. The flax *plant* is composed of three distinct parts: the wood, the fibres, and the gum resin, which causes the fibres to adhere.

18. No b[illegible]y is so black as to reflect no light at all, and to be perfectly invisible in a strong light.

19. A loaf was found in a baker's shop at Herculaneum still retaining its form, and with his name stamped upon it.

20. It is *well* known that if one in a troop of lions is killed, the others take the hint, and leave that part of the country.

21. A great number of seeds are furnished with downy and feathery appendages, enabling them, when ripe, to float in the air, and to be wafted easily to great distances.

Ureinwohner. The *Marianne Islands*, Marianen or Ladronen, (from the Spanish 'ladrones,' *i.e. thieves;* hence also the German name, Diebesinseln) are a group of islands in the N. Pacific Ocean. *To pretend*, behaupten, which verb must here be followed by the Supine. Render *people* by Menſchen.

17 *Flax plant*, Flachs; *to be composed of*, beſtehen aus; *distinct*, verſchieden; *fibre*, Faſer; *gum resin*, Harz *n.*; *to cause*, bewirken; *to adhere*, zuſammenhalten. (*a*) For the rendering of *the wood, &c.*, see Int. p. xix., IV., and for the constr. of the *accusative with the infinitive* ('the fibres to adhere') see ib. p. xvii., III.

18 *Body*, denoting 'matter as opposed to spirit,' Körper; no . . . at all, gar kein; *perfectly*, vollſtändig. When an infinitive is preceded by *as* and refers to the demonstrative *so*, thus implying a condition, it must generally be changed in German into a regular sentence with a finite verb in the conditional mood. Render therefore, *as to reflect*, by als daß er . . . zurückwürfe, and *to be*, by daß er . . . wäre.

19 *A loaf*, ein Laib Brod, or simply ein Brod; *Herculaneum*, Herculanum; *to retain*, beibehalten; *its form*, ihre Form; *to stamp*, ſtempeln. Arrange 'at Herculaneum was in the shop of a baker,' &c. For the rendering of *was found*, compare n. *b* to Ext. 4; and for *still retaining*, which qualifies the noun *loaf*, see Int. p. xvi., *b*; turn *with—it* by 'upon which (worauf) his name was stamped.'

20 *Known*, bekannt; *in*, here aus; *troop*, (of animals) usually Trupp; *take the hint*, here es ſich zur Warnung dienen laſſen; *to leave*, verlaſſen. The prep. *of* in *troop of lions* is not translated, because 'of' denoting in general the partitive relation, is not expressed in German after nouns denoting *number*, *weight*, or *measure*.

21 *Number*, here Menge; *seeds*, Samen; *furnished*, verſehen; *downy*, flockicht; *feathery*, gefiedert; *appendage*, Anhängſel; *to enable*, in den Stand ſetzen; *when ripe* = when they are ripe; *to float*, ſchweben; *to be wafted*, getragen werden; *to great*, say: in weite; *distance*, Entfernung. (*a*) The rule given in note 20 with reference to the omission of the prep. *of* in partitive relations, refers also to the word Menge. (*b*) Cf. for *enabling*, Int. p. xvi., *b*; and for *to float* and *to be wafted*, n. *a* to Ext. 9.

22. Among the Dyaks, aborigines of Borneo, no man is allowed to marry till he can show the skull of a man whom he has slain.

23. There is reason to suppose, from the quantity of light emitted by the brightest stars, that some of them are much larger than the sun.

24. In the marsh of Curragh, in the Isle *of* Man, vast trees are discovered standing firm on their roots, though at a depth of eighteen or twenty feet below the surface.

25. During the hundred and sixty years which preceded the union of the Roses nine kings reigned in England. Six of these nine kings were deposed. Five lost their lives as well as their crowns.

26. The modern system of music is one of the few

[22] *Among*, referring to nations in a general sense, as is the case here, is rendered by the prep. bei. The *Dyaks* (Diafen) are a fierce people with very savage customs; *aborigines*, Eingeborne; *to be allowed*, dürfen; *to marry*, (to take for wife or husband) heirathen; *to show*, here vorzeigen; *skull*, Schädel. (*a*) Insert the dat. plur. of the def. art. before *aborigines*, and compare for the reason Int. p. xix., IV. (*b*) *Is allowed* cannot here be rendered by iſt or wird erlaubt, because erlauben belongs to that class of verbs which govern besides a direct object in the accusative, an indirect object in the dative. Similar verbs are often construed with man or rendered impersonally, as *I am told*, man hat mir geſagt, or es iſt mir geſagt worden.

[23] *Reason*, denoting 'ground or cause of opinion,' Grund; *to suppose*, here annehmen; to *emit*, ausſtrahlen; *of them*, say: derſelben. Construe 'from the quantity of light (nach der Lichtmaſſe zu urtheilen), which is emitted by (von) the brightest stars, one has reason to suppose that some, &c.' The relative pronoun cannot be omitted in German; insert therefore, 'which is' before *emitted*.

[24] *Marsh of Curragh*, Curragh-ſumpf; *in* with reference to *isle* or *island*, generally auf; *vast*, ſehr groß, or mächtig; turn *are discovered* by 'one finds,' *on their* by 'with the,' and *though at a depth* by 'though they are (ſich befinden) at a depth.' (*a*) The prep. *of* is not expressed in German when standing between the common names, Inſel, Land, Stadt, Königreich, &c., and the respective proper names, as: *the Isle of Man*, die Inſel Man. (*b*) Cf. for *standing*, Int. p. xvi., *b*, and for *feet* Extr. 32, n. *d*.

[25] *To precede*, vorangehen; *union*, Vereinigung; *to reign*, regieren; *to depose*, (kings, &c.) entthronen. (*a*) The verb vorangehen governs the dative case, like many other verbs compounded with the separable prefixes an, auf, bei, vor, &c. (*b*) For *were deposed*, cf. Extr. 4, n. *b*. (*c*) The expression Leben does not admit of the plural when used in a general sense. Turn, therefore, *lost—crowns* by 'lost as well (ſowohl) the life as (als) the crown.'

[26] Retain the terms *modern* and *system; science*, Wiſſenſchaft; turn *if —called* by 'if one can so call it (viz. the system); *to owe*, verdanken, *improvement*, here Ausbildung; *the Middle Ages*, das Mittelalter. (*a*)

sciences, if so it may be called, which owe their improvement to the Middle Ages.

27. It seems impossible, says a great botanist, in the present state of our knowledge to give a complete and perfect definition of what is to be considered an animal, in contradistinction to what is to be looked upon as a plant.

28. In the reign of William the First the penalty for killing a stag or a boar was loss of the eyes; for William loved the great deer, says a Saxon Chronicle, as if he had been their father.

29. When a body is once in motion it requires no foreign power to sustain its velocity.

30. Etna appears to have been in activity from the earliest times of tradition, for Diodorus Siculus mentions an eruption which caused a district to be deserted by the Sicani before the Trojan war.

31. The art of painting in oil was first discovered by

For *music* cf. the note to Extr. 1. (*b*) The *partitive genitive*, which signifies the whole of which anything is a part, as here in *of the few*, is generally rendered by von.

[27] *In*, here bei; *state*, Zuſtand; *knowledge*, Wiſſenſchaft; *complete*, vollſtändig; *perfect*, genau; *definition* Definition; *of what*, von dem was; *to be considered*, zu betrachten iſt; *in contradistinction*, im Gegenſatz; *to what*, zu dem was; *to be looked upon*, say: man...anſehen muß. Cf. on the English passive participial constructions, p. 45, n. 20.

[28] *Killing*, say die Tödtung; which is to be followed by the genitive case; turn *was lost* by 'consisted in the loss (Verluſt); *great deer*, Hochwild, is to be used in the singular only, like all nouns denoting unlimited plurality; *says*, transl. wie...bemerkt, *i.e.* observes; *Saxon*, ſächſiſch; *their*, say deſſen. (*a*) For *in the reign*, see Ext. 12. (*b*) The title, *the First*, stands here in *apposition* to *William*; cf. Int. p. xix..IV. (*c*) The first clause does not begin with the subject, see Ext. 12, n. *a*. (*d*) For the conj. *for* see p. 89, n. 8.

[29] For *body* see Ext. 18; *motion*, Bewegung; *to require*, bedürfen which governs the genitive case; *power*, here Kraft; *to sustain*, aufrecht erhalten; *its*, say deſſen; *velocity*, Schnelligkeit. For the rendering of *it requires*, see note to Ext. 7, and for that of *to sustain*, n. *a* to Ext. 9.

[30] *Activity*, Thätigkeit; *from—tradition*, von der früheſten Sagenzeit an. Turn the clause *which—war*, by 'which before the Trojan war, caused (veranlaßte) the Sicani (Sicaner) to desert a district (einen Landſtrich).' Diodorus Siculus was a Greek historian and a contemporary of Cæsar and Augustus. He wrote a large work entitled Βιβλιοθήκη Ἱστορική, or Universal History.—Use the definite article with *Etna*, in accordance with the rule that the names of mountains require the definite article

[31] *First*, here zuerſt; *to discover* may here be rendered by erfinden

Van Eyck of Bruges, towards *the* end of the fourteenth century. It has now become almost the only manner in which paintings of magnitude are executed.

32. The Urceola Elastica is to be found in abundance in the islands of the Indian Archipelago, and can, without being injured, yield by tapping *from* fifty to sixty pounds *of* caoutchouc in one season.

33. In our island the Latin appears never to have superseded the old Gaelic speech, and could not stand its ground against the German.

34. Sir Robert Cotton, one day at his tailor's, discovered that the man was holding in his hand, ready to cut up for measures, an original Magna Charta, with all *its* appendages of seals and signatures; and an original Magna Charta is preserved in the Cottonian Library exhibiting marks of dilapidation.

Goethe sanctions, however, the use of entreden in similar instances by speaking of the Entredung der Kupferstiche. *Bruges*, Brügge; *has—become*, say: ist jetzt; *manner*, Weise; *of magnitude*, say: von Bedeutung; *to execute*, ausführen. (*a*) Render *of painting*, by zu malen, because similar verbal forms in — *ing*, preceded by *of*, *instead of*, *for*, or *without* are rendered in German by the *Supine*. (*b*) For *was* and *are* see n. *b* to Ext. 4.

[32] Retain the Latin term *Urceola Elastica* with the original feminine gender and use for *is to be found* the present of the passive voice; *in abundance*, in großer Menge; for *in* see Ext. 24; *the Indian Archipelagus*, der indische Archipel (usually abbreviated from Archipelagus); *to be injured*, beschädigt werden; *yield by tapping*, durch Einschnitte...liefern; *caoutchouc*, Federharz, or usually Kautschuk; for *season* see p. 90, n. 11. (*a*) The expression *in abundance* is to be put after *Archipelago*, because *adverbial expressions of manner are placed after all other adverbial expressions*. (*b*) Construe the remaining clauses: 'can in one season, without being injured, fifty to sixty pounds of caoutchouc yield by tapping.' (*c*) When *to* between two cardinal numerals denotes an amount approximately, it is rendered by *bis*. (*d*) Use *pounds* in the singular, because masculine or neuter nouns, being preceded by a numeral and employed as terms of weight, measure, or number remain unchanged.

[33] *The Latin*, das Lateinische; for the position of *appears*, cf., n. *a* to Ext. 12; *to supersede*, verdrängen; *the old Gaelic speech*, das Altgälische; supply *es* before *could*; *to stand its ground*, sich behaupten; *the German*, das Deutsche.

[34] *One day*, eines Tages; *at his tailor's*, bei seinem Schneider; *ready*, im Begriff; *to—measures*, als Maß zu zerschneiden; *an—Charta*, say ein Original der Magna Charta; *appendages*, Zubehör, (*sing.*); *seal*, Siegel; *signature*, Unterschrift; *to preserve*, aufbewahren; *Cottonian*, Cottonisch; *to exhibit*, here an sich tragen; *marks of dilapidation*, Spuren der Verstümmelung. (*a*) Construe 'when Sir Robert Cotton was one day at his tailor's, he discovered, &c.,' and

35. Practice must settle the habit of doing without reflecting on the rule.

36. During the eruption *from the crater* of the Tombora *mountain*, in Sumbawa, the darkness occasioned by the ashes in the day-time was so profound, that nothing equal to it was ever witnessed in the darkest night of Java.

37. A piece *of* caoutchouc or india-rubber is very elastic, but not perfectly *so*, for it becomes permanently elongated by stretching. Glass, on the contrary, is perfectly elastic, for it will retain no permanent bend; when drawn into a fine thread, it may be twisted round upon its axis many times without breaking, and when set free always returns to the point from which it set out.

38. Dr. T. Fuller had such a wonderful memory that

place after. *signatures* the words from *was* to *measures*. (*b*) Turn *his hand* by 'the hand' in accordance with the rule *that the definite article is usually employed in German*, (as is the case in Greek and French) *instead of the possessive pronoun when the context clearly shows who the possessing object is*. (*c*) Cf. for *is preserved*, Ext. 4, n. *a*, and for *exhibiting*, Int. p. xvi., *b*.

35 *Practice*, Uebung; *to settle*, here verleiden; *habit*, (i.e. aptitude,) Fertigkeit; *of doing*, say etwas zu vollbringen; *to reflect on*, nachdenken über; *rule* (the precept or maxim), Regel. (*a*) *Abstract nouns denoting actions require in German the definite article*. (*b*) Cf. for the term, *without reflecting* Ext. 31, n. *a*.

36 *Eruption*, Ausbruch; *darkness*, Finsterniß; *to occasion*, verursachen; *by*, durch; *in the day-time*, am Tage; *profound*, tief; *that—witnessed*, wie man nie was Aehnliches...wahrgenommen; *dark*, dunkel; *of*, here auf. (*a*) The above sentence does not begin with the subject, see Ext. 12, n. *a*. (*b*) Turn *occasioned by the ashes*, (which words qualify the term darkness) by 'the by the ashes occasioned,' and see Int. p. xiv., I. (*c*) Render *ashes* in accordance with the rule that *names* of material are, commonly, not used in the plural. (*d*) The above Extract refers to the eruption of the volcano of Tombora in 1815, when the ashes were wafted from the isle of Sumbawa to that of Java.

37 *India-rubber*, Gummi Elasticum; *perfectly*, vollkommen; *for*, here denn; *permanently*, bleibend; *by stretching*, durch Ausziehen; *on the contrary*, here hingegen; *to retain*, beibehalten; *bend*, Biegung; *when drawn into*, wenn man es zu...ausdehnt; *fine*, here, dünn; *thread*, Faden; *be—upon*, um...gedreht werden; *many times*, vielmals; *to break*, zerbrechen; *when set free*, wenn es losgelassen wird; *returns*, say schnellt es...zurück; *point*, Punkt; *set out*, ausging. (*a*) For *glass*, cf. Ext. 5, n. *a*. (*b*) Turn *it will retain* by 'it retains.' (*c*) For *when* see p. 41, n. 9. (*d*) When *may* is a synonym of *to be able*, it is rendered by können.

38 *Such a wonderful*, ein so außerordentliches; render *could* by im Stande war; *unconnected*, unzusammenhängend; turn *after—them* by 'after he had heard them twice;' *to recite*, here hersagen; *the—signs*,

he could repeat five hundred unconnected words after twice hearing them, and recite the whole of the signs in the principal thoroughfares of London after once passing through and back again.

39. It was the just boast of Schiller that in his country no Augustus, no Lorenzo, had watched over the infancy of poetry. The rich and energetic language of Luther, driven by the Latin from the schools of pedants, and by the French from the palaces of kings, had taken refuge among the people.*

40. The Philippine Islands were discovered by Magellan in the first voyage *that was made* round the world. They were first called the Archipelago of St. Lazarus: this was in the year 1520. In the year 1565 a Spanish

sämmtliche Schilter; *principal thoroughfares*, Hauptſtraßen; *after — again*, nachdem er durch dieſelben hinaus zurückgegangen war. If the activity expressed by a verb is represented as something which *can* or *should* be done, we use in German the supine. It is, therefore, required after im Stande ſein, and should be used here with the verb *repeat* and *recite*. Dr. T. Fuller, the historian, lived from the year 1608 to 1661.

[38] *It—Schiller*, Schiller war mit Recht ſtolz darauf; *to watch over*, bewachen; *poetry*, Poeſie; *energetic*, kraftvoll, *driven*, verdrängt; *by*, durch; *pedant*, Pedant; *the French*, das Franzöſiſche; *taken refuge*, ihre Zuflucht genommen; *among*, here zu; *people*, Volk. When the word *country* refers to a man's land of nativity, we generally use in German the expressive term Vaterland. The same is done in almost all Teutonic languages. Thus the Swedes speak of their Fäderneſland, the Danes of their Fädreland, &c.; Greek and Latin scholars will find analogous terms in πατρίς, *patria*, from which the Romance expressions *patria*, *patrie*, *&c.*, currently used in Italy and France, are derived.

[40] *The Philippine Islands*, die Philippinen; *in*, here auf; *round*, used as a preposition, um; *colony*, Colonie; *to found*, gründen; *there*, daſelbſt; *command*, Anführung; *to name*, here benennen. (*a*) For *were discovered, were...called, was founded* and *were named*, cf. Ext. 4, note *b*. (*b*) Use the genitive of the def. article before *Leyaspi*, because with *foreign proper names*, even if not ending in a sibilant, the case is sometimes pointed out by means of the def. article. (*c*) The prep. *of* is generally rendered by von, when the name of a place, but more especially of a country, follows the noun by which it is governed, as in the present instance: *Philip II. of Spain*.

* The above extract, from Macaulay's Essays on Frederick the Great, refers to Schiller's poem, "Die deutſche Muſe," the first verses of which run—

'Kein Auguſtiſch Alter blühte,
Keines Mäcenaters Güte
Lächelte der deutſchen Kunſt,' &c.

colony was founded there under the command of Legaspi, and the islands were named after Philip II. of Spain.

41. A bitter plant with wavy sea-green leaves has been taken from the sea-side, where it grew like wild charlock; it was transplanted into the garden, lost its saltness, and has become metamorphosed into two distinct vegetables, as unlike to each other as is each to the parent-plant—into the red-cabbage and the cauliflower.

42. Camoens, the celebrated poet of the Lusiad, was wrecked at the mouth of the river Mekon, and with difficulty reached the shore, swimming with one hand and bearing his poem above the water in the other, the only treasure which he had saved, and which was dearer to him than his life.

43. Sir Humphry Davy relates, that a friend of his having discovered under the burning sand of Ceylon the eggs of an alligator, had the curiosity to break one o

41 *Wavy*, (in botany) wellenförmig; *sea-green* seegrün; *sea-side*, Meeresküste; *like*, wie; *charlock* is the general English name for Ackersenf or Ackerrettig; *to be transplanted*, verpflanzt werden; *saltness*, Salzgeschmack; for *distinct* see Ext. 17; *vegetables*, here Gemüsearten; supply 'which (are,' before *as unlike* (so unähnlich); *as is each*, say: wie jede derselben. (*a*) Use for *has been taken* the passive imperf. of nehmen. (*b*) Render *has become metamorphosed* by the imperf. of sich verwandeln; the reflective form being, in German, preferred to the passive voice, when the agent from whom the activity proceeds is not mentioned. The plant alluded to in the above extract is the wild cabbage or *Brassica oleracea*.

42 *Celebrated*, berühmt; *Lusiad*, Lusiade, *f.*; *to be wrecked*, Schiffbruch leiden; *mouth*, (of a river) Mündung; *Mekon* is a river in Cochin China; *with difficulty*, mit Mühe; *to reach*, erreichen; *shore*, Ufer; *with one*, say: mit der einen; *to bear*, here emporhalten; *poem*, Gedicht; *treasure*, Schatz; *to save i.e.*, 'to rescue,' retten *dear*, theuer. (*a*) Place *reached* before *with difficulty*. (*b*) For *swimming* and *bearing*, cf. Int. p. xvii., *g* and construe *swimming — other* 'with the one hand swimming and in the other his poem,' after which clauses place the words *above the water* and *bearing*. (*b*) Camoens the greatest Portuguese poet, was born in 1524. His great epic poem *Os Lusiadas*, (*i.e.* 'the Lusitanians as the Portuguese are called) describes Vasco di Gama's expedition to India, and the brilliant exploit of his countrymen.

43 *To relate*, erzählen; turn *that-under*, by 'that one of his friend who had discovered in;' *burning* here glühend; retain the word *alligator*; turn *had—them* by 'from (aus) curiosity one of the same broke (zerbrach);' *came forth*, herausfroch; *perfect*, say: vollständig...ausgebildet; *passions*, here Triebe; *hatched* ausgebrütet; *influence*, Einwirkung; *sun-beams*, Sonnenstrahlen; *it made towards the*, eilte er dem...zu; *proper* eigentlich; *element*, Element; *which*

them, when a young alligator came forth perfect in its motions and its passions; for although hatched in the sand under the influence of the sunbeams, it made towards the water, its proper element: *when* hindered, it assumed a threatening aspect, and bit the stick presented to it.

44. Several of the British forests which are now marshes, were cut down at different periods by order of the English Parliament, because they harboured wolves and outlaws. Thus the Welsh woods were cut and burnt in the reign of Edward I., as were many of those in Ireland by Henry II., to prevent the natives from harbouring in them and harassing his troops.

45. A grain *of* musk is said to be divisible into three hundred and twenty quadrillions *of* parts, each of which is capable of affecting the olfactory nerve.

46. Our knowledge of the origin and affinities of European languages has been, within the last forty or fifty years, greatly increased and improved by the labours of German scholars.

hindered, aufgehalten; *to assume*, annehmen; *aspect*, Ausſehen; supply 'in' after *bit* and render *presented to it*, by den man ihm vorhielt.

44 *Several*, mehrere; *to cut (down) a forest* or *wood*, einen Wald umhauen; *period*, here Zeit; *by order*, auf Befehl; *to harbour* used transitively, denoting 'to give shelter,' is rendered by Zuflucht gewähren; when employed intransitively, denoting 'to seek shelter' it is translated by Zuflucht ſuchen; *Welsh*, walliſiſch; *Welsh woods* may also be turned by 'woods in Wales;' *to burn*, niederbrennen; turn *as—those* by 'as also many;' *to prevent*, verhindern; *natives*, Eingeborne; *to harass*, here beläſtigen. (*a*) For *in the reign* see Ext. 12. (*b*) The verb verhindern would here require the prep. an; cf. p. 97, n. 2.

45 *Grain* (weight), Gran; *each of which*, jeder denen jener; *to be capable*, können; *to affect*, here afficiren, from the Latin *afficere; olfactory nerve*, Geruchsnerv(e). (*a*) When the phrases *it is said, they say*, are used to report the assertion of others—like the Latin *dicitur*—they must be rendered by the requisite tense of ſollen. (*b*) *Of affecting* ought according to the rules given before to be rendered by the *Supine;* the infinitive without zu is, however, always required in German after the auxiliary verbs of mood können, mögen, dürfen, wollen, ſollen, müſſen, and also after a few other verbs, as ſehen, hören, finden, &c. Cp. the English usage of omitting the prep. 'to' before infinitives after those verbs.

46 *Knowledge*, Kenntniß; *Origin*, Urſprung; *affinities*, Verwandtſchaft, *sing.*; transl. here *within* by in, *or* by bis, *greatly* by bereichert, *increased* by bereichert and *improved* by erweitert; *labour*, Arbeit; *scholar*, Gelehrte. When *by* is a synonym of 'through,' denoting the means

können ließ gehauen.

47. At the battle of Solway, in the time of Henry VIII., 1542, when the Scotch army, commanded by Oliver Sinclair, was routed, an unfortunate troop of horse driven by *their* fears, plunged into a morass, which instantly closed upon them. The tale was traditional, but *it* is now authenticated; a man and a horse in complete armour having been found by peat diggers in the place where it was always supposed the affair had happened. The skeleton of each was well preserved, and the different parts of the armour easily distinguished.

48. The works of Milton cannot be comprehended or enjoyed unless the mind of the reader co-operate with that of the writer.

49. The town of Guatemala was founded in 1742 on the side of a volcano, in a valley about three miles wide, opening on the South Sea. Nine years afterwards it was destroyed by an earthquake, and again in 1773, during an eruption of the volcano. The ground on which the town stood gaped open in deep fissures, until at length,

by which an effect is produced, it is generally rendered by durch.

47 *At*, in; *the battle of Solway* is called in German die Schlacht bei Solway Moß; *in the*, zur; *to command*, befehligen; *by*, von; *to be routed*, zersprengt werden; *a troop of horse*, ein Trupp Reiter; *to plunge*, stürzen; *instantly*, here sofort; *to close upon*, sich schließen über. *The tale was traditional*, say: das Ereigniß war als Sage bekannt; *to be authenticated*, als authentisch erwiesen; *armour*, Rüstung; *peat digger*, Torfgräber; *it was always supposed*, wo, wie man stets annahm; *to happen*, sich zutragen. *The skeleton of each*, say die beiden Skelette; *to preserve*, here erhalten; *distinguished*, transl. zu erkennen. (*a*) Begin the German version with als (*when*). (*b*) The words *commanded by Oliver Sinclair*, qualify the expression *Scotch army*, cf. Int. p. xiv., I. (*c*) The word *fear* being an abstract noun which denotes a 'state' is used in German in the singular only. (*d*) Turn *a man, &c.*, by 'since a man and (sammt) a horse, &c. was found.' (*e*) The verb *had* may be left out in the translation, the omission of *the auxiliary verbs of tense* haben and sein, being sanctioned in dependent sentences, especially when occuring in the past compound tenses.

48 *Work*, (literary composition) Werk; *to comprehend*, verstehen; *to enjoy*, genießen; *unless*, wenn...nicht; *mind*, here Geist; *writer*, here Verfasser; *to co-operate*, zusammenwirken. Cf. for *the—Milton*, Ext. 11, n. *a*, and for *be*, Ext. 4, n. *b*.

49 *Side*, (of a hill, &c.) Abhang, *about*, ungefähr; *wide*, here breit; *opening on*, das...gegenüber lag; *to be destroyed* zerstört werden; *again*, here abermals; *ground*, Boden; *to gape open*, aufklaffen; *fissure*, Spalte; *to open*, here sich öffnen, comp. the French 's'ouvrir;' *with all its treasures*, sammt all ihren Schätzen;

after five days, an abyss opened, and the city with all its riches and eight thousand families was swallowed up. Every vestige of its former existence was entirely obliterated, and the spot is now indicated by a frightful desert four leagues distant from the present town.

50. In modern times little may be thought of the gratifications arising from motion. Yet we read that the greatest of the Greeks and even of the Romans, studied elegance in their attitudes and movements. Their apparel favoured that display of grace, while their exercises and games contributed to encourage elegance of movement. The dances they performed were not exhibitions of mere exuberance of spirit and activity. It was their pride to combine harmony in the motion of the body and limbs with majesty of gait.

to be swallowed up, verſchlungen werden; *vestige*, Spur; *to be obliterated*, vertilgt werden; *spot*, Stelle; *indicated by*, bezeichnet durch; *desert*, Wüſte; *leagues*, Meilen; *distant*, entfernt. (*a*) For *was founded*, cf. Ext. 4., n. *b*. (*b*) If the prep. *in* before the date of a year is expressed in German, the words 'the year' must be supplied after it. (*b*) The words *three miles wide* qualify the term *valley*, cf. Int. p. xiv. I.

50 *Modern*, say neuter; *little—of*, mag man...gering achten; *gratifications*, Genuß, *sing.*; *to arise from*, entſtehen aus; *of the Greeks*, unter den Griechen; *Roman*, Römer; *to study*, here ſich befleißigen; which verb requires the genitive; *elegance*, Anmuth; *attitude*, Stellung; *movement*, Bewegung; *apparel*, Kleidung; *display of grace*, Entfaltung von Grazie; *exercises*, here Leibesübungen; *contributed*, say dazu beitrugen; *to encourage*, here befördern; *to perform*, (a dance, &c.) aufführen; *exhibitions—acticity*, Kundgebungen von bloßem Uebergefühl des Daſeins und der Thatkraft; *it—pride*, ſie waren ſtolz darauf; *harmony*, die Harmonie; *limb*, Glied; *majesty*, Majeſtät; *gait*, Gang. (*a*) When the word *times* is employed in a general sense to express a historical period, it is used in German in the singular only. (*b*) Cf. for *motion*, Ext. 85. n. *c*

PART II.

I.

THE DEFENCE OF A FORD.

1.

The good king, Robert Bruce, who was always watchful and vigilant,[1] had received *some* information of the intention of this party to come upon him suddenly and by night. Accordingly he quartered[2] his little troop of sixty men on the side of a deep and swift-running river that had very steep and rocky banks. There was but one ford by which this river could be crossed in that neighbourhood,[3] and that ford was deep and narrow, so that two men could scarcely get through abreast. The path which led upwards from the water's edge[4] to the *top of* the bank was extremely narrow and difficult.

2.

Bruce caused[5] his men to lie down to take some sleep

[1] *Vigilant*, vorſichtig; *information*, Kunde; *intention*, Vorhaben; *party*, Partei; *to come upon*, here überfallen; *by night*, zur Nachtzeit, or in der Nacht. The party alluded to were a number of Galloway men, who set out to attack Bruce by surprise, taking with them some blood-hounds in order to track his steps.

[2] *To quarter*, in the sense of 'to station,' ſtationiren. Cf. for *men*, Ext. 32, n. *d*; render *on the side of* simply by the prep. bei; *swift-running*, reißend; turn *that had*, &c. by 'whose banks (Ufer) were, &c.'

[3] Turn *there — neighbourhood* briefly by 'the river had only one ford in that neighbourhood' (Gegend). *Narrow*, ſchmal.

[4] *Edge*, (border) Rand; *difficult*, here ſchwierig. Turn *water's edge* by 'edge of the water,' because the genitive ought in common prose not to precede the word which it qualifies; cf. Ext. 11 n. *a*.

[5] *To cause*, synonymous with 'to order,' 'to make,' &c. is rendered by laſſen; *men*, here and further on Leute; *to lie down*, ſich niederlegen; turn *to—sleep* by 'to sleep a little;' and *distant*, by 'which (to be placed before *about*) distant was;' *attendant*, Begleiter; *to pass*, (through a ford) gehen. Render *they* by er, because the word *enemy*, used as a military term, generally occurs in German in the singular only.

at a place about half a mile distant from the river, while he himself, with two attendants, went down to watch the ford, through which the enemy must needs pass before they could come to the place where King Robert's men were lying. He stood *for* some time looking[1] at the ford, and thinking how easily the enemy might be kept from passing there, provided it was bravely defended, when he heard at a distance the baying of a hound, which was always coming nearer and nearer. This was the blood-hound[2] which was tracing the king's steps to the ford, and the two hundred Galloway men were along with the animal, and guided by it. Bruce at first thought[3] of going back to awaken his men; but then he reflected that it might be only some shepherd's dog.

3.

So[4] he stood and listened; and by and by, as the cry of the hound came nearer, he began to hear a trampling of horses and the voices of men and the ringing and clattering of armour, and then he was sure the enemy were coming to the river side. Then the king thought, "If I go back

[1] *Looking at*, ſich beſehend; *thinking*, here bei ſich denkend; *might be kept*, davon abgehalten werden könnte; turn *from passing there* by 'to go through the same,' and *provided* by 'if,' to be followed by the expletive nur; *to defend*, (a place) vertheidigen; *when*, als; *at a distance*, in der Ferne; *the baying*, das Bellen, because the English verbal forms in *ing* used substantively, are generally rendered in German by the simple infinitive used as a neuter noun.

[2] The German expression for *bloodhound* is: Schweißhund, because the blood of wounded animals is called with sportsmen Schweiß. *To trace steps*, die Spuren verfolgen; Render the expression *Galloway men, men of Galloway* by die Männer von Galloway. *Along with*, here bei; turn *guided by it*, by 'were guided (geführt) by the same.'

[3] When *to think* expresses intention or purpose, it is rendered by gedenken, and followed by the *Supine*. *To reflect*, ſich überlegen; render here *might* by dürfte, because it expresses a supposed possibility; *shepherd's-dog* Schäferhund.

[4] Render *so* by alſo, and supply da after *stood*; *to listen*, (hearken) horchen; *by and by as*, say bald darauf wie. Use for *the cry*, das Gebell, which is the frequentative substantative of bellen, and form in the same manner frequentative nouns from trampeln, for *trampling*, from klirren for *ringing* and from raſſeln for *clattering*. Render here *men* by Menſchen; *then—sure*, by dann ward es ihm zur Gewißheit, and supply daß before *the enemy were* (see p. 14, n. 5); *river side*, Ufer.

to give my men the alarm,[1] these Galloway men will get through the ford without opposition; and that would be a pity since it is a place so advantageous to make defence against them." He therefore sent his followers[2] to waken his men, and remained alone by the bank of the river.

4.

In the meanwhile[3] the noise and trampling of the horses increased, and the moon being bright, Bruce beheld the glancing arms of about two hundred men, who came down to the opposite bank of the river. The men of Galloway, on their part,[4] saw but one solitary figure guarding the ford, and the foremost *of them* plunged into the river without minding him. But as they could only pass the ford one by one,[5] *the* Bruce, who stood high above them on the bank where they were to land, killed the foremost *man* with a thrust of his long spear, and with a second thrust stabbed the horse. In the confusion five or six of the enemy were slain, or, having been borne down the current,[6] were drowned. The rest were terrified and drew back. But when the Galloway men looked[7] again and saw that they were opposed by only one man, they themselves being so many, they cried out that their honour would be lost for ever if they

[1] *To—alarm*, um meine Leute zu den Waffen zu rufen. Cf. for the next clause the *note* to Ext. 7. *To get*, here kommen; *without opposition*, ungehindert; *that—pity*, daß wäre Schade. Render *it* by dieſelbe, cf. for *so advantageous* (günſtig) which qualifies *place*, Int. p. xiv., I. and transl. *to—them* briefly by zur Vertheidigung.

[2] *Followers*, Begleiter; *to waken*, wecken; use the supine; *by the*, am.

[3] *In the meanwhile*, unterdeſſen; *to increase*, zunehmen; for *being*, cf. Int. p. xvi., *c*; *to behold*, erblicken; for *men*, cf. Ext. 32, *note d*; *opposite* here jenſeitige.

[4] *On their part*, ihrerſeits; *but*, here nur; *solitary figure*, einzelne Geſtalt; *to guard*, bewachen; see Int. p. xviii.; *the foremost*, Vorderſte; *to mind*, (any one) ſich um (Jemand) kümmern; see *note a* to Ext. 31.

[5] *One by one*, je einer; *to land*, here ans Land ſteigen; *to stab*, erſtechen.

[6] Place *having — current*, von der Strömung fortgeriſſen after *were drowned*, which latter verb is here used intransitively.

[7] *Looked*, say: hinblickten; turn *they—man* by 'that only one man stood opposite (gegenüber) to them;' *they themselves being*, während ihrer... waren. *for ever*, auf immer; *did—way*,

did not force their way, and encouraged each other, with loud cries, to plunge through and assault him. But by this time[1] the king's soldiers came up to his assistance, and the Galloway men retreated and gave up their enterprise.—WALTER SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandfather.*

II.

SCHILLER'S FLIGHT FROM STUTTGART.[2]

Schiller's embarassments[3] became more pressing[4] than ever.[5] With the natural feeling of a young author,[6] he[7] had ventured to go in secret[8] and witness the first representation[9] of his tragedy at Mannheim. His incognito

ay: nicht den Uebergang erzwängen; *ries, Geſchrei, sing.; to plunge hrough,* durchwaten.

[1] Avoid the Anglicism bei dieſer eit for *by this time* which should e rendered by jetzt or nun; or here y the more emphatic ſchon; *came— ssistance,* kamen . . . demſelben zur ülfe herbei.

[2] For the benefit of those who re n t acquainted with the life of chiller, we will briefly add that, fter having been educated at the ilitary Academy at Stuttgart, ater called „Die Karlsſchule," after he founder, Duke Karl of Würtemberg, he became military surgeon, nd continued to be kept under trict military discipline. Having een refused permission to visit lannheim in order to witness the erformance of his first drama, Die Räuber, he did so clandestinely, nd was put under arrest for a ortnight, and forbidden to write future on anything except on edicine. He then threw up his post and freed himself by flight.

[3] *Embarrassment,* Verlegenheit.

[4] *Pressing,* dringend.

[5] When the adverb *ever* signifies 'at any time' past or future, it is rendered by jemals, or the more expressive je. Compare the French *jamais* and the Latin *unquam.*

[6] *Author,* Autor or Schriftſteller.

[7] When the object of a sentence is a supine or a whole clause, and the leading verb in the principal sentence governs the accusative case, we generally add—to that principal sentence—the accusative of the pronoun es, in order to supply the direct object; more particularly when the emphasis is laid on the governing verb: *e.g.* Wer wagt es, Ritterſmann oder Knapp, zu tauchen in dieſen Schlund? *Who ventures, knight, or squire, to dive into this gulf?* *

[8] *To — secret,* ſich heimlich aufzumachen; *to witness,* i.e. to see by personal presence, beiwohnen.

[9] *Representation,* here Aufführung.

---

* According to our opinion, the pronoun *es*, in the above application might properly be called the *grammatical object.*

did not conceal him; he was put under arrest during a week[1] for this offence; and as the punishment did not deter him from again transgressing[2] *in a similar manner*, he learned[3] that it was in contemplation to try more rigorous measures with him. Dark hints[4] were given to him of some exemplary[5] as well as imminent severity; and Dalberg's aid, the sole hope of averting[6] it by quiet means, was distant and dubious. Schiller saw himself reduced to extremities.[7] Beleaguered[8] with present distresses and the most horrible forebodings on every side, roused to the highest pitch of indignation,[9] yet forced to keep silence[10] and wear the face of patience, he could endure this maddening[11] constraint no longer.

He resolved to be free, at whatever risk;[12] to abandon advantages which he could not buy at such a price; to quit his stepdame[13] home, and go forth, though friendless and alone, to seek his fortune in the great market of life.[14] Some[15] foreign duke or prince was arriving at Stuttgart; and all *the* people were in movement, occupied with seeing the spectacle of his entrance: Schiller seized this opportunity of retiring from[16] the city, careless whither he went, so[17] he got beyond the reach of turnkeys and

[1] *He—week*, ihm wurde eine Woche Arreſt...auferlegt; *offence*, Vergehen.

[2] When *to transgress*, is used transitively, it must be rendered by ſich eines Vergehens ſchuldig machen. Use here desſelben instead of eines.

[3] *To learn*, here erfahren. Transl. *it was in contemplation* by man beabſichtigte.

[4] *Hint*, here Andeutung; *given* = made.

[5] *Of some exemplary*, von einer exemplariſchen; *imminent*, nahe bevorſtehend.

[6] *To avert*, abwenden; use Supine.

[7] *Reduced to extremities*, aufs Aeußerſte getrieben.

[8] The expression *beleaguered* must here be rendered freely, since we cannot say in German that a man is von Ahnungen belagert or umgeben. The term heimgeſucht, 'afflicted,' would here be a suitable expression. *Distresses*, Nöthen; *on*, von.

[9] *Roused—indignation*, bis auf den höchſten Grad entrüſtet.

[10] *To keep silence*, ſtill zu ſchweigen; *face* = mask.

[11] *Maddening*, transl. ihn bis zur Raſerei treibenden.

[12] *At—risk*, auf jede Gefahr hin; *abandon* = give up.

[13] *Stepdame*, ſtiefmütterlich; *to go forth*, fortzuwandern; *to seek*, here verſuchen.

[14] We use in German the metaphor der Jahrmarkt des Lebens.

[15] *Some*, irgend ein; *occupied with seeing*, nur darauf bedacht . . . mit anzuſehen; *entrance*, Einzug.

[16] *Of—from*, aus . . . zu flüchten; *careless*, unbekümmert.

[17] *So*, used in the sense of 'provided that,' is rendered by wofern, wenn nur; *got—reach*, aus dem Bereich ...käme.

grand-dukes and commanding officers. It was in the month of October, 1782. * * *

Schiller was[1] in his twenty-third year when he left Stuttgart. He says he "went empty away[2]—empty in purse and hope." The future was,[3] indeed, sufficiently dark before him. * * * Yet his situation, though gloomy enough, was not entirely without its brighter side.[4] He was now a free man—free, however poor.—CARLYLE, *Life of Schiller.*

III.

SILHOUETTES.

Etienne de Silhouette was Minister of State in France in[5] 1759. The treasury[6] was in an exhausted condition, and Silhouette endeavoured to save the country by excessive economy. At first the Parisians pretended[7] to take his advice, merely to laugh at him:[8] they cut their coats shorter, and wore them without sleeves; they turned[9] their gold snuff-boxes into rough wooden ones;[10] and the new-fashioned portraits were now only profiles[11] traced by a black pencil round the shadow of a profile cast by candle on white paper.[12] These portraits retained[13] since those times the name *of* Silhouette.

[1] *Was* = *stood.*

[2] *Away*, von tannen; *in*, im; supply arm an before *hope.*

[3] *Was*, say. tag.

[4] *Its brighter side*, Lichtſeite.

[5] Cf. Ext. 49, n. *b*; Ext. 4, n. *a.*

[6] *Treasury*, Schatzkammer; *was*, befand ſich; *condition*, Zuſtand; *by*, durch; *economy*, Sparſamkeit.

[7] *To pretend*, ſich ſtellen; *to take* = as if they...followed.

[8] *To—him*, um ſich über ihn luſtig zu machen.

[9] *To turn into*, vertauſchen mit.

[10] When *one* is used after adjectives, as a substitute for a noun previously mentioned, or merely understood, it is suppressed in German. *Rough*, roh.

[11] *Were—profiles*, beſtanden nun bloß aus Profilen.

[12] *Traced—paper.* The above sentence must be given in German in a thoroughly different form, viz. 'which with a pencil round the through a candle on white paper cast shadow of a profile were traced' (gezeichnet). For *round*, cf. Ext. 40; *on*, auf governs here the accusative.

[13] *To retain*, beibehalten; for *times*, cf. Ext. 50, n. *a.*

IV.

PERHAPS IT WAS HIS UNCLE.

We were towing[1] through high reeds this morning, the men invisible, and the rope mowing over the high tops of the grass,[2] when the noise disturbed a hippopotamus from his slumber, and he was immediately perceived close to the boat. He was about half-grown,[3] and in an instant about twenty men[4] jumped into the water in search of him, thinking him a mere baby;[5] but as he suddenly appeared, and was about three times as large as they had expected, they were not very eager to close. However, the reis[6] Diabb pluckily led the way,[7] and seized him by the hind leg, when[8] the crowd *of men* rushed in, and we had a grand tussle. Ropes were thrown from the vessel, and nooses *were* quickly slipped over his[9] head; but he had the best of the struggle,[10] and was dragging the people into the open river. I was therefore obliged to end[11] the sport by putting[12] a ball through his head. He was scored all over[13] by the tusks of some other hippopotamus that had been bullying[14] him. The men declared that his father had thus misused[15] him; others were of opinion that it was his mother; and the argument ran high, and

[1] *To tow,* bugſiren; *reeds,* Schilf, *sing.*; *mowing,* say: fuhr ... dahin.

[2] *Tops—grass,* Grasſpitzen.

[3] *Half-grown,* halb ausgewachſen.

[4] *About...men,* an...Mann; *in—him*=in order to seek it.

[5] *Thinking — baby,* da ſie es für ein bloßes Kind hielten; *appeared,* say: auftauchte; *eager to close,* begierig es anzugreifen.

[6] *Reis* means in Turkish the captain of a merchantman.

[7] *To lead the way pluckily,* muthig vorangehen.

[8] *When,* here worauf; *in,* hinein.

[9] *Slipped over his,* ihm ... über den ... gezogen.

[10] *To have the best of a struggle,* die Oberhand bekommen.

[11] *To end,* here ein Ende machen; *sport,* Jagd.

[12] *By putting,* indem ich... jagte; *ball,* Kugel; *his*=the.

[13] *Was—over,* war über und über wie gefärbt; *tusk,* Hauzahn.

[14] There is no single equivalent in German for the comprehensive term *to bully.* The expressions given in the Dictionaries are mostly quite inappropriate. We should suggest here the idiomatic phrase das ihm übel mitgeſpielt hatte.

[15] *To misuse,* mißhandeln; *to be of opinion,* der Meinung ſein.

became hot.[1] These Arabs have an extraordinary taste[2] for arguments upon the most trifling points. I have frequently known my men argue[3] throughout the greater part of the night, and recommence the same argument on the following morning. These debates generally end in a fight; and in the present instance the excitement of the hunt only added to[4] the heat of the argument.

They at length agreed to[5] refer it to me,[5] and both parties approached, vociferously advancing their theories;[6] one half persisting[7] that the young hippo had been bullied by his father, and the others adhering to the mother as the cause.[8] I being[9] referee, suggested[9] that "perhaps it was his uncle." "Wah Illahi sahé!" (By Allah, it is true!) Both parties were satisfied with the suggestion.[10] Dropping their theory, they became practical, and fell to[11] with knives and axes to cut up the cause of the argument.—Sir S. W. Baker, *The Albert N'Yanza.*

V.

A ROMAN STRATAGEM.[12]

The place near the Mulucha was a rocky eminence in the midst of a plain. On the summit[13] there was just room enough for a small town. The sides[14] of this hill-

[1] Turn *the—hot* by 'the dispute became loud and violent.'

[2] *Taste*, here Vorliebe; *argument*, Discussion; *trifling*, geringfügig.

[3] *I—argue*, ich habe es oft erlebt, daß meine Leute...disputirten; *debates*, Debatten; *instance*, Fall.

[4] *Only—to*, erhöhete...nur noch.

[5] *To—me*, mich zu befragen.

[6] *Advancing their theories*, indem sie ihre Meinungen...verbrachten.

[7] Render *one half persisting*, by die Einen bestanden darauf

[8] *And—cause*. More briefly, in German, während Andere die Mutter als die Ursache angaben.

[9] *Being*, say als; *suggested*, meinte.

[10] *Suggestion*, Ansicht; *dropping*, indem sie...aufgaben.

[11] *Fell to*, machten sich daran; *to cut up*, zu zerlegen.

[12] The above is an episode from the famous Jugurthine war, at the time when Marius was in command of the Roman army in Africa. The learned author from whose work the extract is taken conjectures that the siege of the fort *near the Mulucha*, (unweit der Mulucha) took place in 106 B.C.

[13] *Summit*, Gipfel; *just*, gerade.

[14] *Sides*, here Abhänge.

fort[1] were steep and very high, and there was only one narrow approach to the town, for all the rest[2] of the mountain was as precipitous as if it had been made so by the hand of man.[3] This place contained Jugurtha's money,[4] and Marius was very eager to get possession of it. But this was not an easy undertaking. The place had sufficient men[4] to defend it, a good supply of provisions[5] and a spring of water.[6] It could not be attacked in the usual way, by raising earth-banks and towers,[7] and employing[8] other military contrivances. The[9] single road by which the place was reached[9] was not only very narrow, but steep on both sides, either naturally so,[10] or[11] the ground had been cut away. * * *

Many days passed, and nothing was done, when a lucky accident[12] helped Marius out of his difficulty. A Ligurian,[13] who belonged to the auxiliary cohorts,[14] and

[1] *Hill-fort,* Bergfeſte; *there—approach,* nur ein ſchmaler Weg führte.

[2] *The rest,* der übrige Theil.

[3] Translate *hand of man,* by the expressive term Menſchenhand. The student of German will soon discover that that language possesses greater facilities in compounding words forming one notion into a single term than any other modern language. Great vigour and poetic colouring is thus imparted to words which, when merely linked together by means of adverbs and prepositions, produce no particular effect; and as an additional advantage afforded by these compounds, may be mentioned the possibility of avoiding the frequent repetition of the genitive relation, a drawback from which even the Latin is not free. Nobody should, however, coin new compound terms without having mastered the language. Special rules and hints for forming compound substantives will be given in the course of the present work.

[4] *Money,* say: Schatz; *eager,* begierig; *to—it,* ſich deſſen zu bemächtigen; *not an,* kein; *men,* Mannſchaft.

[5] *A—provisions,* Vorräthe genug.

[6] Render *spring of water* by Brunnen.

[7] *By—towers,* durch die Errichtung von Dämmen und Thürmen. The military expressions are Vertheidigungsdämme and Wanderthürme, *i.e.* 'walking towers.'

[8] *Employing,* transl. durch die Anwendung; *contrivance,* Vorrichtung.

[9] Turn *the—reached* by 'the only way which led to the place.'

[10] *Naturally so,* say: von Natur.

[11] Supply the conjunction weil: *to cut away,* here abtragen.

[12] *Accident,* here Zufall.

[13] There are various forms in German for the proper name *Ligurian,* all of which have the same form in both numbers. In accordance with the Greek Λίγυες we have the word Ligyer; whilst the forms Ligurier, Ligurer, and Ligurianer, are derived from the Latin *Ligur.*

[14] The expression *auxiliary cohorts* may be turned in German into one compound term by omitting the letter *y* in the first, and replacing *s* by *en* in the second, word.

had gone out of the camp to fetch water, saw some snails crawling[1] among the rocks on the back[2] of the hill-fort. He picked up one or two; and as he went on picking more,[3] he came at last almost to the top of the hill. Being[4] curious to reach the very[5] summit, he made his way up[6] with some difficulty, and had a full view of the flat on which the town was built; for all *the* Numidians[7] were engaged on the opposite side, where the fight was going on.[8] Having well examined[9] the place, and carefully observed[10] the way down, he reported his discovery to Marius, and urged him to make an attempt[11] on the fort by the part[12] where he had climbed up, offering to lead the way. Marius sent a few men who were about him, *and* the Ligurian with them,[13] to examine the track that had been discovered. The reports of the men varied.[14] Some said that the thing was[15] easy, and others that it was difficult. However, the general had some confidence that the plan would do.[16] Accordingly, he selected five trumpeters and hornblowers,[17] the most active[18] that he could find, and four centurions[19] to look after them. * * *

The little company[20] were directed to obey the Ligurian as their[21] guide, and the next day was appointed for the

[1] Cf. Int. p. xviii.

[2] *Back*, Rückſeite.

[3] Turn *he—more*, by 'whilst he picked up always more.'

[4] See Int. page xvi., *c*.

[5] The word *very*, in the sense in which it is used here, must be rendered in German by ſelbſt.

[6] *Made—up*=went up.

[7] *Numidian*, Numidier.

[8] *Was going on*, ſtattfand.

[9] *Having well examined*, say: nachdem er...genau beſichtigt.

[10] *Carefully observed*, say: ſich... gut gemerkt hatte; *down*, here hinunter.

[11] *Attempt* = attack.

[12] *By the part*, von der Seite aus. Two prepositions are frequently used in German, as is the case here, in order to express direction, or the course of a motion.

[13] Render *with them* by ſammt, placing this preposition before the words *the Ligurian*.

[14] *Varied*, lauteten verſchieden, *i.e.* 'sounded contradictory.'

[15] See page 29, note 3.

[16] The verb *to do* is here a synonym of 'to succeed.'

[17] The Romans are known to have had two kinds of military musicians, viz. trumpeters and hornblowers.

[18] *Active*, here energiſch.

[19] The plural of Centurio is, in German, Centurien, or more usually Centurionen; *to—them*, auf ſie Acht zu geben.

[20] *Company*, here Truppe; *were directed*, turn by 'received the order;' *to obey*, here folgen.

[21] Use here the dative.

ascent. The snail-picker[1] had no doubt often climbed his native rocks and mountains; but his companions were less expert than himself. However, after a good deal of trouble and much fatigue,[2] they reached the summit, at the back of the town. They found all quiet, for the men, as on previous occasions, were fighting with the Romans on the opposite side. Marius had kept the Numidians actively engaged all that day[3] up to the time when he was informed that the Ligurian and his party had reached the summit of the hill. He then came out from under the vineæ,[4] and cheering[5] his men, ordered them to advance to the wall with their[6] shields interlaced over their heads in the manner which the Romans named "testudo," or tortoise. At the same time the enemy were[7] assailed with missiles from the engines, and with arrows and slings. The Numidians, who had often destroyed and burnt the vineæ, did not fight from the walls, but[8] confidently came out in front of them.[9] While the battle was raging, all at once the sound of horns and trumpets was heard at the back of the town. The women and children, who had crowded to[10] the front to see the fight, fled back in alarm; they were followed by those who were nearest to the wall;[11] and at last all the Numidians turned their backs.[12] The Romans pressed upon them,[13]

[1] *Snail-picker*, Schneckenſammler; *native*, here heimathlich. The Italian district formerly called 'Liguria' is traversed by the Maritime Alps and the Apennines. *Climbed*, erklommen.

[2] *After—fatigue*, nach vieler Mühe und Anſtrengung.

[3] *Had—day*, hatte die Numidier den ganzen Tag im Kampf beſchäftigt.

[4] The Latin term *vineæ* may be rendered by Lauben- or Laufgang-hütten, or by the more expressive Laufballen, *i.e.* running halls.

[5] *Cheering* = encouraging.

[6] Turn *with their* by 'the;' *interlaced*, transl. zuſammengehalten.

[7] Use the singular number.

[8] When the adversative conjunction *but* merely limits the antecedent, it must be rendered by aber; when, however, it denies entirely the antecedent, it is to be translated by ſondern, which was in Middle High German 'sunder,' a form still existing in English, with a cognate signification.

[9] *Confidently—them*, rückten muthig vor dieſelben hinaus.

[10] *To crowd to*, ſtrömen nach which, being a verb denoting motion, is conjugated with ſein; *alarm*, Beſtürzung.

[11] Turn *they — wall* by 'those who were nearest to the wall followed them.'

[12] *Turned their backs* = fled.

[13] *Pressed upon them*, drangen auf ſie ein.

and passing over[1] *the bodies of* the killed and wounded, made their way[2] to the wall without stopping to plunder,[3] as we are told,[4] though we cannot conceive[5] that a poor Numidian had anything upon him that was worth taking.[6] —GEORGE LONG, *Decline of the Roman Republic.*

VI.

A SIGN OF THE TIMES.

There was,[7] at all events, one class by which the memory of Joseph II. was long and fondly cherished;[8] and it was that to the sympathies of which he would have best loved to make his appeal.[9] The Austrian peasantry[10] of German blood are *at once* an eminently loyal race, and one on which[11] affection and kindness are rarely thrown away. They were never misled in their judgment of him. Even when[12] kneeling before the carriage of the pope,[13] they had no idea[14] that they were

[1] *Passing over*, indem ſie über... dahin ſchritten.

[2] *Made their way*, kamen ſie.

[3] *Without—plunder*, ohne ſich mit Plündern aufzuhalten.

[4] *To tell* belonging to that class of verbs mentioned in Ext. 22, note *b*, we cannot use it in the passive voice in German unless we employ it impersonally; as, *I am told*, mir wird geſagt. Here we should render *as we are told* wie wir berichtet werden.

[5] *Though—conceive*, obwohl wir uns nicht denken können; *upon him*, bei ſich.

[6] *That—taking*, das des Nehmens werth geweſen wäre.

[7] The impersonal phrases *there is*, *there was*, are rendered by es gibt, es gab, when existence is to be expressed in an indefinite manner, as is the case here (compare the French *il y a*); but if existence is to be expressed in a definite manner, we must use the corresponding form of the verb ſein.

[8] *By—cherished*, bei der Joſeph der zweite lange in theurem Andenken ſtand.

[9] Render *to—appeal*, by an deren Sympathie er am liebſten hätte appelliren mögen.

[10] *Peasantry* = peasants; *blood*, here Abkunft; *a—race*, eine außerordentlich loyale Raſſe.

[11] *And—which*, bei der.

[12] See page 41, note 9.

[13] Pope Pius VI. visited Vienna in 1782 with a view to persuade the emperor to desist from his ecclesiastical reforms.

[14] *No idea*, transl. keine Idee davon.

assuming an attitude of opposition to[1] their friend and emperor. No royal name lives among them at this day in reverential tradition so truly[2] as that of Kaiser Joseph.

Their estimate[3] of him cannot be better expressed than in the simple apologue[4] which is still current in Austria. The peasantry of a Styrian[5] village are met[6] to discuss the news of Joseph's death. They will not believe it.[7] It is a lie of the Court nobles,[8] the lawyers, the lazy friars. While they are debating,[9] information is brought of the arrival, bit by bit,[10] of the old order of things: the Carthusians have[11] returned to the neighbouring abbey; the Capuchins have resumed their rounds;[12] the Forstmeister[13] and the gamekeeper have reoccupied[14] their lodges; and the[15] steward is sitting at the receipt[15] of feudal dues. The oldest peasant rises and takes off his hat: "Then Joseph is dead indeed; may Heaven have mercy[16] on his soul."—H. Merivale, *Historical Studies.*

[1] *An—to*, eine feindliche Stellung gegen; *royal*, here fürstlich.

[2] *Lives — truly*, erfreut sich bei ihnen bis auf diesen Tag einer solchen traditionellen Ehrfurcht.

[3] If we do not wish to render the above sentence freely, we must translate the term *estimate* by Meinung, *expressed* by bezeichnet, and turn *in* by 'through.'

[4] *Apologue*, Sage; *is—current*, noch im Umlauf ist.

[5] *Styrian*, steierisch.

[6] Use the perfect of sich versammeln; *to discuss*, besprechen.

[7] Translate this and the following *it* by the neuter pronoun, the same referring to a statement in general.

[8] *Court nobles* = courtiers.

[9] *To debate*, debattiren; *information*, die Nachricht.

[10] *The—bit*, say: die allmähliche Einführung; *order*, here Ordnung.

[11] See page 24, note 10.

[12] *Have—rounds*, machen wieder ihre Runden.

[13] The Germans in Austria use commonly for Forstmeister the term Waldmeister, which expression, however, might be objected to because it is the name of some plants, more particularly of the *Asperula odorata* or 'woodroof.' For the term *gamekeeper* there is in German no general expression which would denote the same rank in all parts of Germany. It may often be rendered by Förster, and in the present instance by Jäger.

[14] *To reoccupy*, wieder Besitz nehmen (von); *lodge*, here Försterhaus.

[15] *The — receipt*, der Verwalter beaufsichtigt die Einnahmen; *feudal*, feudal; *dues*, Abgaben.

[16] *May—have mercy.* Use the present conjunctive (subjunctive) of sich erbarmen, this mood being required in clauses containing a prayer, request, wish, hope, &c.

VII.

THE SHAKERS'[1] DINNER.

These Shakers dine in silence.[2] Brothers and sisters dine in a common[3] room, at tables ranged[4] in a line, a few feet[5] apart. They eat at six in the morning,[6] at noon,[7] at six in the evening; following[7] in this respect a rule which is all but uniform[8] in America, especially in the western parts of this continent, from the Mississippi *River* to the Pacific Ocean. They rally to[9] the sound of a bell; file[10] into the eating-room in a single line, women going[10] up to one end of the room, men to the other, when[11] they drop on their knees for a short and silent prayer; sit down and eat, helping[12] each other *to* the food. Not a word is[13] spoken, unless a brother should need some help from a brother, a sister from a sister.[14]

[1] The *Shakers* are a religious sect in America, the chief home of which is the village of Mount Lebanon, situated in the upper country of the Hudson River. The English term *Shaker* may be retained in German, although it is translated by some writers by the coined expression Schütter-Quäker, or the more euphonic Zitterer.

[2] *Dine in silence*, eſſen ſchweigend zu Mittag; *dine* (*in*), ſpeiſen, *&c.*

[3] *Common* is here to be rendered by gemeinſchaftlich; the simple form gemein would signify 'mean.'

[4] Turn *ranged*, *&c.*, by 'which are ranged (aufgeſtellt) in a line, (Reihe), some feet apart, (von einander).'

[5] Cf. Ext. 32, note *d*.

[6] Similar adverbial expressions are expressed in German by the genitive case, with or without the definite article, when they denote an habitual occurrence of an action.

[7] *At noon*, um die Mittagsſtunde; turn *following* by 'they follow; *respect*, here Hinſicht.

[8] Turn *a –uniform* by 'a custom which is almost general.'

[9] *To rally to*, ſich verſammeln auf.

[10] *To file*, here ſich begeben; *single*, einfach; *women going*=the women go; place *end—room* after *other*.

[11] *When*, worauf.

[12] There is no single equivalent for the expression *to help*, and its derivatives, in the sense of 'to present to at table.' It may be rendered by ſich bedienen, anbieten, or reichen. The last term should be used here.

[13] See Extr. 4, note *b*.

[14] In accordance with the remark made in the last note but one, we must turn the above by 'except when (außer wenn) a brother from a brother, or a sister from a sister, should want something to be reached' (etwas gereicht haben wollte).

A whisper serves.[1] No one[2] gossips with her neighbour, for every one is busy with her own affairs. Even the help that any one may need is given and taken[3] without thanks;[4] such forms of courtesy[5] and politeness not being considered necessary in a family of saints.

Elder[6] Frederick sits at the end, not at the head, of one table;[7] Elderess Antoinette at the other end. The food, though it is very good of[8] its kind, and very well cooked,[9] is simple, being[9] wholly, or almost wholly, produce of the earth; tomatoes, roast apples, peaches, potatoes, squash,[10] hominy, boiled corn, and the like. The grapes are excellent, reminding me of those of Bethlehem; and the eggs—**hard**[11] eggs, boiled eggs, scrambled eggs[11]—are delicious. The drink[12] is water, milk, and tea. Then we have pies,[13] tarts, candies,[14] dried fruits, and syrups. For my own part,[15] being a Gentile and a sinner, I have been indulged[16] in cutlets, chickens, and home-made wines.[17]

"Good food and sweet[18] air," says Frederick, "are our

[1] *To serve* being here a synonym of 'to suffice,' translate by genügen.

[2] The assertion referring to the female portion of the company, we must employ the feminine of kein, and of the corresponding term, Jeder, for *every one*. Transl. *with—affairs* by mit ſich ſelbſt.

[3] Here again we must express the whole phrase by some other turn, viz. 'even when something is reached to any one, it is offered and accepted.'

[4] *Thanks*, say: Förmlichkeiten. Dank might here imply that the help offered was ungratefully or ungraciously received.

[5] *Courtesy*, feiner Anſtand.

[6] *Elder*, Aelteſter. The article may here be omitted in accordance with the rule, that common names used as titles before proper names require no article.

[7] Turn *at—table* by 'at the lower, not at the upper, end of the one table.' *Elderess*, Aelteſte.

[8] Turn *of* by 'in.'

[9] *Well cooked*, ſorgfältig zubereitet; *being*, say: da ſie...aus...beſteht.

[10] *Squash*, Kürbiß; *corn*, here Mais; *the like*, dergleichen.

[11] *Hard—eggs*, hart- und weichgekochte Eier, Rühreier.

[12] *Drink*, Getränk; *is*, beſteht aus.

[13] *Pies*, when not made of meat, as is evidently the case here, retain the English name in German; *meat pies* are called Fleiſchpaſteten, or simply Paſteten.

[14] *Candy*, Zuckerwerk, is used in German in the singular only; and the equivalent of *syrup*, denoting the sweet juice of fruits, is Fruchtſaft. The word Sirup is employed in German for *treacle*.

[15] *For my own part*, was mich betrifft; *being*, da ich...bin.

[16] Use the passive imperfect of regaliren (mit).

[17] We use in German for the expression *home-made wine* the general term Obſtwein, *i.e.* 'fruit-wine.'

[18] Turn here *sweet* by 'fresh.'

only medicines." The rosy flesh[1] of his people, a tint but rarely seen in the United States, appears to answer very well for his assertion,[2] that in such a place no other physic is required.[3]

No words[4] being spoken during meals,[5] about twenty minutes serve[6] them amply for repast. One minute more, and the table is swept bare of dishes;[7] the plates, the knives and forks, the napkins, the glass,[8] are cleaned and polished; every article[8] is returned to[9] its proper place, and the sweet, soft[10] sense of order is restored.—HEPWORTH DIXON, *New America.*

VIII.

BEN JONSON.[11]

Ben Jonson had written conjointly[12] with Chapman and Marston a comedy which contained some passages reflecting[13] on the Scottish nation. The authors were thrown into prison, and threatened[14] with the loss of their ears

[1] *Flesh*, transl. Teint, *m.* (from the Latin *tingere*), to be pronounced in German as in French; *the United States*, die Vereinigten Staaten.

[2] *To—assertion*, die Wahrheit seiner Behauptung zu bestätigen.

[3] *To be required*, nöthig sein. The assertion being here a quotation from another person (*oratio obliqua*), the verb must be used in the *conjunctive* (called by some grammarians *subjunctive*) mood, which mood we should also use in Latin.

[4] Use in German the singular. Cf. Int. p. xvi., *c*, and Ext. 4. n. *b*

[5] The term *meals* must here be turned by 'the eating,' to avoid the unnecessary repetition of the same expression in one and the same short sentence.

[6] *Serve*, here genügen. See p. 2, note 7. Render *more* by noch.

[7] *Swept—dishes*, say briefly abgedeckt.

[8] *Glass* must be rendered by Glasgeschirr, if it is to denote in general the various articles made of glass. Render *article* by Stück.

[9] *Is—to*, befindet sich wieder an.

[10] For *sweet* and *soft* we should prefer in German the epithets 'beautiful,' 'friendly;' *sense*, here Gefühl.

[11] Ben Jonson was a contemporary of Shakespeare, to whom he is considered second as a dramatist.

[12] *Conjointly*, gemeinschaftlich; *passage* (in a book), Stelle.

[13] Turn *reflecting* by the present participle of 'to blame,' using it as an attributive adjective.

[14] The simple verb treiben would here be inapplicable, since it is an intransitive verb, and could

and noses. Jonson had no considerable share in[1] the composition of the piece,[2] and was, besides, in such favour,[3] that he would not have been involved;[4] but he voluntarily accompanied his two friends to prison, determined to share their fate. They were not tried;[5] and when Jonson was set at liberty, he gave an entertainment[6] to his friends. His mother was present on this joyous occasion, and she produced[7] a paper of poison, which, she said, she[8] intended to have given[9] her son in his liquor[10] rather than he should submit to personal mutilation and disgrace, and another dose, which she intended[11] afterwards to have taken herself.[11]

IX.

A MAIDEN SPEECH.[12]

The season[13] had hardly commenced when the "Bill[14] for regulating Trials in Cases of High Treason"[15] was

therefore not be used in the passive voice. But this verb can assume a transitive meaning by means of the prefix be.

[1] *To have a share in anything,* an einer Sache Antheil haben; *composition,* here Abfaſſung.

[2] The piece alluded to was called *Eastward Hoe.*

[3] The idiomatic expression is, in German, 'to *stand* in favour.'

[4] *Involved,* in die Sache verwickelt, to be used here in the passive voice.

[5] *To try,* here vor Gericht ſtellen.

[6] *Entertainment* being here synonymous with 'feast, banquet,' transl. Gaſtmahl.

[7] *To produce,* here zeigen; *of* = with.

[8] Turn *which—she* by 'which she, as she said.'

[9] *Intended—given,* hätte geben wollen.

[10] *Liquor,* here Getränk; *than—submit,* als daß er ſich...unterwürfe; *another dose,* eine zweite Doſis.

[11] *To intend,* beabſichtigen; *to—herself,* say: ſelbſt zu nehmen.

[12] As the nearest approach to the idiomatic English expression *maiden speech,* there has been coined the term Erſtlingsrede, *i.e.* 'firstling-speech,' in the same way as we say Erſtlingslied for the first song written by a poet or set to music by a composer. Some dictionaries translate *maiden speech* by erſte Rede only, which is neither a characteristic nor a convenient general expression. The literal translation, Jungfernrede, coined by some contemporary German writers, does not grammatically convey the same meaning as the English expression.

[13] The 'Parliamentary' *season* is called in German Seſſion.

[14] Retain the English expression, using it as a fem. noun.

[15] *For—Treason,* um das Gerichtsverfahren in Hochverrathsſachen zu reguliren; *Commons* = House

again laid on the table of the Commons. Of the debates to which it gave occasion[1] nothing is known except one interesting circumstance,[2] which has been preserved[3] by tradition. Among those who supported the Bill appeared conspicuous[4] a young Whig of high rank, of ample[5] fortune, and of great abilities, which had been assiduously improved by study.[6] This was Anthony Ashley Cooper, Lord[7] Ashley, eldest son of the second Earl of Shaftesbury, and grandson of that renowned politician[8] who had, in the days of Charles the Second, been at one time the most unprincipled *of* ministers,[9] and at another the most unprincipled *of* demagogues.[9] Ashley had just been returned to Parliament[10] for the borough of Poole, and was[11] in his twenty-fifth year. In the course of his speech[12] he faltered, stammered, and seemed to lose the thread of his reasoning.[13] The House—then, as now, indulgent to[14] novices, and then, as now, well aware that, on a first appearance,[15] the hesitation which is the effect[16] of modesty and sensibility[17] is quite as promising a[18] sign as volubility of utterance and ease of manner[19]—

[1] *Occasion*, here Veranlaſſung.

[2] The term *circumstance* being here a synonym of 'incident,' we must render it by Zwiſchenfall.

[3] *Has been preserved*, transl. auf uns gekommen iſt.

[4] *Appeared conspicuous*, zeichnete ſich beſonders . . . aus.

[5] Turn *ample* by 'great,' and the subsequent adjective *great* by bedeutend. Intelligent students will soon find out that it is not always possible or advisable to use the same epithets in all languages.

[6] Turn *which—study* by 'which had been improved (gepflegt worden waren) through industry and study.'

[7] Titles like *Lord, Lady, Earl*, &c., should remain untranslated.

[8] *Politician* = statesman.

[9] Use in both cases the nominative singular; *unprincipled*, gewiſſenlos.

[10] *To be returned to Parliament*, ins Parlament gewählt werden.

[11] Turn *was* by 'stood.'

[12] When the term *speech* is a synonym of 'discourse,' 'oration,' it must be rendered by Rede; but when denoting the 'faculty of uttering articulate sounds,' it is in German Sprache. *To falter*, ſtocken.

[13] For *reasoning* we may use here the expressive term Gedankengang; *then*, here damals.

[14] *To*, gegen; *well aware*, überzeugt.

[15] *On—appearance*, beim erſten Auftreten; *hesitation*, Stocken.

[16] Turn *effect* by 'consequence,' and use the indefinite article.

[17] *Sensibility*, here Schüchternheit, *i.e.* 'timidity.'

[18] Whenever the article is used with an attributive adjective, it must, in German, precede the same. *Quite as* is here to be rendered by eben ſo, and *promising* by vielverſprechend.

[19] Translate *volubility of utterance* by the compound expression Zungengeläufigkeit, and *ease of manner*

encouraged him to proceed. "How can I, Sir,"[1] said the young orator, recovering himself,[2] "produce[3] a stronger argument in favour of this Bill than my own failure?[4] My fortune,[5] my character, my life, are not at stake. I am speaking to an audience[6] whose kindness might well inspire me *with* courage. And yet, from[7] mere nervousness, from mere want of practice in addressing[8] large assemblies, I have lost my recollection;[9] I am unable[10] to go on with my argument. How helpless, then, must be a poor man who, never having opened his lips in public,[11] is called upon[12] to reply, without a moment's preparation,[13] to the ablest and most experienced advocates in the kingdom, and whose faculties[14] are paralysed by the thought, that if he fails[15] to convince his hearers, *he will* in *a* few hours die on a gallows, and leave beggary and infamy to those who are dearest to him!"[16] It may

by Leichtigkeit im Vortrag; *to proceed*, fortfahren.

[1] Retain the English word, or say Herr Präsident, which expression would be used in a German Parliament.

[2] *To recover oneself*, sich sammeln.

[3] *To produce*, here vorbringen. The term *argument*—to be pronounced as a German word—may be retained.

[4] The term *failure*, in its comprehensive signification, has no single equivalent, neither in German nor, I think, in most other modern languages. Here the word Mißgeschick, *i.e.* 'ill-fate,' might properly be used.

[5] *Fortune* standing here for 'possessions,' 'wealth,' is to be rendered by Vermögen; *character*, Ruf; *are, &c.*, stehn nicht auf dem Spiele.

[6] When the word *audience*, refers, as is the case here, to an assembly consisting of regularly appointed members, we generally use the word Versammlung; when referring to an assembly of promiscuous listeners, it may also be rendered by Publikum, and an assembly consisting more particularly of students, &c. is called Auditorium or Zuhörerschaft.

[7] *From*, aus; *nervousness*, transl. Aengstlichkeit.

[8] *In addressing* = to speak before.

[9] *My recollection*, transl. Fassung, or, less literally, den Faden, *i.e.* the thread.

[10] *To be unable*, nicht im Stande sein; *argument*, here Gegenstand.

[11] *Who—public.* Turn the whole clause briefly by 'who has never spoken publicly,' connecting it with the following clause by und nun.

[12] *To be called upon*, aufgefordert werden. Place *to reply* after *kingdom*.

[13] In order to translate the phrase *without a moment's preparation* with literal faithfulness, we should be obliged to spin it out to 'without that one grants him even (auch nur) a moment to his preparation;' but we can easily avoid this turn by simply saying ohne irgend welche Vorbereitung.

[14] *Faculties*, Geisteskräfte.

[15] *That—fails*, daß er, wenn es ihm nicht gelingt; *on a*, am.

[16] *And—him.* This clause will best be turned by 'and will leave behind those who are the dearest

reasonably be suspected[1] that Ashley's confusion and the ingenious[2] use which he made of it had been carefully premeditated.[3] His speech,[4] however, made a great impression.—MACAULAY, *History of England.*

X.

A SELF-DUBBED[5] MESSENGER.

On the evening of the battle an officer[6] of the Ziethen Hussars, who were forward[7] in the pursuit, rode as far as[8] the gates of Königgrätz,[9] and, finding[10] there were no sentries outside, rode[11] in; the guard, immediately on seeing[11] him in his Prussian uniform, turned out[12] and seized him, when,[13] with a ready presence, he declared he had[14] come to demand[15] the capitulation of the fortress. He was conducted to the commandant, and made the same demand to[16] him, adding that[17] the town would

to him in poverty and disgrace.' The superlative *dearest* is to be used substantively: die Theuerſten.

[1] *It—suspected.* Turn here by 'one can well assume with reason' (mit Grund annehmen).

[2] *Ingenious,* here genial.

[3] *Had—premeditated,* planmäßig verbereitet war.

[4] See page 31, note 12.

[5] *Self-dubbed,* ſelbſternannt.

[6] *Officer* is here the subject of the sentence, and *rode* the assertion. *Ziethen Hussars,* Ziethen'ſche Huſaren.

[7] *Who were forward,* say: die ſich ... vorgewagt hatten. To the term *pursuit* add 'of the enemy.'

[8] The literal translation of *as far as* would here be an Anglicism; transl. the same by bis zu.

[9] Königgrätz is a fortress on the Elbe, in Bohemia. The battle alluded to was fought near that place on 3rd July, 1866.

[10] *Finding—outside,* say: da er ſeine Schildwache daſelbſt verfand.

[11] Supply 'he;' *the—seeing,* ſo wie die Wache ihn...erblickte.

[12] *Turned out,* trat ſie ins Gewehr.

[13] *When,* here worauf; *a ready presence,* raſche Geiſtesgegenwart.

[14] Use the perfect conjunctive, and remember that *to come* is a verb denoting motion.

[15] *To demand,* fordern.

[16] *To make a demand to any one,* an Jemand eine Forderung ſtellen.

[17] By omitting here the conjunction *that* we obtain a more rhythmical construction, since the sentence assumes by this omission the form of a direct principal clause, and the inharmonious accumulation of verbs is thus avoided. Good writers have often recourse to this expedient, a circumstance which the student of German should bear in mind.

be bombarded if not surrendered[1] within an hour; the commandant, unconscious[2] that he was not dealing[3] with a legitimate messenger, courteously refused to capitulate; but[4] the Hussar was conducted out of the[4] town, passed through[5] the guard at the entrance, and got off safely[6] without being made a prisoner.—H. M. Hozier, *The Seven Weeks' War.*

XI.

DON JOHN OF AUSTRIA[7] AT LOUVAIN.

Meantime Don John of Austria came to Louvain. * * * The object[8] with which Philip had sent him to the Netherlands,[9] that he might[10] conciliate the hearts of the inhabitants by the personal graces[11] which he had inherited from his imperial father, seemed in a fair way of accomplishment;[12] for *it was*[13] not only the venal applause of titled[14] sycophants *that* he strove to merit, but he mingled gaily and familiarly with[15] all classes of citizens.

[1] *If not surrendered,* wenn die Uebergabe nicht . . . erfolgte.

[2] *Unconscious,* transl. nicht ahnend, *i.e.* 'not suspecting.

[3] *To deal,* here unterhandeln; *legitimate,* say: officiellen.

[4] By placing *but* after *Hussar* the assertion becomes more emphatic. *Out of the,* zur . . . hinaus.

[5] *Passed through,* passirte; *at the,* am.

[6] *To get off safely,* glücklich davon kommen. See page 36, note 4.

[7] Don John of Austria, frequently called Don Juan d'Austria, son of the Emperor Charles V., was born at Ratisbonne in 1546, and died at the fortified camp of Namur in 1578. In 1576 he had been appointed Governor to the disaffected Netherlands by his brother, Philip II. *Louvain,* Löwen.

[8] *Object,* here Absicht.

[9] Insert the expletive 'namely.'

[10] Use the pres. cond. of mögen and turn *conciliate* by *win.*

[11] *Graces,* transl. Liebenswürdigkeit.

[12] Turn *in—accomplishment* by 'upon *a* good way to be accomplished.' *To accomplish,* erfüllen.

[13] The English usage of making a *verb* emphatic by *it is, was, &c., that,* is not required in German, where the emphasis can be sufficiently marked by inverting the regular order of words, and beginning with the term to be emphasized.

[14] *Titled,* transl. vornehm.

[15] *To mingle—with,* here sich anschließen. See page 24, note 8; *gaily,* fröhlich; *familiarly,* vertraulich.

Everywhere his handsome face and charming manner[1] produced their natural effect. He dined and supped[2] with the magistrates in the Town-house; honoured[3] general banquets of the burghers with his presence; and was affable and dignified, witty, fascinating, and commanding,[4] by turns.

At Louvain the five military guilds[5] held a solemn festival. The usual invitations were sent to the other societies and to all the martial brotherhoods the country round.[6] Gay and gaudy[7] processions, sumptuous banquets, military sports, rapidly succeeded each other.[7] Upon the day of the great trial of skill[8] all the high functionaries[9] of the land were, according to custom, invited, and the Governor was graciously pleased[10] to honour[11] the solemnity with his presence. Great was the joy of the multitude when Don John, complying with the habit[12] of imperial and princely personages in former days, enrolled himself, cross-bow[13] in hand, among the

[1] *Charming manner*, einnehmendes Wesen.

[2] *He—supped*, er speiste zu Mittag und zu Abend.

[3] *To honour* means both ehren and beehren; but there is a very nice distinction between these two verbs. Ehren signifies 'to entertain feelings of respect,' *i.e.* to revere, to esteem, &c., as *Honour thy father and thy mother*, Ehre Vater und Mutter. Beehren means 'to show *marks* of civility and respect,' *i.e.* to favour a person or thing by any outward distinction, as '*Favour me with a visit*,' Beehren Sie mich mit einem Besuche. Here the Prince favoured the burghers with his presence: we must therefore say, Er beehrte die Bankette, since er ehrte &c. would signify 'he revered the banquets.' The present case may aptly serve to illustrate the great advantage which the German language derives from the inseparable prefixes, there having been achieved here, as in innumerable other instances, a characteristic nicety by means of a simple prefix; *general*, here öffentlich.

[4] *Commanding*, ehrfurchtgebietend; put *by turns*, abwechselnd, after *was*.

[5] *Military guild*, Schützengilde; *to hold* (a festival), begehen.

[6] *The country round*, in der Umgegend; *gay*, heiter; *gaudy*, bunt.

[7] *To succeed each other*, auf einander folgen.

[8] *Trial of skill*, Kunstprobe.

[9] *Functionary*, Beamte.

[10] *Was graciously pleased*, ließ sich gnädig herab.

[11] See above, note 3. *Solemnity*, here Festlichkeit.

[12] *Complying with the habit* and *in former days*, is to be rendered by the clause dem ehemaligen Gebrauche . . . nachkommend.

[13] Use the definite article both with *cross-bow* and *hand*, and retain the elliptical construction, which is generally used in German when the accusative is followed, as is the case here by an adv. exp. of place, viz., *enrolled*, *etc.*, sich die Armbrust in der Hand...aufnehmen ließ.

competitors. Greater still was the enthusiasm when the conqueror[1] of Lepanto[2] brought down[3] the bird, and was proclaimed[4] king of the year amid the tumultuous hilarity of the crowd. According to custom, the captains of the guild suspended a golden popinjay[5] around the neck of his Highness, and, placing themselves in procession,[6] followed[7] him to the great church. Thence,[8] after the customary religious exercises,[8] the multitude proceeded[9] to the banquet, where the health of the new king of the cross-bowmen[10] was pledged in deep potations.[11]—MOTLEY, *Rise of the Dutch Republic.*

XII.

WORSE THAN HIS REPUTATION.

I have, while[12] in England, heard and read more than once of the "docile[13] camel." If "docile" means stupid,

[1] When the word *conqueror* is synonymous with 'victor,' it is rendered by Sieger.

[2] Don John gained the great naval battle of Lepanto against the Turks in 1572.

[3] *Brought down,* transl. herabſchoß.

[4] Transl. *was proclaimed* by wurde ausgerufen zum, in accordance with the rule that verbs of choosing, appointing, declaring, considering, and the like, do not govern in German, as is the case in English, Latin, and Greek, *two* accusatives, but express the office or dignity to which a person has been appointed, &c. by zu with the dative. The person appointed is alone put in the accusative, unless the passive construction be employed—as is the case in the above sentence—when the nominative is used.

[5] Turn here *popinjay* simply by 'bird.'

[6] *Placing—procession,* transl. indem ſie eine Proceſſion bildeten.

[7] The third person plural of the personal pronoun must here be inserted.

[8] *Thence,* von da aus; *religious exercises,* Andachtsübungen.

[9] *To proceed,* here ſich begeben.

[10] *Cross-bowmen,* Armbruſtſchützen.

[11] *Was—potations,* in ſtarken Zügen getrunken wurde.

[12] If the word *while* is translated, we must give the sentence in a complete form, *i.e.* 'while I was in England.' We can, however, construe the clause in a still more elliptical manner by omitting that adverb altogether, since the adverbial expression of place is in similar cases quite sufficient in German, viz., *I have in England.*

[13] When *docile* refers to the temper of animals, it is rendered by ſanft; *to mean,* here bedeuten.

well and good;[1] in such a[2] case the camel is the very[3] model of docility. But if the epithet is intended[4] to designate an animal that takes an interest in[5] its rider, so far as a beast can;[6] that in some way[7] understands his intentions, or shares them in a subordinate fashion;[8] that obeys from[9] a sort of submissive or half fellow-feeling with his master, like the horse and elephant; then I say that the camel is by no means docile: very much the contrary.[10] He takes no heed of[11] his rider; pays no attention[12] whether he be on his back[13] or not; walks straight on when once set a-going, merely because he is too stupid to turn aside;[14] and *then*, should some tempting thorn[15] or green branch allure him out of[16] the path, continues[17] to walk on in this new direction simply[18] because he is too dull to turn back into the right road. His only care is to cross[19] as much pasture as he conveniently can while pacing mechanically onwards, and for effecting[20] this his long flexible neck sets him at great advantage;[21] and a

[1] *Well and good*, here ſo mag es hingehen.

[2] Turn here *such a* by 'this.'

[3] Here the word *very* is synonymous with 'real,' 'true'—the French *vrai*. In German the adjective must here be preceded by the indefinite article.

[4] *But—intended*, say briefly: ſoll aber der Ausdruck (*i.e. expression*). The supine is not used after the auxiliary verbs of mood.

[5] The preposition *in*, referring to *take interest*, is rendered by an.

[6] Turn *as—can* by 'it is possible to a beast.'

[7] *In some way*, gewiſſermaßen.

[8] The above clause will best be rendered idiomatically by translating *shares them* by auf dieſelben eingeht, and *fashion* by Grad.

[9] *From*, transl. aus. The term *fellow* may here be rendered by the adjective kameradſchaftlich; but then *with* should be turned by 'for.'

[10] *Very—contrary*, ganz im Gegentheil.

[11] *To take heed of*, here ſich kümmern um. Kamel being neuter in German, the corresponding pronoun should be used throughout.

[12] *Pays no attention*, render achtet nicht darauf.

[13] *Be—back*, ihm auf dem Rücken ſitze; *set a-going*, in Bewegung gebracht.

[14] *To turn aside*, um abzulenken.

[15] *Thorn*, here Dornbuſch.

[16] *To allure out of*, ablocken von.

[17] The verb *to continue*, referring to an infinitive, as above, is generally expressed by the adverb weiter, and sometimes by fort. The infinitive is in this case used in the same tense as the verb *to continue*. Supply 'it' after the finite verb.

[18] *Simply* = merely; *dull* = stupid; *into*, here 'upon.'

[19] *To cross*, say: über... zu gehen; *pasture*, Weideplatz, to be used here in the plural; *conveniently*, mit Bequemlichkeit.

[20] *To effect*, bewerkſtelligen. See Extr. 9, note *a*.

[21] *To set at advantage*, Vortheile gewähren.

hard[1] blow or a downright[2] kick alone has any influence *on him* whether[3] to direct or impel. He will never attempt to throw you[4] off his back,[5] such a trick being far beyond[6] his limited comprehension; but if you[6] fall off, he will never dream[7] of stopping[8] *for you*, and walks on just the same,[9] grazing while he goes,[10] without knowing or caring an atom[11] what has become of you.[12] *If* turned loose,[13] it is *a* thousand to[14] one that he will never find his[15] way back to his accustomed home or pasture, and the first comer[16] who picks him up[17] will have no particular shyness to get over;[18] Jack or Tom are all the same[19] to him; and the loss of his old master and of his former cameline[20] companions gives him no regret,[21] and occasions no endeavour to find them again. One only symptom will[22] he give that he is aware[23] of his rider, and that is[24] when the

[1] The literal translation of *hard* with reference to *blow* is also used in German, but mostly when the word is employed figuratively; used in the primitive sense, the usual German epithet is ſtark.

[2] *Downright*, here entſchieden, *i.e.* 'decided;' *kick*, Fußtritt.

[3] Turn *whether* by 'be it,' and transl. *to impel* by aufſprengen.

[4] The pronoun *you*, used in English colloquial speech indefinitely for 'one' 'any one,' is usually rendered in German by man, Jemand, or Niemand; by the two latter, more generally, when *you* occurs in the accusative, as is the case here.

[5] Suppress in German the words *his back*, the verb *to throw off* fully indicating the action. *Trick*, Streich.

[6] Turn *far beyond* by 'much too high for;' *comprehension*, here Verſtand. Turn *you* by 'the rider.'

[7] *He—dream.* We use in German the idiomatic expression es fällt ihm nicht im Traume ein.

[8] *To stop*, here ſtehen bleiben.

[9] *And—same*, ſondern es ſchreitet ruhig weiter.

[10] *While he goes* may be briefly turned in German by im Gehen, to be placed before *grazing*, weitend. Cf. Int. page xvii., *g*.

[11] *Caring an atom*, translate ſich im Geringſten darum zu kümmern.

[12] Turn here *of you* by 'of (aus) his rider.'

[13] *Turned loose*, losgelaſſen.

[14] *To*, here gegen.

[15] See Extr. 34, note *b*. *Accustomed home*, here gewöhnlichen Aufenthaltsort; *pasture*, Weideplatz.

[16] *The first comer* is idiomatically rendered in German by der Erſte Beſte.

[17] *To pick up*, here aufgreifen.

[18] *To get over*, figuratively überwinden; *Jack*, &c., say Hans oder Peter.

[19] *Are—same*, gilt ihm gleich.

[20] Omit the adjective *cameline*. Generally it would be rendered by the noun Kamel, which is, however, not applicable here.

[21] *To give regret*, Kummer machen.

[22] This emphatic future not being used in German, the principal verbs must be rendered by the present indicative.

[23] *To be aware*, here ſich bewußt ſein, which governs the genitive.

[24] Turn *and that is* by 'namely.'

latter is about to mount[1] him; for on such an[2] occasion he will bend back his long snaky neck towards his master, open his enormous jaws to bite, if he dared,[3] and roar out a tremendous sort of groan,[4] as if to complain of[5] some entirely new and unparalleled injustice about to be done him.[6] In a word,[7] he is from first to last an undomesticated[8] animal.—W. G. PALGRAVE, *Narrative of a Year's Journey through Central and Eastern Arabia.*

XIII.

SPEEDY[9] PROMOTION.

A remarkable anecdote is related[10] by Voltaire of[11] the circumstance that obtained for Leonard Torstenson[12] his first commission.[13] He had been in close attendance on[14] the King of Sweden[14] during the campaign in Livonia in 1624,[15] and it happened,[16] at a moment of importance,[17]

[1] *To mount* is rendered by ſteigen when it is used intransitively, but it assumes a transitive meaning by means of the inseparable prefix be, which possesses the faculty of transforming intransitive verbs into transitive ones.

[2] *On such an*, bei dieſer.

[3] *Dared*, say den Muth dazu hätte.

[4] *And—groan*, und ſtößt eine Art ſchrecklichen Geſtöhnes aus.

[5] *As — of*, als ob es ſich beklagen wollte über. When an infinitive is preceded by *as if*, we generally express the condition by als ob... wollte; *unparalleled*, beiſpielles.

[6] *About — him*, die man ihm anthun will.

[7] We say in German 'with one word;' *from—last*, transl. durchaus.

[8] *Undomesticated*, ungeſelliges, *i.e.* unsociable.

[9] *Speedy*, ſchnell.

[10] *To relate*, erzählen.

[11] Turn *a—of* by 'Voltaire relates a remarkable anecdote (Anekdote) of (in Bezug auf).'

[12] Turn *that — Torstenson* by 'through-which L. T. obtained.' General Torstenson, born 1603 at Forstena, in Sweden, was one of the principal generals in the Thirty Years' War. He particularly excelled as a strategist, of which quality he gave, as related above, an early proof under the command of Gustavus Adolphus.

[13] *Commission* (in military affairs), Offizierſtelle. Less briefly, but more elegantly, we might render it here by Ernennung zum Offizier.

[14] Place *he—Sweden*, befand er ſich ſtets um den König von Schweden after '1624.' *Livonia*, Liefland.

[15] Cf. Extr. 49, note *b*.

[16] *To happen*, here ſich fügen.

[17] Turn in German the above

that his Majesty had no staff officer near him.[1] Accordingly he entrusted[2] an order for an important movement to *the hands of* his squire, who, seeing a change in the enemy's plan of attack as he rode along,[3] took upon himself[4] the bold responsibility of making a corresponding[5] change in the directions that his sovereign directed him to give.[6]

"Sire,"[7] said the youth on[8] his return to his royal master's side, "forgive[9] me *for* what I have done; but when I saw the enemy was changing his line, I made a corresponding change in your[10] Majesty's orders."

Gustavus made no answer at the time;[11] but in the evening, when the page was about[12] to serve the table,[13] as was his wont,[14] he was commanded to sit down at the king's side,[15] when the good-humoured monarch, threatening[16] *him* with the hand, said: "Young man, what you

expression by 'in an important moment.' The pronoun *his* before names of titles, as *Majesty, Excellency*, &c., is in German turned by the abbreviated form Sr. = Seine: the pronoun Ihre, however, is in such cases rendered in full.

[1] *Near him*, bei ſich.

[2] Render here *to entrust* by anvertrauen, *for* by zu, and *squire* by Page; in which last word the letter g is pronounced soft, as in French, and the e short, as in Freude.

[3] Turn the clause *who—along* by 'who, when he as he rode along (beim Dahinreiten) a change in the plan of attack (Angriffsplan) of the enemy saw (here bemerkte).'

[4] *Took upon himself*, übernahm.

[5] *Corresponding*, entſprechend.

[6] Turn *in — give* by 'in the order which the king had given him for delivery' (zur Beſtellung).

[7] This term, derived from the Latin *senior*, is also used in German in addressing kings, &c.; the i is pronounced as in German, but the e is mute.

[8] Render here *on* by the prep. bei, and *to...side* simply by zu.

[9] Use the 2nd pers. pl. of vergeben, and supply the conjunction 'that' after *saw*. *Line*, here Stellung.

[10] The pronoun Euer was formerly written Ewer; which obsolete mode of spelling is still officially retained before titles, but is generally given in the abbreviated form Ew., which stands for all the respective forms of Euer.

[11] Turn *made — time* by 'answered nothing in the moment;' *in the*, here am.

[12] The phrase *to be about*, denoting near futurity, is rendered in German by im Begriff ſein, and sometimes by wollte, which latter expression corresponds, in this sense, to the English *wanted*.

[13] *To serve the table*, bei Tafel aufzuwarten.

[14] Turn *as was his wont* simply by 'as usual,' and *was commanded* by 'received the order.' Why the verb befehlen, which governs the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, cannot be used in the passive voice will be seen from Ext. 22, note *b*.

[15] *At...side*, neben; *when*, here worauf; *good-humoured*, gutgelaunt.

[16] See Int. p. xvii., *g*.

did this[1] morning might have cost you your life; but I see *in you* that you have the qualities of a great general, and I make you an ensign[2] in a company of my Guards."[3] —Sir Edw. Cust, *The Warriors of the Thirty Years' War.*

XIV.

GOETHE AT THE AGE OF TWENTY.[4]

Goethe reached Strasburg on the 2nd April, 1770. He was now turned[5] twenty; and a more magnificent youth never, perhaps,[6] entered the Strasburg[7] gates. Long before celebrity[8] had fixed all eyes upon him he was likened to an Apollo; and once, when[9] he entered[10] a dining-room, people[11] laid down *their* knives and forks to stare at[12] the beautiful youth. Pictures and busts, even when most resembling,[13] give but[14] a feeble indication of that which was most[15] striking in his appearance: they give the form

[1] Render *this* by heute, the time of morning having already passed; and render *might* by the infinitive tonnen.

[2] See page 36, note 4.

[3] *Guards*, here Leibwache.

[4] Supply the word 'years.'

[5] Transl. *turned* by über; *magnificent*, herrlich.

[6] Use here the adverb wohl, which indicates more forcibly than vielleicht the probability of an event. That adverb is generally placed before the word which has the principal accent,—here the term *never*. *Entered*, kam ... durch.

[7] Use the genitive case, and see Extr. 11, note *a*.

[8] *Celebrity*, der Ruhm. Turn *fixed —him* by 'drawn the eyes of all (Aller) upon him.'

[9] *When* can, as a rule, be rendered in four different ways:—1st, by als, when it denotes an occurrence that has once taken place, —in this sense it corresponds to the French *lorsque;* 2nd, by wenn, when it denotes an indefinite or habitual occurrence,—in this sense *when* is equivalent to 'whenever;' 3rd, by wann, in questions, signifying 'at what time;' 4th, by worauf, when standing for 'upon, or after which.'

[10] *To enter*, treten (in).

[11] When *people* signifies persons in general, in the sense in which it is used here, we render it in German by Leute; when, however, it denotes the 'commonalty,' we translate it by Volk, as in French by *peuple*, and in Latin by *populus*.

[12] *To stare at*, here anstaunen.

[13] *Even — resembling*, selbst die ähnlichsten.

[14] When *but* is synonymous with *only*, it is rendered by nur; when with *merely*, by bloß. *Indication*, transl. Begriff.

[15] *Most striking*, am auffallendsten; *appearance*, say äußern Erscheinung

of the features,[1] but not the play of features; nor[2] are they very accurate as to the form.

His features were large[3] and liberally cut, as in the fine sweeping lines[4] of Greek art. The brow was lofty and massive;[5] and from beneath it shone large lustrous brown eyes of marvellous beauty, their pupils[6] being of almost unexampled size. The slightly aquiline[7] nose was large, and well cut. The mouth was full, with a short, arched, upper lip, very sensitive and expressive;[8] the chin and jaw[9] boldly proportioned; and the head rested on a handsome and muscular[10] neck.

In stature[11] he was rather above the middle size: but although not really tall, he had the aspect[12] of a tall man; and is usually so described, because his presence[13] was very imposing. His frame[14] was strong, muscular, yet sensitive. Dante says this contrast is[15] in the nature of things, for

"Quanto la cosa è più perfetta,
Più senta 'l bene, e così la doglienza."*

[1] *Feature* (of a face), Zug; *play of features*, Mienenſpiel.

[2] When *nor* introduces a sentence, it is rendered by auch...nicht; and when it follows the negative *neither*, by noch. *Accurate*, genau; *as to*, was...betrifft.

[3] Render here *large* by kühn, and *liberally* by edel; *cut*, here gebildet.

[4] *The — lines*, den ſchön geſchwungenen Linien.

[5] *Massive*, here gewölbt; *from beneath it*, unter derſelben hervor; *of*, here von.

[6] *Pupil* (of the eye) is in German Pupille. We have also two genuine Teutonic words for the same thing, —viz. the homely Augapfel, *i.e.* the apple of the eye; and the poetical Augenſtern, *i.e.* star of the eye. *Size*, here Größe.

[7] There is in German no exact equivalent for the adjective *aquiline*. The expression *aquiline nose* would be rendered by Adlernaſe, whilst *a slightly aquiline nose* must be somewhat freely translated by eine leichtgebogene Naſe. *Well*, here fein.

[8] *Very—expressive*, äußerſt ſenſitiv und ausdrucksvoll.

[9] The article must be repeated before Kinnbacken (*jaw*), since it differs in number and gender from the preceding noun. *Boldly proportioned*, in kühnen Proportionen.

[10] *Muscular*, muskulös.

[11] *In stature*, von Geſtalt; *rather*, here etwas; *middle size*, Mittelgröße.

[12] *Aspect*, Ausſehen; turn *tall* by 'tall-grown;' transl. *so* by als ſolcher

[13] *Presence*, here perſönliche Erſcheinung; *imposing*, imponirend.

[14] *Frame*, in the sense in which it is used here, means in German Körperbau. Transl. *yet* by und doch.

[15] Use here the verb liegen.

---

* Longfellow translates the above with literal faithfulness by—

"As the thing more perfect is,
The more it feels of pleasure and of pain."

DANTE'S *Inferno*, Canto VI. v. 107, &c

Excelling[1] in all active sports,[2] he was almost a barometer in sensitiveness[3] to atmospheric influences.

Such, externally, was[4] the youth who descended at[5] the hotel *Zum Geist*, in Strasburg, this[6] 2nd April, and who, ridding himself of[7] the dust and "ennui" of a long imprisonment in the diligence,[8] sallied forth[9] to gaze at the famous cathedral,[10] which made a wonderful impression on him as[11] he came up to it[12] through the narrow streets.—G. H. Lewes, *Life of Goethe*.

[1] The present participle implying here a concession, turn it by 'though he excelled:' and insert in the principal clause, to be given in an inverted form, the conj. doch after *he*. *To excel*, here ſich auszeichnen.

[2] There does not exist in most continental languages a single equivalent for the comprehensive term *sport*. The English term has been adopted abroad, but more in reference to horse races. Render here *active sports* by Leibesübungen, and see the note to Ext. 7. page 2.

[3] Transl. *in sensitiveness* by in ſeiner Empfindlichkeit, and turn *to* by 'against.'

[4] Transl. *such — was* by ſo war das Aeußere, and put *youth* in the genitive case.

[5] *To descend at* (an hotel, &c.), abſteigen in. Goethe makes use of this identical verb in relating his arrival at Strasburg in his autobiography „Wahrheit und Dichtung." The hotel alluded to he simply calls Wirthshaus.

[6] Transl. here *this* by an dem beſagten; and see for the construction of the above sentences Extr. 4, note *a*.

[7] Render here *ridding—of* by abſchüttelnd; *ennui*, die Langeweile.

[8] The expression *diligence* is also used, with the French pronunciation, in German. The words Eil- or Schnellwagen are also employed as equivalents for that term.

[9] *Sallied forth*, transl. fort eilte; *to gaze at*, here beſehen.

[10] *The cathedral* (of Strasburg) is commonly called in German der (Straßburger) Münſter; which term being derived from the Græco-Latin expression *monasterium*, is sometimes also used in the neuter gender.

[11] The conjunction *as* may generally be translated in the following ways:—1st, in comparisons by als or wie; by the latter more generally when perfect equality is to be expressed. In this case *as* is frequently rendered by ſo wie, more particularly when two actions are compared: *e.g. He acts as he speaks*, Er handelt ſo wie er ſpricht. 2nd, when it occurs twice—before and after an adjective—the first *as* is generally rendered by ſo: *e.g. As cold as ice*, So kalt wie Eis. 3rd, when it stands for 'if' it is rendered by wenn; when for 'since' by da; when for 'because' by weil; when for *whilst* by da (sometimes by wie); and when for the conj. *when*, as above, by als.

[12] *Came—it*, vor demſelben ankam.

XV.

THE PILGRIMS.[1]

The[2] next day they rose at five: their morning prayers[3] were finished, when,[4] as the day dawned, *a* war-whoop and a flight[5] of arrows announced an attack from Indians.[6] They were[7] of the tribe of the Nausites, who knew the English[8] as kidnappers; but the encounter[9] was without further result. Again[10] the boat's crew give thanks to God,[10] and steer their bark along the coast for the distance of[11] fifteen leagues. But no convenient harbour is[12] discovered. The pilot of the boat, who had been in these regions before, gives assurance of a good one,[13] which may be reached before night; and they follow his guidance.

[1] The Pilgrims alluded to in the above extract were a number of Covenanters who, being persecuted under James I. for their opposition to the Church of England, emigrated to Holland. But being desirous to remain under English rule, and to do service to their native country as loyal citizens, they left Holland in 1620, in order to found an English settlement in America.

[2] Use the accusative case.

[3] Render *morning prayers* by the compound Morgenandacht, to be used in the singular only; *finished*, here verrichtet.

[4] *When* is here to be rendered by da, and the verb *announced* placed immediately after that adverb; *as—dawned*, bei Tagesanbruch.

[5] The term *flight*, referring to arrows, is rendered by Schauer, *i.e.* 'shower.'

[6] There exists in German a very convenient mode of distinguishing the aborigines of East India from those of the West Indies or of the American continent. The former are called Indier or Inder, and the latter Indianer. As regards the adjectives indiſch and indianiſch, the same distinction is made, but is not quite so strictly adhered to.

[7] Translate *were* by gehörten ... an, and *of—Nausites* by dem Stamm der Nauſiten.

[8] Turn *who knew the English* by 'to whom the English were known;' *kidnapper*, here Menſchenräuber.

[9] Transl. *encounter* by the frequentative noun formed from fechten, and turn *was without further result* by 'had no further consequences.'

[10] Turn *again — God*, by 'the boat's crew (Schiffsmannſchaft) thanks God anew (von Neuem);' crew requires in German the sing. only.

[11] Translate *for the distance of* simply by weit, placing this adverb at the end of the sentence. The term *league* may here be turned by 'mile,' though, arithmetically speaking, a German mile is longer than a *league* by 1·63 of an English mile.

[12] See the note to Ext. 8, and use the third person plural.

[13] The above elliptical construction is not admissible in German.

After some hours' sailing,[1] a storm of snow and rain[2] begins; the sea swells:[3] the rudder breaks—the boat must now be steered[4] with oars. The storm increases; night[5] is at hand: to[6] reach the harbour before dark, as much sail[7] as possible is borne; the mast breaks into three pieces; the sail falls overboard; but the tide is favourable. The pilot, in[8] dismay, would have run the boat on shore[9] in a cove[10] full of breakers. "About with her,"[11] exclaimed a sailor, "or we are cast away!"[12] They get her about[13] immediately, and passing[14] the surf, they enter[15] a fair sound, and shelter themselves[16] under the lee of a small rise of land.[17] It is dark, and the rain beats furiously;[18] yet the men are so wet *and* cold and weak, they[19] slight the danger to be apprehended[20] from the savages, and after great difficulty[21] kindle a fire on shore.

where it would be necessary to supply before *a good one* the words 'that there was;' but we can contract the above clause with the following one, turning them briefly by 'assures that they could reach (erreichen) a good *one* before night.'

[1] Use the third person plural of *to sail* in the pluperfect tense.

[2] The expression Schneesturm sounds like an Anglicism, though we use Hagelsturm, and some modern German writers have coined the word Regensturm. Turn, therefore, the above clause by 'a storm rises, accompanied by snow and rain.'

[3] *Swells*, geht k ch.

[4] *To steer*, here lenken.

[5] Use the definite article, and render *at hand* by rückt heran.

[6] See Extr. 9, note *a*. *Dark*, here Dunkelwerden.

[7] Use in German the plural number, and render here *to bear* by aufspannen. See also Extr. 4, note *b*.

[8] Supply here the pronoun *his*, and see for the construction of the clause Extr. 5, note *b*.

[9] Render the clause *would—shore* by hätte...das Boot...stranden lassen.

[10] *Cove*, here Bucht; *of breakers*, brandender Wogen.

[11] *About with her*, wendet!

[12] The nautical expression *to cast* or *to be cast away* is rendered in German an den Strand treiben.

[13] Translate *to get about* by umwenden, *immediately* by sofort, and omit the pronoun *her*.

[14] Render here *passing* by intem sie ... durchschiffen.

[15] *To enter*, here gelangen (in); *fair sound*, ruhige Meerenge.

[16] *To shelter oneself*, Schutz finden; *lee*, Leeseite, pronounced entirely as a German word, it being a genuine Teutonic expression.

[17] *Small rise of land*, sanfte Erhöhung.

[18] *Beats furiously*, here strömt heftig nieder.

[19] In similar constructions the conjunction *that* cannot be omitted in German. *To slight*, here verachten.

[20] The English passive participial constructions, expressing relations of possibility or necessity, are generally changed in German into the active form by means of the supine. Here *to be apprehended* = which was to apprehend (befürchten).

[21] Turn *after great difficulty* by 'with great trouble' (Mühe).

Morning, as it dawned, showed the place to be[1] a small island within the entrance[2] of a harbour. The day was required[3] for rest and[4] preparations. Time was precious; the season advancing;[5] their companions were left in suspense.[6] The next[7] day was the "Christian Sabbath." Nothing marks[8] the character of the Pilgrims more fully, than that they kept it sacredly,[9] though every consideration demanded haste.[10]

On Monday the[11] 11th *day of* December, old style,[12] the exploring party[13] of the forefathers land at Plymouth. * * * The spot, when examined,[14] seemed to invite a settlement;[15] and in[16] a few days the *Mayflower* was safely moored[17] in its harbour. In memory of[18] the hospitalities[19] which the company had received at[20] the last English port from which they had sailed, this oldest New England colony[21] obtained the name of Plymouth.—GEORGE BANCROFT, *History of the United States.*

[1] Turn *Morning—be* by 'when the morning dawned (graute) it was discovered (zeigte es ſich) that the place was.'

[2] *Within the entrance*, am Eingang.

[3] *Required* may here be rendered by the predicative adjective nöthig.

[4] Since the term Ausruhen (*rest*) requires the definite article, here contracted with the preposition zu, and the word Vorbereitungen (*preparations*) does not require the article, on account of its being used in a general sense in the plural number, the preposition zu must be repeated before *preparations*.

[5] We should use here in German the past participle, vorgeſchritten, *i.e.* advanced. *Companions*, Gefährten.

[6] *Left in suspense*, in banger Ungewißheit zurückgelaſſen.

[7] The word *next* should in the above phrase be turned by 'following.'

[8] *Marks*, here bezeichnet; *more fully* = better.

[9] *To keep sacredly* might be rendered literally, or in accordance with Luther's translation of the Fourth Commandment, by heiligen.

[10] Turn *every — haste* by 'all considerations (Rückſichten) urged to the (zur) haste.'

[11] See page 44, note 2.

[12] Retain the corresponding foreign term, and use the genitive case.

[13] *Exploring party*, Expedition.

[14] *When examined*, bei genauer Unterſuchung. For the construction of the whole clause see Extr. 5, note *b*.

[15] In German the accusative case would not be used here; we must therefore supply the preposition zu after *invite*.

[16] Turn here *in* by 'after.'

[17] *Was ... moored*, lag ... vor Anker. Retain the name of the boat—*Mayflower*—using it as a fem. noun.

[18] *In memory of*, zur Erinnerung an.

[19] Use the singular of *hospitalities*, and turn *received* by 'enjoyed.'

[20] *At*, in; *port*, Hafen.

[21] Turn *this — colony* by 'this oldest colony in New England.

XVI.

THE SLAVE-MAKING[1] INSTINCT OF ANTS.

This remarkable instinct was first discovered in [1]the *Formica* (*Polyerges*) *rufescens*[2] by Pierre Huber, a better observer even[3] than his celebrated father.[4] This ant is absolutely dependent on its slaves; without their aid the species[5] would certainly become extinct in a single year. The workers, though most energetic and courageous in capturing slaves,[6] do no other work. They are incapable of making[7] their own nests, or of feeding their own larvæ.

When[8] the old nest is found inconvenient, and they have to[9] migrate, it is the slaves which determine[10] the migration, and actually[11] carry their masters in their jaws. So utterly helpless are the masters, that when Huber shut up[12] thirty of them without a slave, but with plenty[13] of the food which they like best, and with their larvæ and pupæ to stimulate[14] them to work, they did nothing; they would not even feed themselves, and many perished[15] of

[1] A literal translation of the epithet *slave-making* would here be inapplicable; we must therefore turn the above by 'the instinct of ants to make slaves.' *In*, say bei.

[2] The *Formica rufescens*, or 'red ant,' is called die röthliche Ameiſe. The suffix lich modifies, like the English *ish*, the intensity of colours.

[3] Turn *a—even* by 'a (use dative) yet sharper observer.'

[4] Supply here *was*. The father of the naturalist Pierre Huber was Francis Huber, born at Geneva in 1750.

[5] *Species*, Gattung; *become extinct* = die out.

[6] *In capturing slaves*, im Sklavenfange; *do*, here verrichten.

[7] We say in German 'to build a nest.' See Extr. 9, note *a*.

[8] See page 41, note 9.

[9] *Have to* = must.

[10] Supply here the preposition über, and see for the construction of *it is*, &c. page 34, note 13.

[11] *Actually*, thatſächlich, or, more idiomatically, factiſch. Use for *jaws* the singular of 'mouth.'

[12] *To shut up*, einſperren; *of them*, say derſelben.

[13] *With plenty*, mit einer Menge; food, Nahrung; *and with*, say ſammt.

[14] *To stimulate*, anregen; use *supine* with um. *To work*, zum Arbeiten.

[15] *Perished* = died; *of* in the above phrase is rendered by vor, or it may be omitted in the transla-

hunger. Huber then introduced[1] a single slave[2] (*Formica fusca*[3]), and she instantly set to work,[4] fed and saved the survivors, made[5] some cells and tended the larvæ, and put all to rights.[6] What can be[7] more extraordinary than these well-ascertained[8] facts. If we had[9] not known of[10] any other slave-making[11] ant, it[12] would have been hopeless to have speculated[13] how so wonderful an[14] instinct could *have been* perfected.[15]—DARWIN, *The Origin of Species.*

tion, and the term *hunger* put in the genitive case.

[1] Render here *introduced* by gesellte dann zu ihnen.

[2] Use the masculine form of *slave*, but retain the feminine pronoun *she*, the same referring to 'ant' in general.

[3] The *Formica fusca* is called in German die schwarzgraue Ameise.

[4] *To set to work*, sich an die Arbeit machen.

[5] Turn *made*, as with nests, by the verb 'to build;' *to tend*, here pflegen.

[6] *To put all to rights*, brachte Alles in Ordnung.

[7] Turn here *be* by 'give,' supplying the pronoun es before it.

[8] *Well-ascertained*, völlig erwiesen. When the word *fact* denotes 'a deed or action,' it must be rendered in German by That; and when it is synonymous with 'event,' as is the case here, by Thatsache. The term Factum, which has in the plural the two forms Facta and Facten, is sometimes used for *fact* in both significations.

[9] It is a matter of course that the conditional mood is also to be used here in German, because a supposition is expressed which is contrary to reality. The conjunction *if*, however, may in similar cases be omitted in German (as also in English), and the conditional clause given in an inverted form: *e.g.* Wären diese Lords wie Ihr sie schildert, verstummen müßt ich; hoffnungslos verloren wär meine Sache, sprächen sie mich schuldig.—*Schiller. If these Lords were as you represent them, I must remain silent; my cause would be hopelessly lost if they pronounced me guilty.* From the two last clauses will also be seen that the hypothetical clause may be placed after the principal one.

[10] *To know of* means here 'to have a knowledge of,' and may, therefore, be rendered by wissen von.

[11] Here we might employ for *slave-making* the expression knechten, *i.e.* to enslave, to enthral; or turn the expression by 'an ant which makes slaves.'

[12] See the note to Ext. 7.

[13] In German we can avoid the frequent repetition of the auxiliary verb *have* by using the supine of nachdenken, preceded by the adverbial compound darüber.

[14] The words *so wonderful* qualify in the above clause the term *instinct*. See, therefore, page 31, note 18.

[15] The agent performing the action not being expressly mentioned, we ought to use here, according to the rule mentioned in Ext. 41, n. *b*, the reflective form of *to perfect*—here ausbilden—in the infinitive.

XVII.

THE BATTLE OF[1] THE ALMA.[2]

The French seized[3] the empty ground which divided[4] the enemy from the sea, and then undertook to assail the enemy's[5] left wing; but were baffled[6] by the want of a road for Canrobert's artillery, and by the exceeding cogency[7] of the rule which forbids them[8] from engaging[9] their infantry on open ground without the support of cannon.[10] Their failure[11] placed them in jeopardy; for they had committed[12] so large a[13] proportion of their force to the distant part of the West Cliff[14] and the sea-shore, that

[1] The preposition *of* before the name of a place near which a *battle* was fought is generally rendered by the preposition bei when the place is a town, village, island, &c.; by the preposition an when the place is a mountain, hill, stream, river, &c.: e.g. *the battle of Leipzig*, die Schlacht bei Leipzig; *the battle of the Katzbach*, die Schlacht an der Katzbach.

[2] The proper name *Alma* is feminine.

[3] *To seize*, the military expression, is in German sich bemächtigen; *the — ground*, des freien Terrains.

[4] When *to divide* is synonymous with 'to keep apart,' render it by trennen; undertook, machten sich daran.

[5] See page 14, note 4.

[6] The verb *to baffle*, in the sense in which it is used here, cannot be applied in German to persons, since vereiteln is applicable to actions only, and not to the agents performing them. We can, therefore, say of a plan that it has been vereitelt, but not of a person. For this reason we should supply here the words 'their plans' before the verb.

[7] *Exceeding cogency*, übermäßiger Zwang. For the translation of the preposition *by*, occurring above twice, see the note to Ext. 46.

[8] The German construction of the above sentence will be greatly simplified by omitting the pronoun *them*, and referring the verb *forbids to their infantry*.

[9] *From engaging*, sich auf einen Kampf einzulassen; *open ground* = free field.

[10] When *cannon* denotes artillery in general, it is rendered by the collective noun Geschütz, and by Kanone when it signifies the guns considered singly.

[11] One rendering of the comprehensive term *failure* has been given page 32, note 4. Here, however, it may be rendered by vereitelter Versuch.

[12] *Committed* = sent.

[13] The article must in German be placed before the adjective, and also before the word qualifying the same. *Proportion*, here Anzahl; *force* = troops.

[14] The expression *West Cliff* forms in German a compound term. The Cliff, which lies near the sea-shore, is a height measuring 350 feet

for[1] nearly an hour they lay much at the mercy[2] of any[3] Russian general who might have chosen[4] to take advantage of their severed condition.[5]

But instead of turning to his own glory[6] the mistake the French had been making, Prince Mentschikoff hastened[7] to copy it, wasting[8] time and strength in a march towards the sea-shore and a counter-march[9] back to the Telegraph.[10] Still the sense[11] the French had of their failure,[12] and the galling fire which Kiriakoff's two batteries were by this time bringing to bear on them,[13] began to create[14] in their army a grave discontent and sensations scarce short of despondency.[15] Seeing[16] the danger to which[17] this condition[18] of things was leading, and becoming for[19] other reasons impatient, Lord Raglan determined to order the[20] final advance of the English infantry, without waiting any longer for[21] the time when[22] Canrobert and Prince Napoleon should be established on

[1] Turn *for* by 'during.'

[2] *Lay — mercy,* ſich ganz in der Gewalt...befanden.

[3] When the pronoun *any* is used in the sense of 'every,' it must be rendered by jeder.

[4] *Who — chosen,* dem es beigefallen wäre.

[5] *Severed condition,* iſolirte (or vereinzelte) Stellung.

[6] Place the clause *of turning* (auszubeuten) *to his own glory* after *had been making.*

[7] *To hasten,* here ſich beeilen; *to copy,* say: zu wiederholen.

[8] *To waste,* vergeuden. Cf. Int. p. xv., II., *a,* and use the imperfect.

[9] We use also in German the military expression Contremarſch.

[10] The *Telegraph* or *Telegraph Height* is a height joined on to the West Cliff, which was crowned during the time of the war by an unfinished turret, intended for a telegraph.

[11] *Sense* = consciousness. See the note to Ext. 23, and, further on, note 13.

[12] Render *of their failure,* by vom Mißlingen ihres Planes, *i.e.,* ill success of their plan;' *galling* by lästig.

[13] *Were—them,* jetzt auf ſie richteten. The imperfect *began* is here the principal verb, and since the sentence does not begin with the subject itself, it should be placed after *still* (dennoch).

[14] *To create* (feelings), hervorrufen, erwecken.

[15] Turn *sensations—despondency* by 'feelings which nearly bordered on despondency.'

[16] Turn *seeing...Lord Raglan* by 'since Lord Raglan...saw.'

[17] *To which,* wohin.

[18] We should use in German in phrases like the above the term Lage for *condition.*

[19] Render the preposition *for* in the above phrase by aus, before which the adverb auch should be placed by way of expletive.

[20] Turn *to order the* by 'to give the order to the;' final, endlich.

[21] *To wait for,* here abwarten.

[22] The adverb *when,* referring in general to any period of time, may also be rendered by wo.

the plateau.[1] So the English infantry went forward,[2] and in a few minutes[3] the battalions which followed Codrington had not only defeated one of the two heavy "columns of attack"[4] which marched down to assail them, but had stormed and carried[5] the Great Redoubt.

From that moment the hill-sides[6] on the Alma were[7] no longer a fortified position; but they were still a battle-field, and a battle-field on which, for a time,[8] the combatants were destined to meet[9] with checkered fortune: for[10] not having been supported at the right minute, and being encompassed by great organized numbers, Codrington's disordered force was made to fall back[11] under the weight[12] of the Vladimir column; and its retreat involved[13] the centre battalion[14] of the brigade of Guards.[15]

Nearly at the same time Kiriakoff, with his great "column of the eight battalions," pushed[16] Canrobert down from the crest[17] he had got to, obliging or causing him[18] for a time to hang back[19] under the cover of the steep.

At that time the prospects of the Allies were overcast.[20] But then the whole face of the battle was suddenly changed[21] by the two guns which Lord Raglan had brought

[1] *Should — plateau*, das Plateau beſetzt hätten.

[2] *So ... went forward*, demgemäß rückte ... vor.

[3] The clause does not begin here with the subject.

[4] *Column of attack*, Angriffscolonne.

[5] *To carry* (a place, &c.), einnehmen. *The Great Redoubt* — Große Redoute — was a breastwork thrown up by Prince Mentschikoff at a distance of about 300 yards from the river, on the jutting rib which goes round the front of the Kowrgané hill.

[6] *Hill-sides*, Hügelabhänge.

[7] Turn here *were* by 'formed,' and *fortified* by 'firm.' The term *position* may be retained in German.

[8] *For a time*, eine Zeitlang.

[9] *Were — met*, zuſammentreffen ſollten; *checkered*, here abwechſelnd.

[10] Turn *for—force*, by 'for since Codrington's disordered (in Unordnung gerathene) troops were not supported at the right moment and were encompassed by great organized numbers (organiſirten Maſſen).' Use *to support*, (unterſtützen) in the passive voice, but not the verb *to encompass* (einſchließen).

[11] *Was—back*, ſo wurden ſie (*i.e.* the troops) ... zurückgedrängt.

[12] *Under the weight*, durch die Wucht.

[13] *Involved*, zog auch ... mit hinein.

[14] *Centre battalion*, here Centrum.

[15] *Brigade of Guards*, Leibgarten-Brigade.

[16] *Pushed*, transl. drängte.

[17] *Crest*, Gipfel; *to get to*, erreichen.

[18] *Obliging—him*, und zwang, oder veranlaßte, ihn.

[19] *To hang back*, zu zögern; *cover*, Schutz.

[20] *Overcast*, trübe.

[21] Turn the clause *But—changed*

up[1] to the knoll; for not only did their fire extirpate[2] the Causeway batteries,[3] and so lay open the pass,[4] but it tore through[5] the columns of Prince Mentschikoff's infantry reserves, and drove them at once from the field. This discomfiture of the Russian centre could not but govern the policy of Kiriakoff,[6] obliging him to conform[7] to its movement of retreat;[7] and he must have been the more ready to acknowledge to himself[8] the necessity of the step he was taking,[9] since by[10] this time he had suffered the disaster[10] which was inflicted upon[11] his great "column of the eight battalions" by the French artillery. He retreated without being molested[12] by the French infantry, and took up[13] a position at a distance of two miles from the Alma. Meanwhile, after a sheer[14] fight of infantry, the whole strength[15] that the enemy had on the Kowrgané hill[16] was broken and turned to ruin[17] by the Guards and the Highlanders. Thenceforth the

by 'but suddenly the battle assumed another face' (Geſtalt).

[1] *Had brought up*, hatte...bringen laſſen. We use here laſſen for gelaſſen, in accordance with the rule that the auxiliary verbs of mood—dürfen, mögen, können, müſſen, wollen, ſollen, and laſſen—are generally used in the infinitive instead of in the past participle when immediately following another infinitive.

[2] *To extirpate*, here vernichten.

[3] *Causeway batteries*, Chauſſée-Batterien. This refers to the two batteries which were placed by Prince Mentschikoff "astride the great road, and disposed along the chain of hillocks which runs across the pass, looking down on the bridge."

[4] *So—pass*, machte auf dieſe Weiſe den Paß frei.

[5] *Tore through*, zerſprengte; *infantry reserves*, Infanteriereſerve.

[6] *Could—Kiriakoff*, mußte natürlich Kiriakoffs Strategik beeinfluſſen.

[7] *To conform*, here ſich anſchließen; *movement of retreat*, rückgängige Bewegung.

[8] *To acknowledge to himself*, ſich eingeſtehen.

[9] The whole of the above sentence might in German be condensed by turning it by 'and he must the more readily (um ſo eher) acknowledge to himself the necessity of this step.'

[10] *By—disaster*, er von dem Unheil ſchon betroffen war.

[11] *To inflict upon*, zufügen, to be followed by the dative.

[12] Use the Supine.

[13] *To take up*, here einnehmen; *at—from*, zwei Meilen weit von... entfernt.

[14] *Sheer*, here bloß. The two following nouns form in German a compound term.

[15] *Strength*, here Macht.

[16] The troops stationed on the Kowrgané hill were to oppose the Guards, the Highlanders, and the Light Division.

[17] *To turn to ruin*, here vernichten. The preposition *by* is rendered by von when it refers to the agent or cause from which an action or effect proceeds.

slaughter[1] that is wrought by artillery upon retreating[2] masses was all that remained to be fulfilled.[3]—KINGLAKE, *The Crimean War.*

XVIII.

THE APOSTLE OF THE GOTHS.

Ulphilas,[4] the Bishop and Apostle of the Goths, acquired their love and reverence by his blameless life and[5] indefatigable zeal; and they received with implicit[6] confidence the doctrines of truth and virtue which he preached and practised.[7] He executed the arduous task of translating[8] the Scriptures[9] into their native tongue,[10] a dialect of the German, or Teutonic, language; but he prudently[11] suppressed the four Books of Kings, as[12] they might tend[13] to irritate the fierce and sanguinary[14] spirit of the barbarians.

The rude, imperfect idiom[15] of soldiers and shepherds, so ill qualified[16] to communicate any spiritual ideas, was improved and modulated[17] by this genius; and Ulphilas,[18]

[1] *Slaughter* (in fights, &c.), Gemetzel; *is wrought...upon*, unter... angerichtet wird. For the rendering of *by* see page 52, note 17.

[2] *Retreating* = fleeing.

[3] *That — fulfilled*, was noch zu thun übrig blieb.

[4] Ulphilas, the son of Christian captives from Cappadocia, was born about the year 318. Ulphilas, signifying in Gothic 'Little Wolf,' is spelt in German as in English, but sometimes the letter f is substituted for ph. The Gothic spelling was, to judge from Jornandes, *Vulfila*.

[5] It is almost a matter of course that the possessive pronoun must here be repeated, on account of the difference of gender of the qualified nouns.

[6] *Implicit*, unbedingt.

[7] *To practise*, here ausüben.

[8] Use the Supine.

[9] *The Scriptures*, die heilige Schrift, or die Bibel.

[10] *Native tongue*, Muttersprache.

[11] *Prudently*, vorsichtiger Weise.

[12] See page 43, note 11.

[13] *Might tend*, translate dazu beitragen könnten; *to irritate*, aufregen.

[14] *Sanguinary*, lit. blutig, blutgierig; transl. here kriegerisch.

[15] We use the same expression in German.

[16] *So ill qualified*, das sich so schlecht dazu eignete; *to communicate* = to express; *spiritual*, here abstract.

[17] *To modulate*, here verfeinern.

[18] Insert here the verb *was*, and turn *frame* by 'make.'

before he could frame his version, was obliged to compose[1] a new alphabet of twenty-four letters, four[2] of which he invented to express the peculiar sounds[3] that were unknown to the Greek and Latin pronunciation.

The character of Ulphilas recommended him to[4] the esteem of the Eastern[4] Court, where he twice appeared as the minister of peace;[5] he pleaded the cause[6] of the distressed Goths who implored the protection of Valens;[7] and the name *of* Moses was applied[8] to this spiritual guide, who conducted his people[9] through the deep waters of the Danube to the Land of Promise.[10] The devout shepherds, who were attached to his person and tractable to his voice,[11] acquiesced in their settlement at the foot of the Mæsian[12] mountains, in a country of woodlands and pastures,[13] which supported[14] their flocks and herds,[15] and enabled[16] them to purchase the corn and wine of the more plentiful provinces.[17] These harmless barbarians multiplied[18] in obscure peace and the profession[19] of Christianity.—GIBBON, *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire.*

[1] *To compose,* here bilden.

[2] Place the numeral *four* after *he.*

[3] *Peculiar sounds,* eigenthümliche Laute; *unknown,* say fremd.

[4] Turn *The — to* briefly by 'Ulphilas gained by his character.'— *Eastern,* here: oſtrömiſch.

[5] *Minister of peace,* Friedensbote.

[6] *To plead a cause,* eine Sache führen; *distressed,* here bedrängt.

[7] Proper names—especially those of foreign origin—terminating in a sibilant, *i.e.* s, ß, r, ſch, z, are not declined, but have the case pointed out by the definite article.

[8] *To apply* (a name), beilegen; *spiritual,* here geiſtlich.

[9] See page 41, note 11. *Waters,* Gewäſſer.

[10] The Biblical expression for *the Land of Promise* is in German das gelobte Land; *devout* = pious.

[11] *Tractable—voice,* translate auf ſeine Stimme hörten; *acquiesced—the,* ließen ſich ruhig nieder am.

[12] *Mœsian,* möſiſch.

[13] The expression *of woodlands and pastures* may be rendered by the terms waldig und wieſenreich, used as attributive adjectives before the noun *country.*

[14] *To support,* here nähren.

[15] The two synonyms *flocks* and *herds* might here be rendered by the single expression Herde, though the term Rudel is also used for *herd,* especially when referring to deer and pigs.

[16] *To enable,* here in den Stand ſetzen.

[17] *Plentiful provinces* = blessed countries.

[18] *To multiply,* here ſich vermehren, *obscure,* unbeachtet.

[19] *Profession,* Bekenntniß.

XIX.

THE PRAIRIE.[1]

In truth there is nothing[2] to describe about the prairie except its vastness, and that is indescribable. * * * East,[3] west, north, and south—on the right hand and on the left—in front and behind—stretched[4] the broken, woodless upland. Underneath the foot a springy[5] turf, covered with scentless violets and wild prairie roses; overhead[6] a bright, cloudless sky, whence the sun shot down beams that would have scorched up the soil long *ago* but for[7] the fresh, soft prairie breeze blowing from across the Rocky Mountains;[8] low, grassy slopes on every side, looking like waves of turf[9] rising and falling gently. Not a tree to be seen[10] in the far distance; not a house in sight,[11] far or near; not a drove[12] of sheep or a herd of cattle; no sign of life except the dun-coloured prairie chickens[13] whirring through the heather as we drove along,[14]—nothing but the broken, woodless upland.

[1] The term *prairie* is also used in German, where it retains the original feminine gender.

[2] *There is nothing*, transl. es läßt ſich...nichts; *about*, here von.

[3] Supply nach before *East*; *in—behind*, vor uns und hinter uns.

[4] *To stretch*, here ſich ausdehnen; *broken*, with reference to land, uneben; *woodless*, waldlos.

[5] Turn *underneath—springy* by 'under the feet elastic.'

[6] *Overhead*, say: über dem Haupte.

[7] The expression *but for*, referring to a present participle, must be turned by 'if not,' and the present participle changed into the conditional. The sense of the passage must determine which tense is to be employed. Here we should use the present conditional, *i.e.* 'if ...did not blow.'

[8] *From — Mountains*, von dem Felſengebirge her. The original English name *Rocky Mountains* is not unfrequently met with in German books. Humboldt employs it in his „Anſichten der Natur."

[9] Turn *waves of turf* by the compound 'grass-waves,' using *rising and falling gently* (ſanft auf- und niederwogend) as an attributive clause.

[10] Turn *to be seen* by 'is to see.'

[11] *In sight*, ſichtbar. For *far and near* we use in German the alliterative expression weit und breit, to which the English 'far and wide' corresponds.

[12] *Drove*, Trieb, from treiben, *to drive*.

[13] *Prairie chickens*, amerikaniſche Feldhühner. The word *dun-coloured* may here be rendered by dunkelfarbig; whirring, die ... ſchwirrten.

[14] *To drive along* and, further on, *to pass on*, dahinfahren.

So we passed on, coming from time to time upon[1] some break[2] in the monotony of the vast, dreamlike[3] solitude. Sometimes it was a prairie stream, running[4] clear as crystal between *its* low, sedgy banks, through[5] which our horses forded knee-deep, and then again the broken, woodless upland; sometimes it was a lone Irish shanty,[6] knocked up roughly with[7] planks and logs, and wearing a look[8] as though it had been built by shipwrecked settlers[9] stranded on the shore of the prairie-sea. Farther on we came upon[10] a herd of half-wild horses, who as we approached dashed away[11] in *a* wild stampede; then upon a knot of trees,[12] whose[13] seeds had been wafted from the distant forest, and taken root[14] kindly on the rich prairie soil; now upon an emigrant's team, *with* the women and children under the canvas awning,[15] and the red-shirted and brigand-looking miners[16] at its side, travelling across the prairie in search of[17] the land of

[1] *To come upon* (anything), ſtoßen auf. See Int. page xv., II., *a*.

[2] *Break*, here Abwechslung.

[3] *Dreamlike*, traumhaft.

[4] *Running* may here be rendered by the present participle dahinfließend, placing it after *banks*.

[5] *Through...forded*, durchwateten.

[6] *Shanty*, Blockhaus or Hütte. Some German writers employ the English expression. *Knocked up*, translate zuſammen gezimmert. The verb zimmern is applied to work done by carpenters.

[7] Translate *with* by aus; cf. the note to Extr. 3.

[8] *To wear a look*, ausſehen.

[9] The German for *settler* is Anſiedler, but the English word is also used; *shipwrecked*, ſchiffbrüchig.

[10] See above, note 1.

[11] *To dash away*, fortſtürzen. Render the Americanism *stampede*—from the Spanish *estampido*—denoting a sudden scamper of large bodies of cattle or horses on the prairies, by Flucht.

[12] *Knot of trees*, Baumgruppe.

[13] In German we could not use here the relative pronoun, because it would imply that it was the seeds which the trees themselves had produced that were wafted from the distant forest. We should therefore, in order to avoid an ambiguity, render *whose — wafted*, freely by die ihr Daſein dem Samen verdankt, der...hergetragen worden.

[14] *To take root*, Wurzel faſſen; *kindly*, here ſchnell, and *rich*, üppig; *emigrant's team*, Auswanderergeſpann.

[15] *Canvas awning* (of vehicles), Plane. In some parts of Germany people say Plaue.

[16] There are no single equivalents for the adjectives *red-shirted* and *brigand-looking*, and the expression *miners* could not be rendered here by Bergleute, as this term is generally applied to professional miners only. The whole clause must, therefore, be turned by 'the gold-diggers with their red shirts and brigand-like appearance' (räuberhaftem Ausſehen).

[17] *In search of*, um... aufzuſuchen; *land of gold* forms in German a compound term.

gold; and then again the silent solitude and the broken, woodless upland.—E. Dicey, *Six Months in the Federal States.*

XX.

CHIVALRY[1] IN SPAIN.

Spain was indeed the land of chivalry. The respect for the sex[2] which had descended[3] from the Visigoths[4] was mingled[5] with the religious enthusiasm which had been[6] kindled in the long wars with the Infidel.[7] The apotheosis[8] of chivalry in the person of their apostle and patron, St. James,[9] contributed still further to this exaltation of sentiment,[10] which was maintained[11] by the various military orders, who devoted themselves, in the bold language of the age, to the service "of God and the ladies." So that the Spaniard may be said to have put in action[12]

[1] *Chivalry*, here das Ritterthum, or das Ritterweſen, and not die Ritterſchaft; for the latter denotes the 'body or order of knights,' whilst the former expressions signify the 'system or practice of knighthood.'

[2] The expression *sex*, alone, cannot be used in German, as is done in English, to denote 'womankind;' the adjectives 'female' or 'fair' must, therefore, be supplied before the noun.

[3] *To descend*, herſtammen.

[4] The Visigoths have, like all other members of the great German family, at all times displayed the deepest respect towards women, to whom they attributed an almost sacred character. *Visigoths*, Weſtgothen.

[5] Turn *was mingled* by the reflective form 'united itself.'

[6] See Extr. 4, note *b*; *to kindle*, fig. anfachen; use the imperf.

[7] The term *Infidel*, used here collectively for unbelievers, is in German employed in the plural.

[8] Retain here the corresponding foreign term. *Patron*, Schutzheilige.

[9] *St. James* standing here in apposition to the preceding nouns, we must render it by Sanct Jagos or des heiligen Jacob. The patron of the Spanish knights was the Apostle St. James (Spanish *Jago*), said to be buried in the Spanish town called after him Santjago di Compostella. The *shrine* (Schrein) of the patron is in that place.

[10] The whole clause *contributed—sentiment* must in German be rather freely paraphrased by trug noch mehr dazu bei, dieſem Gefühle einen höhern Aufſchwung zu verleihen.

[11] *To maintain*, here nähren; *orders*, here Orden; *to devote oneself*, ſich widmen; *age*, here Zeit; *ladies*, Damen.

[12] Turn *so—action* by 'so that one can say that the Spaniard put in action.' *To put in action*, thatſächlich ausführen.

what, in other countries, passed for the extravagances[1] of the minstrel. An example of this[2] occurs in the fifteenth century, when[2] a passage of arms was defended[3] at Orbigo, not far from the shrine of Compostella, by[4] a Castilian knight, named Suero de Queñones, and his nine companions, against all comers,[5] in the presence of John the Second and his court.

The object was[6] to release the knight from the obligation, imposed on him by his mistress,[7] of publicly wearing an iron collar round his neck[8] every Thursday. The jousts[9] continued *for* thirty days, and the doughty champions[10] fought, without shield or target,[11] with weapons bearing points of Milan steel.[12] Six hundred and twenty-seven encounters[13] took place, and *one* hundred and sixty-six lances were broken,[14] when the emprise[15] was declared to be fairly achieved. The whole affair[16] is narrated with becoming[17] gravity by an eye-witness, and the reader may fancy himself[18] perusing the adventures of a Launcelot or an Amadis.—PRESCOTT, *History of the Reign of Ferdinand and Isabella.*

[1] *Passed—extravagances,* für die Ueberſchwenglichkeiten...galt.

[2] *Of this,* hievon; *to occur,* vorkommen. See page 50, note 22.

[3] *A—defended,* ein Ritterkampf... aufgenommen wurde.

[4] See page 52, note 17.

[5] Transl. *all comers* by alle Welt.

[6] *The object was,* dies hatte zum Zweck; *to release,* befreien.

[7] Turn the clause *the—mistress* by 'the on him by his lady imposed obligation (auferlegten Verpflichtung).

[8] *Collar round his neck,* say simply Halsband.

[9] *Joust,* Turnier. Use here the singular only. *Continued* = lasted.

[10] *Champion,* here Kämpe.

[11] The term *target* denoting here a shield, formerly used as a defensive weapon, must be rendered by Tartſche.

[12] *Bearing — steel,* deren Spitzen aus Mailänder Stahl waren.

[13] *Encounter,* here Kampf.

[14] *To break,* here brechen.

[15] Translate *emprise,* by Aufgabe; and render *to be fairly achieved* by für vollſtändig gelöſt.

[16] When the expression *affair* is synonymous with 'incident,' it is rendered by Ereigniß; when with 'occurrence,' by Vorfall; and when with 'event,' as is the case here, by Begebenheit.

[17] *Becoming,* here geziement. The corresponding foreign term of *gravity* may here be retained.

[18] Transl. *may fancy himself* by könnte glauben, and turn the present part. *perusing* by 'that he reads.'

XXI.

CHARLES THE GREAT.

1.

CORONATION OF CHARLES[1] AT ROME.

Charles remained in the city for[2] some weeks; and on Christmas-day, A.D. 800, he heard mass in the basilica *of* St. Peter.[3] On the spot where now the gigantic dome of Bramante and Michael Angelo towers[4] over the buildings of the modern city, the spot[5] which tradition had hallowed as that of the Apostle's martyrdom,[6] Constantine the Great had erected the oldest and stateliest[7] temple of Christian Rome.

Out of the transept a flight *of* steps led up to the high altar,[9] underneath and just beyond the great arch, the Arch of Triumph,[10] as it was[11] called: behind in the semi circular apse[12] sat the clergy, rising tier above tier

[1] See Ext. 11, note *a*.

[2] The literal translation of the preposition *for* would here be an Anglicism, duration of time being generally expressed in German, as in Latin, by the accusative only. Sometimes the word lang is added, if the length of time is to be denoted emphatically, as: vierzig Jahre lang, *for forty years*. For the constr. of *in—weeks*, cf. Ext. 4, n. *a*.

[3] Turn here *the—St. Peter* by 'the St. Peter's Church.' The abbreviation *St.* is in accordance with the Latin *sanctus*, for which it stands, pronounced in German 'Sanct;' *gigantic dome*, Rieſendom.

[4] *To tower*, emporragen.

[5] *The spot*, say . an jener Stelle.

[6] Turn *which — martyrdom* by 'which the tradition *has* hallowed as that where the martyrdom of the Apostle *has* taken place.' According to tradition, the Apostle Peter was crucified on that spot A.D. 67.

[7] *Stately*, here prächtig.

[8] *Out of the*, vom.

[9] *High altar* is in German a compound substantive; and the principal member—that is, the component which determines the other—being an adjective, it is joined without any inflection to the subordinate member. Place *out—transept* before *up to the* (bis zum ...hinauf); *just beyond*, gerade hinter.

[10] Turn *Arch of Triumph* by the compound term 'triumph-arch.' In German compound expressions the principal, or qualifying, member always precedes the other, as is also the case with the English compounds forming one word.

[11] See Extr. 4, note *b*.

[12] *Semi circular apse*, halbkreisförmige Apſis. The word *apsis* is

around its walls ;[1] in the midst, high above the rest,[2] and looking down, past the altar, over[3] the multitude, was placed the Bishop's throne, itself[4] the curule chair of some[5] forgotten magistrate.[6] From that chair the Pope now rose,[7] as the reading of the Gospel ended,[8] advanced to[9] where Charles—who had exchanged his simple Frankish dress for the sandals and the chlamys[10] of a Roman patrician—knelt in prayer by[11] the high altar ; and as in the sight[12] of all he placed upon the brow[13] of the barbarian[14] chieftain the diadem of the Cæsars, then bent in obeisance[15] before him, the church rang to the shout[16] of the multitude,[17] again free, again the lords[18] and centre of the world : "*Karolo Augusto, a Deo coronato, magno et pacifico Imperatori, vita et victoria.*"[19]

In that shout, echoed by the Franks without,[20] was

sometimes rendered by Chorniſche, *i.e.* niche of the choir, or by Abſeite, off-side ; *clergy*, Geiſtlichkeit.

[1] Render the clause *rising—walls* by in aufſteigenden Reihen an den Wänden herum.

[2] Translate *high above the rest* by alles Andere überragend.

[3] *Looking—over*, über den Altar hinweg . . . überſehend.

[4] The pronoun *itself* should here be rendered freely by ehmalig, 'former,' to be used as an attributive adjective, with the definite article. *Curule*, curuliſch.

[5] *Some* is here synonymous with 'any one,' and is to be rendered by irgend ein.

[6] Translate here *magistrate* by Staatsbeamten ; the *curule chair* having been the seat of honour of the highest dignitaries of the ancient Roman State.

[7] *To rise*, in the sense of 'to get up from a seat, &c.' is rendered in the more elevated style by ſich erheben, instead of aufſtehen.

[8] *As—ended*, transl. ſo wie das Evangelium geleſen war.

[9] Render *advanced to* by ſchritt bis zu dem Platze vor ; *Frankish*, fränkiſch.

[10] There is no exact and single German equivalent for the Greek term *chlamys*. We may retain the original expression, die Chlamis, or render it by Staatsmantel.

[11] Turn *knelt—by* by 'praying, knelt at :' *as*, here wie.

[12] *Sight*, here Angeſicht.

[13] *Brow*, transl. Haupt, which is the more dignified expression for Kopf, *head*.

[14] The adjective *barbarian* would in German be too strong an epithet here : use, therefore, the less harsh expression Barbarenhäuptling for *barbarian chieftain*. Turn *diadem* by 'crown.' *Cæsars*, denoting 'Emperors,' is in German Cäſaren.

[15] *Bent in obeisance*, ſich tief... verneigte.

[16] *To ring to the shout*, von dem Rufe erſchallen.

[17] Turn *multitude* by 'people, and add 'which was.'

[18] For *lords* use Beherrſcher, in the singular only ; *centre*, Mittelpunkt.

[19] Turn the above Latin phrase by 'Long life and victory to Charles Augustus, the crowned by God, great and peace-loving Emperor.' *Vita* might also be rendered here by Heil, *i.e.* hail.

[20] *Echoed—without*, in welchen die

pronounced the union, so long in preparation,[1] so mighty in its consequences, of the Roman and the Teuton, of the memories[2] and the civilization of the South with the fresh energy of the North, and from that moment modern[3] history begins.[3]

2.

CHARACTER OF CHARLES THE GREAT.

No claim can be more groundless[4] than that which the modern French, the sons of the Latinised Kelt, set up to[5] the Teutonic Charles. At Rome he might[6] assume the chlamys[7] and the sandals, but at the head[8] of his Frankish host he strictly adhered to[9] the customs of his country, and was beloved by his people as the very[10] ideal of their own character and habits.[10] Of strength and stature almost superhuman,[11] in swimming and hunting[12] unsurpassed, steadfast[13] and terrible in fight, to[14] his friends gentle and condescending, he was[15] a Roman, much less a Gaul, in

Franken von außen einstimmten. The literal wiederhallen, for *to echo*, cannot be used with reference to persons.

[1] Turn *in preparation* by 'prepared,' and render *so mighty in its consequences* by the expressive compound term folgenreich; placing both adjectives as attributes before *union* (Vermählung); *of—Teutons*, 'between the Romans and Teutons.'

[2] *Memories*, say: historischen Vergangenheit.

[3] Render *from that moment modern—begins*, by von diesem Augenblicke an datirt die neue.

[4] *Groundless*, here unbegründet; *Latinised*, latinisirt.

[5] *To set up a claim to anything*, einen Anspruch auf etwas machen. Recent historical investigations have conclusively proved that Charles the Great was born in the country formerly called *Austrasia*; consequently, on genuine German soil.

[6] Use here for *might* the imperfect of mögen; *to assume*, here anthun.

[7] See page 60, note 10.

[8] We say in German, in the above and similar phrases, an der Spitze; *host* = army.

[9] *To adhere strictly to anything*, streng an etwas halten.

[10] *Very* may here be rendered by the expressive term verkörpert, *i.e.* embodied. Cf. p. 42, n. 9.

[11] Turn *of—superhuman* by 'of nearly superhuman strength and stature (Statur).

[12] See page 15, note 1.

[13] *Steadfast*, standhaft.

[14] *To* is here to be rendered by the preposition gegenüber, which is put after the noun to which it refers; *gentle*, mild.

[15] The expression *in nothing* is to be placed in the translation after *he was*, and the indefinite article before *Roman* and *Gaul* omitted.

nothing but[1] his culture and his width of view,[2]—otherwise a Teuton. The centre of his realm was the Rhine; his capitals Aachen and Engilenheim;[3] his army German; his sympathies, as they are shown[4] in the gathering of the old hero-lays,[5] the composition[6] of a German grammar, the ordinance against confining prayer to[7] the three languages —Hebrew, Greek, and Latin—were all for the race from which he sprang,[8] and whose advance,[9] represented by the victory of Austrasia, the true Frankish fatherland,[10] over Neustria and Aquitaine, spread a second Germanic wave[11] over the conquered countries.—James Bryce, *The Holy Roman Empire.*

XXII.

LOVE OF[12] FLOWERS.

Perhaps it may be thought, if we understood flowers better, we might love them less.[13] We do not love them

[1] *But,* referring here to the term *nothing,* is to be rendered by als, and the preposition *in* repeated after it.

[2] *Width of view,* umfaſſende Anſchauungsweiſe; otherwise, ſonſt

[3] *Engilenheim,* now called *Ingelheim,* lies between Mentz and Bingen, not far from the left bank of the Rhine.

[4] *Are shown,* transl. ſich kundgeben.

[5] *Hero-lay,* Heldenlied.

[6] *Composition,* transl. Ausarbeitung, *i.e.* elaboration. We might also use the infinitive verfaſſen substantively, and render *the* by im. It may not be quite superfluous to remark here, that although the verb *to compose* (a book) is rendered by verfaſſen, we rarely use the noun Verfaſſung for *the composition* (of a book), but employ it for the 'state or mood of the mind,' and more particularly for the political *constitution* of a country.

[7] *The—to,* in der Verordnung das Gebet nicht bloß auf...zu beſchränken.

[8] *Were—sprang,* waren ſämmtlich für die Raſſe aus welcher er ſtammte.

[9] Translate *advance* by Ausdehnung, and *represented* by wie ſie... bezeichnet wird. *Austrasia,* Auſtraſien.

[10] *The—fatherland,* dem eigentlichen Heimathland der Franken. *Neustria,* Neuſtrien; *Aquitaine,* Aquitanien.

[11] *Wave,* in the sense in which it is used here, Woge.

[12] The objective genitive, *i.e.* the genitive which stands as an object of some action or feeling, is frequently expressed in German by a preposition, in order to avoid all ambiguity. The governing substantive or the verb from which it is derived will in such instances show which preposition is required. The noun *love* is in German followed by the preposition zu.

[13] Turn *Perhaps—less* by 'one

much as it is.[1] Few people care about[2] flowers. * * * I have never heard[3] of a piece of land which would let well on a building lease remaining unlet because it was[4] a flowery piece. I have never heard of parks being kept for[5] wild hyacinths, though often of their being kept[6] for wild beasts. And the blossoming time[7] of the year being principally spring, I perceive it to be the mind of most people[8] during that period to stay in towns.

A year or two ago[9] a keen-sighted and eccentrically-minded friend of mine[10] having taken it into his head[11] to violate this national custom, and go to *the* Tyrol in spring, was passing through a valley near Landeck with several similarly headstrong companions. A strange mountain appeared[12] in the distance, belted about its breast with a zone of blue,[13] like our English Queen. Was it a blue cloud? * * * Was it a mirage—a meteor? Would it stay to be approached?[14] (Ten miles of winding road[15] yet

could perhaps believe, that we should love the flowers less if we understood more of them.'

[1] Translate *as it is by* auch ſo, and place the same at the beginning of the clause.

[2] *Care about*, in the above sense, machen ſich etwas aus.

[3] Supply here davon, and turn *of—unlet* by 'that a piece of land which would let well on a building lease (das ſich zu Bauzwecken gut vermiethen ließe) remained unlet.'

[4] Use here the present tense, and translate *a flowery piece* by ein blumenreicher Boden.

[5] Turn here *for* by 'on account of,' and construe the clause according to note 3 above.

[6] Turn *of their being kept* by 'that one kept them.'

[7] *Blossoming time*, Blüthezeit. See Int. page xvi., *c*, and supply im before *spring*. *To perceive*, bemerken.

[8] Turn *it—people* by 'that most people like' (mögen).

[9] Turn the above clause by 'before one or two years;' and in construing the following clauses remember that the sentence does not begin with the subject, and that the expression *was passing through* (fam... durch) contains the principal verb.

[10] *A—mine*, ein ſcharfſichtiger und excentriſcher Freund von mir. In similar phrases the dative is used in German for the genitive.

[11] *To take anything into one's head*, ſich etwas vornehmen; *to violate*, here entgegen handeln.

[12] *To appear*, here ſich zeigen.

[13] *Belted—blue*, in der Mitte mit einem blauen Gürtel geſchmückt; *like*, here wie.

[14] *Would—approached*, wird es bei der Annäherung nicht verſchwinden? *i.e.* will it not disappear at our approaching it? Some free version of the kind is necessary in German, partly because *to approach* is an intransitive verb, and cannot be used in the passive voice, and partly because it seems more in accordance with the genius of the German language to ask whether the *blue zone* will not disappear, as a rainbow would, than to inquire whether it would stay, since this verb would imply a voluntary action.

[15] *Of—road*, einer ſich hinwindenden

between them and the foot of its mountain.) Such questioning[1] had they concerning it. My keen-sighted friend alone maintained it to be substantial;[2] whatever it might be, it was not air, and would not vanish. The ten miles of road[3] were overpassed, the carriage left,[4] the mountain climbed. It stayed[5] patiently, expanding[6] still into richer breadth and heavenlier glow[7]—a belt of gentians. Such things[8] may verily be seen among the Alps in spring, and in spring only.[9] Which being so,[10] I observe most people prefer going in autumn.—JOHN RUSKIN, *Modern Painters*.

XXIII.

LIFE[11] AMONG THE BEDOUINS.

1.

If a Bedouin tribe[12] be moving in great haste before an enemy,[13] and should be unable to stop for many hours,[14] or be making a forced march to avoid pursuit over[15] a desert where the wells are very distant from each other, the

Straße. Supply lagen before *yet* (noch), and turn *its* by 'the.'

[1] *Questioning* = questions; *had —it*, ſtellten ſie darüber auf.

[2] *Substantial*, transl. etwas Wirkliches. Cf. Int. page xvii., III. *Whatever—was*, was immer es auch ſei, ſo war es.

[3] Turn *road* by 'way,' putting it in the genitive case without any article; *overpassed*, zurückgelegt. Here the action may be considered as quite past.

[4] Supply here the imperfect of werden; *to climb*, erklimmen. The prefix er denotes here the achieving of an action.

[5] *Stayed*, transl. lag...da.

[6] Use in German the reflective form, retaining the present participle; *into richer*, zu vollerer.

[7] *Heavenlier glow*, transl. tieferer Himmelsbläue; *gentians*, Enzianen.

[8] *Such things*, Dergleichen; *may verily be seen* = can one verily see.

[9] *Only* should be placed before *spring*.

[10] *Which being so*, und da dies der Fall iſt; supply 'that' before *most*- and 'it' before *prefer; going*, zu reiſen.

[11] *Life*, here Lebensweiſe; *among* = of.

[12] *Bedouin tribe*, Beduinenſtamm.

[13] Turn *be—enemy* by 'flees before an enemy in great haste.'

[14] Render *should—hours* by viele Stunden lang nicht Halt machen kann.

[15] Turn *be — over* by 'if he, in order to avoid pursuit (um der Verfolgung zu entgehen), makes a forced march (Eilmarſch) through.'

women sometimes prepare[1] bread whilst riding on camels. The fire is then lighted in an earthen vessel. One woman kneads the flour, a second rolls out the dough, and a third bakes, boys or women on foot passing the materials, as required,[2] from one to the other. But it is very rare that the Bedouins are obliged to have recourse to this process,[3] and I have only once witnessed[4] it.

2.

The common Bedouin can rarely get[5] meat. His food[6] consists almost exclusively of wheaten bread[7] with truffles, which are found in great abundance during the spring, a few wild[8] herbs, such as asparagus, onions, and garlic, fresh butter, curds,[9] and sour milk.

But at certain seasons even these luxuries[10] cannot be obtained: for months together[11] he often eats bread alone. The Sheikhs[12] usually slay[13] a sheep every day, of which their guests, a few of their relatives, and their immediate adherents partake.[14] The women prepare the food,[15] and always eat after the men,[16] who rarely leave them much wherewith to satisfy[17] their hunger.

[1] Cf. the note to Ext. 7,

[2] *Passing — required,* bringen die Sachen ſo wie ſie gebraucht werden.

[3] *Process* being here synonymous with 'proceeding,' is to be rendered by Verfahren.

[4] Turn here *witnessed* by 'seen.'

[5] *To get,* here bekommen.

[6] When *food* expresses in a general sense all that is eaten for nourishment, we use in German Nahrung; but when it is a synonym of *dish,* denoting a particular kind of food, the German equivalent is Speiſe.

[7] Form here a compound expression from *wheat* and *bread.*

[8] *A few wild,* aus einigen wildwachſenden; *such as,* wie.

[9] *Curds,* Quarg, for which the expression Käſebutter is used in some parts of Germany.

[10] *Luxuries,* here Leckerbiſſen; *cannot be obtained,* ſind...nicht zu haben.

[11] Substitute in the translation 'long' for *together,* and omit *for.*

[12] *Sheikh* is written in German either Scheif or Scheich, and pronounced as a German word.

[13] *To slay* (an animal for eating), ſchlachten.

[14] *Of which...partake,* transl. an deſſen Genuß...Theil nehmen.

[15] See above, note 6.

[16] *Men* denotes here male individuals; we must therefore use the plural of Mann. Compare the Latin *vir* and the Greek ἀνήρ.

[17] Turn *wherewith to satisfy* by 'with which they could satisfy.'

3.

The dish[1] usually seen in a Bedouin tent[2] is a mess[3] of boiled meat, sometimes mixed with onions, upon which a lump of fresh butter is placed and allowed to melt.[4] The broad tail of the Mesopotamian[5] sheep is used for grease when there is no butter. Sometimes cakes of bread[6] are laid under the meat, and the entertainer,[7] tearing up the thin loaves into small pieces, soaks[8] them in the gravy[9] with his hands. The Anezza[10] make very savoury dishes of chopped meat and bread mixed with sour curds, over which when the huge platter[11] is placed before the guest is poured a flood of melted butter. Roasted meat is very rarely seen in a Bedouin tent. Rice is only eaten by the Sheikhs, except among[12] the tribes who encamp[13] in the marshes of Southern Mesopotamia,[14] where rice of an inferior quality[15] is very largely cultivated.[16] There it is boiled with meat and made into pilaws.[17]

[1] See page 65, note 6. *Usually seen* = which one usually sees.

[2] *Bedouin tent*, Beduinenzelt.

[3] *Mess*, here Gericht; *lump* = piece.

[4] Turn *and—melt* by 'which one lets melt.'

[5] *Mesopotamian*, mesopotamisch. By means of the suffix isch — the English *ish*—we form in German adjectives from the proper names of countries, nations, persons, &c.. *For*, here als; *grease*, Fett.

[6] *Cakes of bread*, transl. platte Brodkuchen.

[7] *Entertainer*, Wirth; *tearing up*, bricht.

[8] *To soak*, here tunken. Supply the conjunction und before *soaks*.

[9] The equivalent for *gravy* is not the same in all parts of Germany. It is called Sauce, Brühe, or Jus. The first term, in which au has the sound of o in große, and the e is also pronounced,' is the more usual. The last expression is pronounced as in French.

[10] The plural is in German Anezzas. *Savoury*, schmackhaft.

[11] *Huge platter*, riesige Schüssel; *flood*, here Strom.

[12] *Among*, here bei.

[13] *To encamp* may here be rendered by the corresponding foreign term, campiren.

[14] Proper names of countries preceded by adjectives generally require in German the definite article. The names themselves are by some authors not declined in this case, in analogy with the rule that proper names of persons preceded by the def. art. are not declined. *Mesopotamia*, Mesopotamien

[15] Render *an inferior quality* by eine schlechtere Art, placing this expression before the term *rice*, and omitting the preposition *of*.

[16] *Is—cultivated*, in großer Menge gebaut wird.

[17] *Made into pilaws*, Pilaws daraus zubereitet.

4.

The Bedouins are acquainted with[1] few medicines. The desert yields[2] some valuable simples, which are, however, rarely used.

Dr. Sandwith hearing[3] from Suttum that the Arabs had no opiates, asked[4] what they did with one who could[5] not sleep. "Do!"[6] answered the Sheikh: "why,[7] we make use of him, and set[8] him to watch the camels."—LAYARD, *Discoveries in the Ruins of Nineveh and Babylon.*

XXIV.

SIR SIDNEY SMITH AT BATH.

Not even a rumour of Sir Sidney's[9] escape had or could have run before him,[10] for at the moment of[11] reaching the coast of England[11] he had started with post-horses[12] to Bath. It was about dusk when he arrived;[13] the postilions were directed[14] to the square[15] in which his mother lived;

[1] *Are acquainted with*, kennen.

[2] *To yield*, liefern; *simples*, Heilkräuter.

[3] *Hearing*, als ... hörte; Sheikh Suttum accompanied the author.

[4] Supply 'he' after *asked; did with one*, mit Jemand thäten.

[5] *Could* is here the conditional of 'can,' and not the imperfect. This remark may seem superfluous; still the distinction between konnte, the imperfect, and könnte, the conditional, of können is very often neglected even by advanced students of German.

[6] Supply 'with him' before *do.*

[7] *Why*, here nun.

[8] Render *make use of*, by benutzen; *set* by lassen, and *watch* by hüten.

[9] That famous Admiral had been taken prisoner by the French in a naval combat near Havre in 1796.

[10] *Had—him*, war ihm vorangegangen oder hätte ihm vorangehen können. In German the repetition of the verb vorangehen is preferable on account of the different auxiliary verbs which are required in the above clause.

[11] Turn *of—England* by 'when (wo) he reached the English coast.'

[12] *Post-horses*, here Ortrapoft.

[13] Begin the German version by *he arrived*, and transl. *it—when* by ungefähr in der Dämmerstunde.

[14] Render *were directed* by er ließ ...fahren.

[15] The term *square* denoting a thing peculiar to England, may

in *a* few minutes he was in his mother's arms,[1] and in fifty minutes more[2] the news had flown to the remotest suburb *of the city*.

The agitation[3] of Bath on this occasion was indescribable. All the[4] troops of the line then quartered[5] in that city and a whole regiment of volunteers immediately got under arms,[6] and marched to the quarter in which Sir Sidney lived. The small square overflowed with[7] *the* soldiery; Sir Sidney went out,[8] and was immediately lost to us[9] who[10] were watching for him, in the closing[11] ranks of the troops. Next[12] morning, however, I, my younger brother, and a schoolfellow of my *own* age, called formally upon[13] the naval hero. Why, I know not, unless as *alumni*[14] of the school at which Sir Sidney Smith[15] had received his own education, we[16] were admitted without question or demur; and I may record[17] it as an amiable

be retained in German, and used as a masculine noun. Platz would not be the exact equivalent.

[1] Turn 'in the arms of his,' &c.

[2] Turn *in...more* by 'after; *town*, transl. sich verbreitet.

[3] *Agitation*, Aufregung.

[4] The definite article after the numeral *all* is not required in German, except in emphatic speech. For *troops of the line* form in German the compound expression 'lines-troops,' and supply the words 'which were.'

[5] *To quarter*, here einquartieren; *volunteers*, Freiwillige.

[6] *To get under arms*, ins Gewehr treten; *quarter*, here Stadttheil or Stadtviertel.

[7] *Overflowed with*, war gedrängt voll von; *soldiery* = soldiers.

[8] *Went out*, trat heraus.

[9] Turn *to us* by 'for us.' The author refers here to himself and his schoolfellows at the Bath Grammar School.

[10] When a relative pronoun refers to a personal pronoun of the first or second person — singular or plural—the personal pronoun must, for the sake of grammatical distinctness, be repeated after the relative which, in this case, is never to be rendered by welcher, welche, welches, but by der, die, das. The verb in the relative clause agrees in such cases, generally, with the personal pronoun. Render, therefore, *who—him*, by die wir auf ihn warteten.

[11] *Closing*, transl. geschlossenen.

[12] When *next* refers, as is the case here, to a period of time past, it is usually rendered by folgend, and when referring to the future by nächst. See also page 59, note 2.

[13] *To call formally upon*, einen förmlichen Besuch machen. For *naval hero* use the compound expression Seeheld.

[14] *Unless as alumni*, es sei denn daß wir Alumnen....waren.

[15] Supply the word selbst, which will convey the meaning of the word *own* occurring in the original.

[16] *Demur*, Aufenthalt. Place the words *we—demur*, which form here the principal clause at the beginning of the sentence, viz., before *why, I know not, &c.; admitted*, here vorgelassen.

[17] *May record*, kann...anführen.

trait in[1] Sir Sidney, that he received us *then* with great kindness, and took us down with him[2] to the pump-room.[3] Considering, however,[4] that we must have been most afflicting bores[5] *to* Sir Sidney—a fact which no self-esteem could even then disguise from us[6]—it puzzled me at first to understand the principle[7] of his conduct. Having[8] already done more than enough in courteous[9] acknowledgment of our fraternal claims as fellow-students at *the* Bath Grammar School,[10] why should he think it necessary[11] to burden himself further[12] *with* our worshipful[13] society? I found out[14] the secret, and will explain it. A very slight[15] attention to Sir Sidney's deportment in public revealed to me that he was morbidly afflicted[16] with nervous sensibility and with *mauvaise honte*.[17] * * *

And yet there was a[18] necessity that Sir Sidney should gratify[19] the public interest, so warmly expressed, by presenting himself somewhere or other to the public eye.[20] * * *

[1] *In* = from; *kindness*, Freundlichkeit.

[2] Turn *took—him* briefly by 'went with us.'

[3] The expression *pump-room* may be considered as a proper name of the place where the mineral waters at Bath are drunk. The corresponding designation for similar places is in German Trinkhalle, or simply Brunnen.

[4] *Considering, however*, da ich aber in Erwägung zog.

[5] *Must—bores*, äußerst lästig gefallen sein mußten, or, wie entsetzlich langweilig...sein mußten.

[6] Render *a—us* by ein Factum welches wir bei der besten Meinung von uns selbst, uns schon damals nicht verbergen konnten.

[7] *It—principle*, so zerbrach ich mir zuerst den Kopf darüber (*i.e.* I racked my brains about) den Grund...zu entdecken.

[8] See Int. p. xvi., *c*.

[9] Use def. art. before *courteous*.

[10] The English *Grammar School* corresponds in a great measure to the German Gelehrtenschule, which term should here be followed by the words *at Bath*.

[11] *To think anything necessary*, eine Sache für nöthig halten.

[12] *Further* = still longer. *To burden himself* may be rendered literally, or by sich aufbürden lassen.

[13] The expression *worshipful*, used here ironically, may be rendered in German by hochlöblich or hochachtbarlich.

[14] Turn *found out*, and further on *revealed*, by 'discovered.'

[15] Supply 'degree of;' *to*, auf; *deportment in public* = public deportment (Benehmen).

[16] *Was morbidly afflicted*, auf krankhafte Weise...litt; *with*, here an.

[17] The French expression *mauvaise honte* corresponds to the German falsche Scham. The term Befangenheit would here be equally applicable.

[18] Use here the definite article, and place the adverb *there* (vorhanden) after *necessity*.

[19] *To gratify*, here Genüge thun, which governs the dative. The expression *so warmly expressed* (bezeigte) qualifies the term *interest* (Theilnahme). See Int p. xiv., I.

[20] Turn the whole clause by

The thing[1] was unavoidable, and the sole palliation[2] that it admitted was to break[3] the concentration of the public gaze[4] by associating Sir Sidney with some alien[5] group, no matter of what cattle.[6] We, *the* schoolboys, being three,[7] intercepted and absorbed[8] part of the enemy's fire. —De Quincey, *Autobiographic Sketches.*

XXV.

OF STYLE.[9]

The eloquent Buffon says that the style is the man;[10] by which he means that we may see what the man is when we see his style. If this is true, every man should think[11] well what he is before he begins to write, and whether it is wise to expose himself.[12] It is true that nobody may[13] read his book, and that is often the best[14] luck that may befall him.

The first rule in good writing[15] is to know what you[16] are

' whilst he showed himself publicly in (an) the one or the other place.'

[1] There are two terms in German for the word *thing*, viz. Ding and Sache. For the present purpose it will suffice to mention one characteristic distinction between these synonyms — namely, that when *thing* is synonymous with 'matter, affair,' &c. as is the case here, it must be rendered by Sache, and not by Ding.

[2] *Palliation*, here Erleichterung.

[3] Render *to break* by abzulenken, and retain the term *concentration*, pronouncing it like a German word.

[4] The expression *public gaze* may be rendered somewhat freely by allgemeine Angafferei; *to associate*, ſich beigeſellen. Cf. Int. p. xv., II., *a.*

[5] *With some alien*, einer fremdartigen.

[6] *No—cattle*, transl. von welcher Art ſie auch ſei.

[7] Turn *being* by 'were,' and see page 68, note 10.

[8] *Intercepted, &c.*, fingen auf und abſorbirten (einen); *enemy's* = hostile.

[9] We should in German say Ueber den Stil, as in French *sur le style.*

[10] See note to Ext. 14; *may*, kann.

[11] *To think*, here erwägen.

[12] *To expose oneself*, here ſich bloßſtellen.

[13] Use here the present conditional of dürfen, and in the last clause that of können.

[14] Turn here *best* by 'greatest;' *to befall*, here widerfahren.

[15] *In good writing*, einer guten Schreibweiſe.

[16] See page 38, note 4, and render *are going* by will; *to go*, expressing futurity, is generally translated by the corresponding tense of wollen.

going to write about,[1]—a plain,[2] simple rule, but one that[3] is very much neglected. If a man makes a good choice of his subject,[4] he will not fail[5] to have the best words at his command,[6] and to put all in the best order.[7] So Horace says,[8] and he may be right; but it strikes me[9] that a man might[10] choose a good subject and yet[11] spoil it, of which we have notable[12] examples in our own days. The Roman, however, tells us that we must well consider[13] what our shoulders will bear, and what they will not;[14] *and* so[15] the rule is this: choose a good subject, if you[16] are able to handle it. If you are not,[17] need I tell you that you had[18] better let it alone?[19]—*An Old Man's Thoughts about Many Things.**

1 *What...about*, worüber.

2 *Plain*, ſchlicht.

3 Render *but one that* by die aber. *Much* = often.

4 Turn *if—subject* by 'if any one chooses a good subject.'

5 The verb *to fail* cannot, in the sense in which it is used here, be employed personally; we must therefore turn the clause *he will not fail* by 'so it is certain.'

6 *To have...at his command*, daß ihm...zu Gebote ſtehen werden.

7 *To—order*, er Alles aufs beſte zuſammenſtellen wird.

8 The above and the following allusions refer to the verses of Horace:—

Sumite materiam vestris, qui scribitis, aequam
Viribus; et versate diu quid ferre recusent,
Quid valeant humeri. Cui lecta potenter erit res,
Nec facundia deseret hunc nec lucidus ordo.

(Epist. ii. 3, v. 38.)

9 The idiomatic phrase *it strikes me* may be rendered here by es will mir ſcheinen.

10 When *might* expresses a supposed possibility, it is translated by the indicative of können or by the present conditional of dürfen.

11 When *yet* is used as a conjunction, and synonymous with 'nevertheless,' it is generally translated by dennoch.

12 The term *notable* will here best be rendered by the corresponding foreign expression notoriſch, derived from the Latin *notorius*.

13 When *to consider* is a synonym of 'to reflect, to deliberate,' it is usually rendered by überlegen, or by erwägen; the latter expression is here preferable.

14 Turn *what—not* by 'what our shoulders can bear, and what not.'

15 Render here *so* by demnach; and transl. *this* by Folgendes, placing it before *the rule*.

16 In similar apostrophes we use in German the familiar second person singular, unless an author addresses his readers collectively. *To handle* (a subject), behandeln.

17 Turn *If—not* by 'if thou canst it not;' *to need*, here brauchen.

18 Use for *had* the present conditional of thun.

19 The idiomatic phrase *to let a thing alone* is rendered in German by eine Sache ſein or bleiben laſſen, *i.e.* to let it be, or remain, what it is.

* The above extract is taken from a work full of wit, humour, and original thought, which has been published anonymously, but is attributed to Professor George Long.

XXVI.

THE BORDER FEUDS.[1]

For[2] twenty miles on either side of the Border *there* grew up a population who were[3] trained from their[4] cradles in licensed marauding.[5] Nominal amity between the countries operated as but a slight check upon[6] habits inveterately lawless; and though the Governments affected[7] to keep order, they could not afford[8] to be severe upon offences committed[9] in time of peace[10] by men on whom they chiefly depended for the defence[11] of the frontiers in time of war. The scanty[12] families in the fortified farms

[1] In analogy with the expressions Landkrieg, *war on land*, Seekrieg, *naval war*, &c. we may also form a compound term of the words Grenze, *border*, and Fehde, *feud*, by simply joining them together without any connecting link, after suppressing the final vowel of Grenze.

[2] *For*, here auf; *either* = both.

[3] Collective nouns occurring without any sign of the plural require in German, as a rule, the verb and pronoun referring to them in the singular only. *Trained*, erzogen; *from*, von...an.

[4] See note *b* to Extract 34, and use *cradles* in the singular.

[5] *In licensed marauding*, zu autorisirter Plünderung. *Nominal*, nominell.

[6] *Operated — upon*, that den... nur geringen Einhalt. Turn the adverb *inveterately* by the adjective eingewurzelt, and place the same, together with *lawless*, zügellos, as attributes before *habits*.

[7] *Affected* being here synonymous with 'pretended,' is to be rendered by sich stellen; *to keep* = as if (ob) they kept.

[8] The verb *to afford* is one of those comprehensive English expressions which can be hardly in any other modern idiom rendered by a single equivalent. Render here: *they — afford*, by so konnten sie es dennoch nicht wagen.

[9] Turn *to — committed* by 'to punish severely offences (Vergehen) which were committed.'

[10] The expressions *time of peace* and *time of war* are to be rendered here by compound substantives formed by adding in the first instance the term *times* to the genitive of *peace*, and in the second instance by adding the term *times* to the genitive of *war*. The first mode of forming compound expressions, *i.e.* by simply joining them together — especially when both members are substantives — has been pointed out before; and the present instances furnish an example of the second mode, which consists in adding the subordinate member to the genitive of the principal one.

[11] *On — defence*, auf welche sie sich...als Vertheidiger...vorzüglich verlassen mußten.

[12] *Scanty* = few.

and granges[1] in Roxburgh and Northumberland slept with their[2] swords under their pillows,[3] and their horses saddled[4] in their stables. The[5] blood of the children by the fireside was stirred by tales of wild adventure in song and story ;[5] and perhaps[6] for two centuries no boy *ever* grew to man's estate[7] along a strip of land forty miles across and joining the two seas[8] who had not known the midnight[9] terror of a blazing homestead,[10] who had not seen his father or brother ride out[11] at dusk harnessed and belted for some night foray, to be brought back before morning,[12] gory and stark, across the saddle, and[13] been roused from *his* bed by his mother to swear with his child's lips[14] a vow of revenge over the corpse.

And the fierce feuds of the Mosstroopers[15] were but an expression in its[16] extreme form of the animosity between the two nations. The English[17] hated Scotland because Scotland had successfully[18] defied them : the Scots hated

[1] *Farms*, Farmhäuſer; *granges*, Gehöfte.

[2] See page 35, note 13.

[3] Use the singular, and see for the possessive pronouns n. *b* to Ext. 34.

[4] *Saddled*, transl. ſtanden geſattelt.

[5] Turn *The—story* by 'the blood of the children was through narrations by the fire-side (am Herde) of wild adventures in song and story (Sage) stirred up.'

[6] *Perhaps* is to be placed after *centuries*, and *for* turned by 'during.'

[7] *Grew to man's estate*, erwuchs... zum Mannesalter.

[8] Turn *along—seas* by 'upon a forty miles wide and on the two seas bordering strip of land' (Landſtrich).

[9] Use for *midnight* the attributive adjective mitternächtlich.

[10] *Homestead*, transl. Heimſtätte.

[11] *Ride out*, here fortreiten; *harnessed—for*, gebarniſcht und gerüſtet zu; *night* = nightly.

[12] *Before morning*, here vor Tagesanbruch; *across*, transl. über... liegend.

[13] Supply 'who had not.' The verb aufwecken, for *to rouse*, would be here hardly expressive enough. Besides, we should then have to paraphrase the words *from his bed* by 'from his sleep.' But we may properly use here the very expressive and poetical term aufſchrecken, somewhat corresponding to the verb *to startle*.

[14] *Child's lips*, kindliche Lippen; *vow of revenge*, Rachgelübde.

[15] The only adequate expression for the term *Mosstrooper*, peculiar to Scotland of bygone times, seems to be Grenzräuber.

[16] Turn *its* by 'the,' and retain the expression *form ; of*, here von, *animosity*, Erbitterung.

[17] When the term *English* stands for 'the people of England,' we must render it by the equivalent of the word 'Englishmen :' when it is used adjectively, however, it is translated by engliſch. The rule applies to the names of other nations.

[18] Turn *successfully* by 'with success ;' *to defy*, Trotz bieten.

England as an enemy on the watch[1] to make[2] them slaves. The hereditary hostility strengthened[3] with time, and each generation[4] added fresh injuries to the accumulation of bitterness.

Fortunately for mankind,[5] however, the relations between nations are not eventually[6] determined by sentiment and passion.[7] The[8] mutual sufferings inflicted by the existing condition of things[8] produced its effect[9] in minds where reason was admitted to influence.[10]—FROUDE, *History of England.*

XXVII.

A GERMAN HAUTBOY-PLAYER.[11]

About[12] the year 1760, as Miller[13] was dining at Pontefract with the officers[14] of the Durham militia, one[15] of them, knowing his love of music, told him they had[16] a

[1] *On the watch,* translate der auf die Gelegenheit lauerte.

[2] See page 36, note 4.

[3] Turn *strengthened* by 'became stronger.'

[4] Retain here the term *generation,* pronouncing the same as a German word; *to—bitterness,* der aufgesammelten Erbitterung...hinzu.

[5] *Mankind,* here Menschheit, to be used with the definite article.

[6] *Eventually* being here used in the sense of 'ultimately,' is to be rendered by schließlich.

[7] Turn *sentiment and passion* by 'feelings and passions.'

[8] The contracted construction of the above clause *The—things* makes it in German necessary to give it in a completely different form. Turn therefore by 'the sufferings which through the existing order (Thatbestand) of things were inflicted upon (zugefügt) both parties.'

[9] *To produce an effect,* eine Wirkung hervorbringen (auf); *mind,* here Gemüth.

[10] *Was—influence,* Eingang fand.

[11] *Hautboy-player* and, further on, *performer on the hautboy,* Hoboenbläser, or simply Hoboist.

[12] Translate here the adverb *about* by um, and turn the sentence by 'as (als) Miller about, &c.'

[13] The above refers to Dr. Miller, organist at Pontefract, known as the historian of Doncaster.

[14] Military and naval *officers* are called Offiziere, and civil *officers* Beamte. *Durham militia* = militia of Durham.

[15] The subordinate clause of the above sentence preceding the principal one, we must give the latter in an inverted form, *i.e.* begin with the principal verb, *told* (him). For *love of music* see page 62, note 12.

[16] According to the rule mentioned page 29, note 3, we should

young German in their band,[1] as performer on the hautboy, who had only[2] been *a* few months in England, and yet spoke[3] English almost as well as[4] a native, and who was also an excellent performer on the violin:[5] the officer added[6] that if Miller would[7] come into another room this German should entertain him with[8] a solo.

The invitation was gladly[9] accepted, and Miller heard a solo of Giardini's[10] executed in[11] a manner that surprised him. He afterwards took[12] an opportunity of having some private conversation with the young musician, and asked him whether he had engaged[13] himself for any long period to the Durham militia. The answer was,[14] "Only from month to month."[15] "Leave them then," said the organist,

use here the present conjunctive: the preference ought, however, to be given to the present conditional, which is frequently used in dependent clauses containing the quotation, when the verb of the principal clause is employed in the imperfect or pluperfect.

[1] A regimental *band* is called in German Muſikcorps or Muſikbande.

[2] Insert here the preposition ſeit, *since*, which denotes in German 'the whole period of an event, including the present time,' and use the aux. verb ſein in the pres. conjunctive. *Only*, here erſt.

[3] See preceding page, note 16.

[4] *As well as*, eben ſo gut wie. It may here be mentioned as a caution that the general similarity between the English words *good*, *well*, and the German gut, wohl, very frequently misleads the students of German in their translations. It will in this place be sufficient to point out in general that the German adverb wohl does by no means stand in the same relation to the adjective gut as the English *well* does to the adjective *good*. Gut is in German, like every other adjective, also used as an adverb, and the use of wohl in its adverbial capacity is limited to a few verbs only, more particularly to those relating to the moral and physical condition of a person; as, ſich wohl befinden, es iſt mir wohl, &c. The adverb wohl is, besides, used in compound terms, and still more frequently as an expletive.

[5] *Performer on the violin* = violin-player.

[6] *To add*, here hinzuſetzen.

[7] Use the present conditional of wollen.

[8] *Entertain him with*, transl. ihm ein...vorſpielen.

[9] *Gladly*, here mit Freuden.

[10] The genitive relation being in German expressed with sufficient distinctness by means of the preposition von, *of*, the proper name itself need not be put in the genitive case.

[11] We use in German, in the above phrase, the preposition auf with the accusative.

[12] *To take* (an opportunity), ergreifen; *some private conversation*, eine Privatunterhaltung.

[13] *To engage*, here engagiren; *for —period*, auf längere Zeit; *to*, here bei.

[14] *Was*, transl. lautete. Cf. page 23, note 14.

[15] Turn *from month to month* simply by 'monthly;' *them*, here ſie

"*and come* and live[1] with me. I am a single man,[2] and think we shall be happy together; and doubtless your merit will soon entitle[3] you to a more eligible situation."

The offer was accepted as frankly[4] as it was made: and the reader may imagine[5] with what satisfaction[6] Dr. Miller must have remembered[7] this act of generous feeling when he hears that this young German was Herschel the astronomer.[8]—SOUTHEY, *The Doctor.*

XXVIII.

CRANFORD.

In the first place[9] Cranford is in possession of the[10] Amazons: all the holders[11] of houses above a certain rent

[1] When *to live* is synonymous with *to reside*, it is translated by wohnen; *with*, here bei.

[2] *Single man*, Junggeſell. Supply after *and* the first personal pronoun, and turn *think* by 'believe,' as in most cases when it stands for 'to conclude, imagine,' &c.

[3] *Entitle*, transl. verhelfen; *eligible situation*, paſſende Stelle.

[4] *Frankly*, freimüthig. Construe 'the offer was as frankly accepted as it was made.' When *as...as* is used to express an equality of two compared actions, we must translate it by ſo or eben ſo...als. When the equality refers to nouns, we generally use wie instead of als.

[5] Turn here *imagine* by the reflective form of 'to think.'

[6] *Satisfaction*, Befriedigung, *i.e.* gratification.

[7] *To remember*, ſich erinnern, governs the genitive; *act—feeling*, transl. großmüthige Handlung.

[8] Place *the astronomer* before *Herschel.* The celebrated astronomer, Wilhelm Herschel, was born at Hanover in 1738. His father, himself a musician, gave him instruction in music, and sent him over to this country to seek his fortune. The Earl of Darlington engaged him for the regimental band of the Durham militia, and afterwards Herschel settled in the neighbourhood of Leeds, Pontefract, and Durham as a teacher of music, devoting himself at the same time to that science which has made his name so illustrious.

[9] *In—place*, vor Allem.

[10] The above clause may serve to illustrate a characteristic difference in the use of the article in German and in English. The term *possession* requires the definite article, on account of the object being singled out definitely, whilst the expression *Amazons* does not require it, because the statement does not refer to them in a definite manner, but only in a general way, in which case the preposition von is quite sufficient.

[11] *Holders*, transl. Bewohner; *rent* (of houses, &c.), Miethe; Miethzins.

are women. If a married couple[1] come to settle in the town, somehow the gentleman[2] disappears: he is either fairly frightened to death[3] by being the only man in the Cranford evening parties,[4] or he is accounted for[5] by being with his regiment, his ship, or closely engaged in business[6] all the week in the great neighbouring commercial town[7] of Drumble, distant only twenty miles on a railroad.[8] In short,[9] whatever does become of the gentlemen, they are not at Cranford: what could they[10] do if they were there?

The surgeon[11] has his round of thirty miles,[12] and sleeps at Cranford; but every man cannot be *a* surgeon. For keeping[13] the trim gardens full of choice flowers, without a weed to speck them,[14] for frightening away[15] little boys who look wistfully at the said[16] flowers through the railings, for rushing out at[17] the geese that occasionally venture into the gardens if the gates are left open, for deciding all questions of literature and politics[18] without

[1] *Married couple*, Ehepaar; *come to settle*, briefly ſich niederlaßt.

[2] Translate the word *gentleman*, standing here for Ehemann, *husband*, simply by Mann. Further on it should be translated by Herr.

[3] *He — death*, entweder es überfällt ihn eine wahre Todesangſt; *by being* = because he is.

[4] *Evening parties* = evening-societies.

[5] *He—for*, transl. es heißt. The words *by being* must here be turned by 'that he is;' *with*, here bei.

[6] *Closely—business*, von Geſchäften ſehr ſtark in Anſpruch genommen; *all the* = the whole.

[7] *Commercial town*, Handelsſtatt.

[8] *Distant—railroad*, die nur zwanzig Meilen weit an der Eiſenbahn liegt.

[9] *In short*, kurz; *whatever*, was auch immer. The adverb auch is here an expletive. The emphatic *does* remains in German untranslated.

[10] Here, too, we should make use of the expletive auch.

[11] When the noun *surgeon* is used, as is the case here, in a *general* sense for a 'medical man,' it must be rendered simply by Arzt, and not by Wundarzt, which latter term corresponds to the word *surgeon* in its primary sense only, viz. 'one who cures by manual operation.' The more dignified expression for the latter signification is now in German Chirurg.

[12] The clause *his — miles* may be freely rendered by eine Praxis die ſich auf dreißig Meilen in die Runde erſtreckt.

[13] *To keep*, erhalten, to be used here with the *supine* preceded by um. *Trim*, zierlich; *of choice*, transl. der ſchönſten.

[14] Turn *without—them* by 'free from every weed.'

[15] *To frighten away*, verſcheuchen; *wistfully*, here ſehnſüchtig.

[16] *Said*, in the sense of 'beforementioned,' beſagt.

[17] *To rush out at*, losſtürzen auf, *venture*, here ſich wagen; *gate*, Thüre.

[18] Turn *of literature and politics* by 'literary and political,' employ-

troubling themselves with[1] unnecessary reasons or arguments, for obtaining clear[2] and correct knowledge of everybody's affairs in the parish, for keeping their neat maid-servants[3] in admirable order, for kindness (somewhat dictatorial) to the poor,[4] and real, tender, good offices to each other[5] whenever they are in distress,[6] the ladies of Cranford are quite sufficient.[7] "A man," as one of them observed to me once, "is *so* in the way[8] in the house!"

Although the ladies of Cranford know all each other's proceedings,[9] they are exceedingly indifferent to each other's[10] opinions. Indeed, as each has her own individuality, not to say eccentricity,[11] pretty strongly developed, nothing is so easy[12] as verbal retaliation; but somehow[13] good-will reigns among them to a considerable degree. The Cranford ladies have only an occasional[14] little quarrel, spirted out[15] in a few peppery words and angry jerks of the head; just enough to prevent the even tenor[16] of their lives from becoming too flat.[17] Their dress[18] is very

ing these terms as attributive adjectives to *questions*.

[1] *To trouble oneself with*, here sich bekümmern um; *reason*, Grund; *argument*, Beweis.

[2] *Clear*, here genau; *affair*, Angelegenheit.

[3] *Maid-servant*, Dienstmädchen; *admirable*, transl. musterhaft.

[4] The clause *for—poor* must be rendered somewhat freely, viz. um den Armen (wenn auch auf etwas dictatorische Weise) Gutes zu thun.

[5] *Real—other*, um sich gegenseitig wahrhaft freundschaftliche Dienste zu leisten.

[6] *Distress*, Noth.

[7] *To be sufficient*, ausreichen, which verb is to be preceded here by the expletive dazu. *To observe* (*to*), bemerken (gegen).

[8] *Is—way*, ist einem...so sehr im Wege. The adverb *so* has been italicised by the author, and not by the editor: it has therefore been translated.

[9] *All—proceedings*, sämmtlich ihr gegenseitiges Thun und Lassen.

[10] *To each other's*, gegen ihre gegenseitigen.

[11] Turn *as—eccentricity* by 'since the individuality, not to say eccentricity, of each (einer Jeden) is.' The corresponding foreign forms of *individuality* and *eccentricity* may be retained in German.

[12] Render *so easy* by ihnen nichts leichter, and *as verbal retaliation* by als mündliche Repressalien (reprisals) zu nehmen.

[13] *But somehow*, transl. dennoch fügt es sich so; *good-will*, Wohlwollen: *to a considerable* = in a high.

[14] *Occasional*, gelegentlich.

[15] *Spirted out*, transl. der sich... Luft macht; *peppery* = sharp; *jerks of the head*, Kopfbewegungen.

[16] *Even tenor*, ruhige Gang. For the expression *lives* compare Extract 25, note *c*.

[17] Turn *from—flat* by 'that...becomes too flat' (schal).

[18] When the term *dress* stands, as is the case here, for 'clothing in general,' we render it by Kleidung, somewhat corresponding to the

independent of fashion, as they observe, "What does it signify[1] how we dress[2] here at Cranford, where everybody knows us?" And if they go from home,[3] their reason is equally cogent: "What does it signify how we dress here, where nobody knows us?"—MRS. GASKELL, *Cranford.*

XXIX.

BEFORE THE BATTLE OF[4] KÖNIGGRÄTZ.

Long before midnight the troops were all in motion, and at half-past one in the morning[5] the general staff[6] left Kamenitz. The moon occasionally[7] shone *out* brightly, but was generally hidden behind clouds, and then could be distinctly seen[8] the decaying[9] bivouac fires in the places which had been occupied[10] by the troops along the road.

These fires looked like large will-o'-the-wisps as[11] their flames flickered about[12] in the wind, and stretched for many a mile,[13] for there were 100,000 soldiers with the

French *habillement;* but when it signifies a single garment, it is to be rendered by Kleid.

[1] *Does it signify,* liegt daran.

[2] *To dress,* ſich kleiden. In German the reflective form occurs far more frequently than in English, there being but few German verbs which can be used both in a transitive and intransitive sense.

[3] *Go from home,* verreiſen; *cogent,* triftig.

[4] See page 49, note 1.

[5] Use for the adverbial expression *in the morning* the genitive des Morgens, which case is generally used, with or without the article, when the point of time is indicated in an indefinite manner.

[6] *General staff,* Generalſtab.

[7] The idiomatic rendering for *occasionally* is here dann und wann.

[8] The agent from whom the activity proceeds not being expressed, we should not employ here the passive voice in German; but since the reflective form, requisite in similar cases, would not be appplicable in the present instance, the active voice, with the indefinite pronoun man, ought to be used.

[9] *Decaying,* here erliſchend. *Bivouac fires* is in German a compound term.

[10] *To occupy* (used as a military expression), beziehen.

[11] *As,* da. Turn *their* by 'the.'

[12] *To flicker about,* hin und her flackern.

[13] *For many a mile,* transl. meilenweit. Turn *soldiers* by 'men,' and see n. *d* to Extr. 32: *with,* here bei

First Army alone, and the bivouacs of so great a force[1] spread over a wide extent of country. Day gradually *began* to break,[2] but with the first symptoms[3] of dawn a drizzling rain came on, which lasted[4] until late in the afternoon. The wind increased and blew coldly upon the soldiers,[5] for they were short of both sleep and food,[6] while frequent gusts[7] bore down to the ground the water-laden corn in the wide fields alongside[8] the way.

The main road[9] from Horitz to Königgrätz sinks into a deep hollow near the village of Milowitz. On the side of this hollow furthest from[10] Horitz is placed near the road the village of that name,[11] and on the left of the road, on the same bank, stands a thick fir-wood. A little after[12] midnight the army of Prince[13] Frederick Charles was entirely concealed in this hollow, ready to issue[14] from its ambush and attack the Austrians if they should advance.

Soon after dawn a[15] person standing between the village of Milowitz and the further hill of Dub could see no

[1] *Force* will here best be rendered by Truppenmaſſe; *to spread*, ſich ausbreiten; *extent of country*, Landſtrecken (pl.).

[2] *To break* (referring to day), anbrechen. Use the imperfect.

[3] *Symptoms*, Zeichen; *drizzling rain*, feiner Regen or Nebelregen; *came on* = began.

[4] *To last*, here anhalten; *in the*, am.

[5] The phrase *blew coldly upon the soldiers* must in German be rather freely rendered by und die Soldaten fühlten ſeine Schärfe, in order to express distinctly that the soldiers felt the wind the more keenly in consequence of want of sleep and food.

[6] The clause *they—food* may be turned by 'they had had neither enough sleep nor food' (Nahrung).

[7] *Gust*, Windſtoß; *to bear down to the ground*, briefly zu Boden werfen.

[8] *Alongside*, längs.

[9] *Main road*, Hauptſtraße; *to sink*, here ſich ſenken; *hollow*, Hohlweg.

[10] *Furthest from*, die von ... am weiteſten entfernt liegt; *is placed*, befindet ſich.

[11] Render *of that name* by genannte, placing it before *village*. *Stands* = is; *thick*, here dicht.

[12] Translate *a little* in the above phrase by bald.

[13] The German language has two expressions for the word *prince*, viz. Prinz and Fürſt. The former title, to be used here, is given to descendants of sovereign princes as long as they do not exercise any sovereign power; and the latter, in a general sense, to all sovereign rulers, as kings, emperors, dukes, &c., and, in a more limited sense, to rulers of principalities, and to those who have been raised to the titular dignity of prince.

[14] *To issue*, hervorbrechen.

[15] See next page, note 1.

armed men[1] except a few Prussian vedettes[2] posted along the Dub ridge,[3] whose lances stood in relief[4] above the summit against the murky sky. A few dismounted[5] officers were standing below a fruit-tree in front of Milowitz, with their horses held by some orderlies behind them.[6] These were Prince Frederick Charles and his staff. All was still except when[7] the neigh of a horse or a loud word of command,[8] as the last division formed, rose mysteriously from the hollow of Milowitz.

Until nearly four o'clock the army remained concealed. * * * To hold the Austrian army in front[9] of the Elbe was absolutely necessary for the success of the Prussian plans,[10] and Prince Frederick Charles resolved with his own army alone[11] to engage the whole of Benedek's forces,[12] and, clinging to[13] the Austrian commander,

[1] *A—men.* The whole of the above clause must be given in German, where we should use the conditional, in a different form; arrange therefore: 'would a person (hätte Jemand), who between the village of Milowitz and the further hill of Dub (entferntern Dubhügel);' and insert here the verb 'stood' (geſtanden) for *standing*, and *could see* (ſehen können) after *men* (Mannſchaft). On the omission of the aux. verb after geſtanden, cf. Ext. 47, n. *c.*

[2] We use also in German the foreign military expressions Vedette for 'a sentinel on horseback,' and poſtirt for *posted*.

[3] *Dub ridge*, Rücken des Dubhügels.

[4] *Stood in relief*, ſtark abſtachen; *murky*, trüb.

[5] The adjective *dismounted* must in German be turned into a regular clause with a finite verb, viz. die von ihren Pferden abgeſtiegen waren. We also use the foreign military expression demontiren, but more in its transitive meaning, *i.e.* 'to unhorse soldiers,' or 'to disable cannon.'

[6] Turn *with—them* by 'whilst some orderlies (Ordonanzen) held their horses behind them.'

[7] See page 41, note 9.

[8] *Word of command*, Commandowort; *as*, während; *to form*, ſich aufſtellen; *rose*, here herausſcholl.

[9] *In front*, transl. diesſeits.

[10] The German version of the above clause can be made more emphatic by employing the grammatical subject es, which, besides with impersonal verbs—as es regnet, &c.—is used for the sake of emphasis, or to impart more poetic colouring to a construction,—as es heult der Sturm, es brauſt das Meer. The real subject follows in such a case the inflected verb, and sometimes even other far less important parts of the sentence. Turn, therefore, the above clause by 'it was for the success of the Prussian plans absolutely (durchaus) necessary to hold,' &c.

[11] The adverb *alone*, bloß, has in the above clause the emphasis: place it, therefore, at the beginning of the clause, viz. *alone with*, &c. *To engage* = to attack.

[12] *The whole of...forces*, die Geſammtmacht.

[13] *To cling* (*to*), ſich klammern (an). The preposition an governs here the accusative case.

to hold[1] him on the Bistritz until the Prussian flank attacks[2] could be developed. A few short words passed[3] from the commander of the First Army to the chief of his staff; a few aides-de-camp, mounting[4] silently, rode quietly away; and, as it were by the utterance of a magician's spell,[5] *one* hundred thousand Prussian warriors springing into sight, as if from the bowels[6] of the armed earth, swept[7] over the southern edge[8] of the Milowitz ravine towards the hill of Dub. — H. M. Hozier, *The Seven Weeks' War.*

XXX.

A DISPUTED[9] BOUNDARY.

A peculiar[10] interest attaches itself at the present time to[11] everything which throws light upon the debated question of[12] the boundary between the two kingdoms;[13] a question which is not less keenly debated[14] among naturalists than that of many a disputed frontier *has been* between adjacent nations.

1 *To hold,* here festhalten or beschäftigen. *Bistritz* is in German feminine, most names of rivers belonging to the feminine gender.

2 *Flank attacks,* Flankenangriffe; *be developed,* sich entfalten.

3 *Passed,* transl. wurden...an...gerichtet; *chief of his staff,* Chef seines Generalstabs.

4 *Mounting,* bestiegen...ihre Pferde.

5 *As—spell,* wie auf den Ausspruch eines Zauberwortes; after which clause ought to be placed the words *springing into sight,* to be turned by 'appeared suddenly.'

6 *As—bowels,* gleichsam aus dem Schoße.

7 Transl. *swept* by strömten, connecting it with the preceding clause by means of the conjunction 'and.'

8 *Edge,* here Abhang; *towards — Dub,* dem Dubhügel zu.

9 *Disputed,* streitig.

10 *Peculiar,* here besonderes.

11 *Attaches — to,* knüpft sich jetzt (or gegenwärtig) an.

12 *Debated question of,* Streitfrage in Bezug auf.

13 *Kingdoms,* transl. Naturreiche, the expression referring here to the animal and vegetable kingdoms.

14 *Which—debated,* über die...nicht minder lebhaft gestritten wird. *That of* must, in accordance with the translation given of the preceding clause, be rendered by über; *disputed,* streitig gemacht; *adjacent* = neighbouring. The auxiliary verb *has been* need not be expressed in the German translation. If it were retained, it would be necessary to supply the verb gestritten, which would make the sentence much too long.

For many parts of this border-country[1] have been taken and retaken several times; their inhabitants, so to speak,[2] having[3] first been considered on account of their general[4] appearance to belong to the[5] vegetable kingdom; then in consequence of some movements being observed in[6] them being[7] claimed by the zoologists; then, on *the* ground of their evidently plant-like[8] mode of growth, being transferred back[9] to the botanical side; then, owing to the supposed[10] detection of some new feature in their structure or[11] physiology, being again claimed as members of the animal kingdom; and lastly,[12] on the discovery of a fallacy in these arguments, being once more turned over[13] to the botanist, with[14] whom for the most part they remain. For the attention which has been given[15] of late years to the study of the humblest[16] forms of vegetation has led to the knowledge among[17] what must be 'un-

[1] *Border-country*, Grenzland; transl. here *taken* by erobert, and *retaken* by zurückerobert. See page 89, note 8.

[2] Turn here *speak* 'say.'

[3] Compare Int. p. xvi., *c*. The frequent occurrence of the present participle in the above extract will afford the student an excellent opportunity for practice in the construction so commonly occurring in English, and so very rarely in German.

[4] Render *general* by im Allgemeinen, to be placed after the term *appearance* (Äußeren).

[5] *To belong to the*, als zum...gehörig; *vegetable kingdom*, Pflanzenreich.

[6] *To observe in*, wahrnehmen an. Turn *being observed* by 'which one observed.'

[7] The present participle *being*, referring to *claimed* (reclamirt), should be turned by a finite verb, viz. wurden sie, and inserted after *then*.

[8] The term *like*, joined to another expression and employed in its compound form as an attributive adjective, is frequently rendered by mäßig or artig. The latter expression added to the plural of *plant* ought to be used here. *Mode of growth*, Wachsthum.

[9] *To transfer back*, zurückbringen. The present participle *being* may be omitted in the translation, both in this clause and the next.

[10] *Owing—supposed*, in Folge der vermeintlichen; *feature*, Umstand, *i.e.* circumstance.

[11] The possessive pronoun must here be repeated on account of the difference of the gender of the nouns *structure*, Bau; and *physiology*, Physiologie.

[12] *Lastly*, schließlich. The following present part. (*being*) should here be inserted according to note 7, above. *On*, bei; *fallacy*, Trugschluß.

[13] *To turn over*, überliefern.

[14] Translate *with* by the preposition bei, and *for the most part* by größtentheils.

[15] Render *has been given* by man ...schenkte, and *of late* by in letzteren.

[16] *Humblest*, here untersten. The expression *forms of vegetation* may be translated by the compound term Pflanzenformen, *i.e.* 'forms of plants.'

[17] For the rendering of the whole clause from *has* to *phenomena* see next page, note 1.

doubtedly' regarded as plants of so many phenomena[1] which would formerly have been considered[2] unquestionable marks[3] of animality, that the discovery of the like phenomena among[4] the doubtful beings in question,[5] so far from being evidence[6] of THEIR animality, really affords[7] a probability of the opposite kind.—DR. W. B. CARPENTER, *The Microscope and its Revelations.*

XXXI.

THOMAS CARLYLE TO GOETHE.*

Craigenputtoch, Sept. 25, 1828.

You inquire[8] with such warm interest[9] respecting our present abode and occupations that I am obliged to say a few words[10] about both while there is still room left.[11]

[1] Translate the clause *has—phenomena* by hat bei dem was unzweifelhaft als Pflanze angesehen werden muß, zur Erkenntniß so vieler Phänomene geführt.

[2] See page 85, note 2.

[3] *Mark*, here Merkmal; *animality*, Animalismus.

[4] *Of—among*, transl. ganz ähnlicher Phänomene bei.

[5] Translate *in question* by betreffend, placing it as an attributive adjective before *doubtful; so far from*, weit entfernt.

[6] *Being evidence*, zu beweisen. The word *animality* being used after this verb in the accusative case, the preposition *of* must, as a matter of course, be omitted in the translation.

[7] *Affords*, here darthut; *of—kind*, des Gegentheils. Compare with the above passage, Ext. 27.

[8] *To inquire... respecting*, forschen...nach.

[9] *Interest*, here Theilnahme; *occupation*, Beschäftigung, to be used here in the singular only.

[10] When the expression *words* denotes 'single, unconnected terms,' it is translated by Wörter, and when it stands for 'connected terms, having a coherent meaning,' as is the case here, by Worte.

[11] *While—left*, da noch Raum dazu übrig bleibt.

* Goethe took such a lively interest in Carlyle, on account of his being one of the first to make his British countrymen acquainted with modern German literature, that the veteran poet wrote a preface to the German edition of his "Life of Schiller," inserting at the same time a translation—of which some use has been made in the notes—of the above letter, chiefly, as it would seem, in explanation of a woodcut, representing the writer's secluded residence in Scotland, which was added to the German edition.

Dumfries is a pleasant town, containing[1] about 15,000 inhabitants, and is to be considered[2] the centre of the trade and judicial system[3] of a district which possesses some importance in the sphere of Scottish activity.[4] Our residence[5] is not in the town itself, but fifteen miles to the north-west,[6] among the granite hills and the black morasses which stretch[7] westward through Galloway almost to the Irish Sea. In this wilderness of heath and rock our estate[8] stands forth a green oasis, a tract of[9] ploughed, partly enclosed,[10] and planted[11] ground, where corn ripens and trees afford[12] a shade, although surrounded by sea-mews and rough-woolled[13] sheep. Here, with no small[14] effort, have we[15] built and furnished[16] a neat, substantial dwelling; here,[17] in the absence of

[1] This present participle might here be rendered according to rule *b*, Int. page xvi.

[2] *To consider*, here ansehen, to be followed by als, as is the case with betrachten, to consider, and darstellen, to represent, when used in the signification pointed out page 36, note 4. These verbs require the accusative; but this case is changed into the nominative in passive constructions and after the supine. See page 45, note 20.

[3] *Judicial system*, Gerichtsbarkeit.

[4] *Activity*, here Betriebsamkeit.

[5] When the expression *residence* refers to the private dwelling of an individual, it is rendered by Wohnort, Wohnsitz, or Wohnung; but when signifying the capital of a ruling sovereign, it is in German Residenz or Residenzstadt.

[6] *North-west*, nordwestlich, which is to be followed by davon entfernt, as an equivalent for the words *to the*. *Granite hills* forms in German a compound expression.

[7] *To stretch*, here sich ziehen.

[8] Render here *estate* by Besitzthum, and *stands forth* by bildet.

[9] *Tract of ... ground*, Strecke ... Landes, stands here in apposition to *oasis*, and should, therefore, be used in the accusative, in accordance with the rule that the apposition always agrees with the term which it qualifies in number and case: the apposition agrees also in gender when the qualifying expression is the name of a person, the gender of which is distinctly marked.

[10] *Enclosed*, here umzäunt, compounded from the noun Zaun, *hedge*, and the preposition um, *round*.

[11] Use here the past participle of bebauen as an attributive adjective.

[12] *To afford*, gewähren, forms here with Schatten a kind of compound verbal expression, thus making the indefinite article superfluous.

[13] *Rough-woolled*, hartwollig.

[14] The epithet *small*, referring to *effort*, is to be rendered by gering.

[15] It is an idiomatic peculiarity of the German language to point out distinctly the subject to the advantage of which an action has been done, by means of the dative of the personal pronoun. Supply here, therefore, the dative uns.

[16] *To furnish* (a house, &c.), einrichten. The expression *substantial* may here be rendered by dauerhaft, or still better by solid.

[17] The words *we live* are to be inserted here.

professional or other office,[1] we live to cultivate[2] literature according to our[3] strength, and in our peculiar way. We wish *a* joyful growth[4] to the rose and flowers of our garden; we hope *for* health and peaceful thoughts[5] to further our aims. The roses, indeed, are still in part[6] to be planted, but they blossom already in anticipation.[7]

Two ponies,[8] which carry[9] us everywhere, and the mountain air,[10] are the best medicines[11] for weak[12] nerves. This daily exercise, to which I am much devoted,[13] is my only recreation; for this nook *of ours* is the loneliest in Britain—six miles removed from any one likely to visit me.[14] * * *

I came hither solely with the design[15] to simplify my way of life,[16] and to secure the independence through which I could be enabled[17] to remain true to myself. This bit[18] *of* earth is our own: here we can live, write, and think,

[1] The above clause, *in—office*, must in German be rendered freely by in Ermanglung irgend eines Berufs oder Amtes, where we take the expression Beruf in the sense of 'professional occupation,' and not in that of 'vocation.'

[2] *To cultivate* (a science, &c.), ſich befleißigen, or ſich befleißen, which belongs to that class of reflective verbs which govern the genitive of the thing, having the reflective pronoun in the accusative.

[3] *According to our*, transl. nach eigenen, and use in German the plural of Kraft for *strength*.

[4] *Joyful growth*, fröhliches Gedeihen.

[5] *Peaceful thoughts*, friedliche Gemüthsſtimmung; *aim*, Streben, to be used in the singular only.

[6] *Still in part*, zum Theil noch.

[7] Turn *anticipation* by 'hope.'

[8] Goethe renders *ponies* by leichte Pferde, but we use now the word Ponies also in German.

[9] The primary sense of *to carry* is in German simply tragen: here, however, we ought also to express the direction of the action. Add therefore the pronominal adverb hin.

[10] The words *mountain air* form in German a compound term.

[11] *Medicine*, Arznei. We use in German also the word Arzt, physician, figuratively in the sense in which *medicine* is employed here.

[12] Translate here *weak* by zart, and *exercise* by Bewegung.

[13] *Devoted*, here ergeben; *recreation*, Zerſtreuung.

[14] *Removed — me*, von einer jeden Perſon entfernt, die mich allenfalls beſuchen möchte.

[15] *With the design*, zu dem Zwecke.

[16] *Way of life*, Lebensweiſe. Translate here *to secure* by erwerben, and *the* by the demonstrative pronoun jene.

[17] The clause *through—enabled* might be rendered with literal fidelity by durch die ich in den Stand geſetzt werden könnte, or, far more briefly, die es mir möglich machte. *True*, in the above sense, treu.

[18] *Bit*, here Stück. The words *our own* may be simply turned by the possessive pronoun 'ours.'

as best[1] pleases ourselves, even though[2] Zoilus himself were to be[3] crowned the monarch[4] of literature.

Nor is the solitude of such great importance;[5] for a stage-coach takes us speedily to Edinburgh, which we look upon as our British Weimar. And[6] have I not, too, at this moment piled up[7] upon the table of my little library a whole cart-load of[8] French, German, American, and English journals[9] and periodicals — whatever may be their worth. Of antiquarian studies, too, there is no lack.[10] From some of our heights I can descry, about a day's journey[11] to the west, the hill where Agricola[12] and his Romans left a camp behind *them*. At the foot of it[13] I was born, and there *both* father and mother still live to love me.

[1] The relative superlative (or superlative of comparison) of adverbs is formed by prefixing am = *at the*, and adding en to the simple form of the superlative: *e.g. He runs quickest of all*, er läuft am ſchnellſten von Allen.

[2] *Even though*, transl. und wenn. *Zoilus* lived in the time of Philip of Macedon. He was celebrated for his carping criticisms, and his name has become proverbial for a cynical, malignant critic.

[3] *Were to be*, werden ſollte.

[4] Render here *monarch* by König, and see page 36, note 4.

[5] *Of — importance*, transl. ſo bedeutend; *takes* = brings; *to look upon*, anſehen.

[6] The conjunction *and* may be omitted in translating the above exclamation, which can be made more expressive in German by means of the expletive denn, to be inserted between *I* and *not*.

[7] *To pile up*, aufhäufen; *cart-load*, Ladung.

[8] The preposition *of* is here to be rendered by von, as is frequently the case with *partitive genitives*, viz. when an entire number or quantity, from which a part is taken, occurs in the genitive case.

[9] *Journal*, Journal, pronounced as in French; *periodical*, Zeitſchrift.

[10] *There is no lack*, fehlt es nicht. The objective relation of verbs expressing *want* requires the preposition an with the dative.

[11] Form here the compound term 'day's-journey.' *To the west* = westward.

[12] The Roman Consul Cn. Julius Agricola was governor of Britain from 78 to 85 A.D.

[13] Turn *of it* by 'of the same.'

XXXII.

A STURDY SQUIRE.[1]

King David[2] was taken prisoner on his homeward[3] retreat, but not without making[4] the most gallant[5] resistance. When the Queen of England heard that her army had[6] gained the victory, she mounted on[7] her white charger,[7] and went to the battle-field. She was informed on the way[8] that the King of Scots was[9] the prisoner of a squire[10] named John Copeland, who had rode off[11] with him, no one knew whither. The Queen ordered[12] him to be sought out, and told[13] that he had done what was not agreeable to her in carrying off[14] her prisoner without leave. Next[15] day Philippa wrote with her own hand[16]

[1] *A sturdy squire*, transl. ein trotziger Vasall.

[2] The above extract refers to an incident which occurred in 1346, after the battle at Nevil's Cross, which was fought between the brave Philippa of Hainault (Hennegau), Queen of Edward III., and David Bruce, King of Scotland.

[3] *Homeward*, transl. in die Heimath, to be placed after *retreat*.

[4] In participial constructions like the above we frequently depart in German from the rule requiring the supine by translating *without* by ohne daß, and employing a regular sentence with a finite verb in the conditional mood. The sense of the passage will show which tense is to be used. In the present case the verb *to make*, here leisten, is to be employed in the perfect conditional.

[5] *Gallant*, here tapfer.

[6] Compare Ext. 47, note *e*.

[7] *Mounted on*, bestieg sie; *charger*, Schlachtroß. Use for *went* the imperfect of sich begeben; *to*, here auf.

[8] Turn *She—way* by 'on the way was communicated to her.'

[9] See page 29, note 3.

[10] Render here *squire* by Edelmann, and turn *named* by the genitive singular of Name.

[11] *To ride off*, davonreiten. The assertions *had rode off* and *no one knew* are included in the indirect quotations.

[12] *To order*, here den Befehl geben, which is a more dignified expression than befehlen. Use the two following verbs in the supine of the active voice.

[13] The verb sagen governing the dative of the person, we must supply here the pronoun ihm before *told*.

[14] *To carry off*, wegführen. Construe 'whilst (indem) he...carried off.'

[15] The point of time of the predicated action may in German also be expressed by the preposition an with the dative. The definite article should here be used, whether the accusative or an with the dative be employed; but if the preference be given to the latter, the adjective *next* might be rendered here for euphony's sake by folgend.

[16] The phrase *with her* (*his*, &c.)

to John Copeland, commanding him to surrender[1] the King of Scots to her. John answered in a manner most contumacious[2] to the female Majesty[3] then swaying the sceptre[4] of England with so much ability and glory.

He replied to Philippa that he would not give up[5] his royal prisoner to[6] woman or child, but only to his *own* lord[7] King Edward, for[8] to him he had sworn allegiance,[9] and not to any woman.

Philippa wrote immediately to the King her husband,[10] relating[11] all that had occurred.

When the King had read the Queen's letter, he ordered John Copeland to come to him at Calais, who, having placed[12] his prisoner in a strong[13] castle in Northumberland, set out and landed near[14] Calais.

When the King of England saw the squire, he took him by the hand, saying, "Ha! welcome, my squire,[15] who[16]

own hand is, more briefly than in most other languages, expressed in German by the single term eigenhändig, which students of Greek will be able to compare with the compound αὐτόχειρ.

[1] *To surrender*, ausliefern. The verb befehlen always requires the supine, since the verb to which it refers expresses the object of the sentence.

[2] The phrase *in a manner most contumacious* may be turned in German by 'in a most contumacious (trotzige) manner,' or rendered briefly and forcibly by the adverbial expression äußerſt trotzig.

[3] The epithet *female* would, in German, not be applicable here, since it would not be considered, as is the case in English, as forming with the noun *majesty* one expression, equivalent to 'Queen,' but merely as an attribute qualifying the noun *majesty*. We may employ, however, the expression königliche Frau as an elegant equivalent for *female Majesty*.

[4] *To sway the sceptre*, den Zepter führen. See note to Ext. 23, and use the verb in the imperfect.

[5] *To give up* = to surrender.

[6] *To...or*, say: weder einer...noch einem.

[7] Translate here *lord* by Herrn and connect it with *King* by the conjunction 'and.'

[8] *For* used as a conjunction—in which case it is synonymous with 'because'—is rendered by denn, but when occurring as a preposition—corresponding to the French *pour*—it is generally translated by für. The expletive nur may here be inserted after *for*.

[9] *To swear allegiance*, den Lehenseid leiſten. Turn *any* by 'a.'

[10] Render the phrase *to—husband* by the attributive expression ihrem königlichen Gemahl.

[11] Render *relating* by theilte ihm mit, connecting this clause with the preceding one by the conj. 'and.'

[12] *To place*, here unterbringen. Use the pluperfect with the conjunction nachdem.

[13] *Strong*, here feſt.

[14] *Near*, transl. unweit or in der Nähe von.

[15] Translate here *squire* as given in page 88, note 1.

[16] See page 68, note 10.

by thy valour hast captured[1] mine adversary, the King of Scots!" John Copeland fell[2] on one knee, and replied, "If God out of[3] His great kindness has given[4] me the King of Scotland, and permitted[5] me to conquer him in arms, no one ought[6] to be jealous[7] of it; for God can, if He pleases,[8] send His grace to a poor squire as well[9] as to a great lord. Sire, do not take it amiss[10] if I did not surrender King David to the orders[11] of my *lady* Queen, for I hold my lands[12] of you, and not of her, and my oath is to you,[13] and not to her—unless, indeed, through choice."[14]

King Edward answered, "John, the loyal[15] service you have done[16] us and our esteem for your valour is[17] so great, that it[18] may well serve you as[19] an excuse; and shame fall on[20] those who bear you any ill-will![21] You will now return home, and take[22] your prisoner, the King of Scotland, *and* convey *him* to my wife;[23] and by way

[1] *To capture*, gefangen nehmen.

[2] *Fell*, transl. ließ sich...nieder.

[3] Turn *out of* by 'in;' *kindness*, here Gnade.

[4] *Given*, transl. überliefert.

[5] *To permit*, gestatten; *in arms*, transl. die Waffen in der Hand.

[6] See the note to Ext. 7.

[7] *Jealous* requires in German the preposition auf.

[8] *If He pleases*, wenn es ihm so gefällt. The verb *send* may here be rendered by angedeihen lassen.

[9] Place in German the adverbial expression *as well* before *to a poor*, &c.; *great lord*, vornehmer Herr.

[10] The usual rendering for *to take amiss*, viz. übel nehmen, would not be in keeping with the elevated tone of the above speech: transl. the phrase *do—if* by zürnet mir nicht darob, daß.

[11] *To the orders*, auf Befehl.

[12] *I—lands*, ich trage meine Güter zu Lehen. The pronoun *you* should be rendered here by the second person plural, which pronoun was used from about the beginning of the thirteenth to about the middle of the seventeenth century in addressing persons of rank.

[13] *Is to you*, transl. Euch habe ich ...geleistet.

[14] Turn *unless—choice* by 'it be then out of (aus) free choice.'

[15] Retain this identical expression also in German.

[16] *To do* (a service), leisten.

[17] Use here the plural, since the verb refers to two subjects, viz. *service* and *esteem*.

[18] Render here *it* by dies, the abbreviated form of dieses, which is used indefinitely, without regard to the gender or number of the persons or things spoken of.

[19] Render *as* in the above phrase by als, without any article, or by the preposition zu contracted with the definite article.

[20] *Fall on*, transl. treffe.

[21] *To bear any one ill-will*, Jemand übel wollen.

[22] Suppress the verb *take* in the translation, supplying its place by the subsequent verb *convey* (überliefern).

[23] *Wife*, here Gemahlin.

of[1] remuneration I assign[2] lands as near your house as you can choose them to the amount[3] of £500 a year for you and your heirs.—AGNES STRICKLAND, *Lives of the Queens of England.*

XXXIII.

THE HISTORY OF SCIENCES.

There is[4] a certain uniformity[5] in the history of most[6] sciences. If we read *such* works as[7] Whewell's "History of the Inductive[8] Sciences" or Humboldt's "Kosmos," we[9] find that the origin, the progress,[10] the causes of failure[11] and success, have been the same for almost[12] every branch of human knowledge. There are[13] three marked periods, or stages,[14] in the history of every one of them,[15] which we may call the 'empirical,' the 'classificatory,' and the 'theo-

[1] *By way of*, say briefly als.

[2] *To assign*, here anweiſen; *lands*, Ländereien. The clause *for—heirs* ought to be placed in German after *to assign*, and *for you* rendered by the dative.

[3] *To the amount*, zu dem Werthe.

[4] Render here *is* by herrſcht, *i.e.* reigns.

[5] *Uniformity*, Gleichförmigkeit, which must be distinguished from Einförmigkeit; the latter expression indicating 'monotony,' or 'tedious sameness in all details.'

[6] The superlative *most* requires in German, contrary to the usage in English, the definite article.

[7] Render here *as* by wie.

[8] We use also in German the neo-Latin expression inductiv, derived from the verb *inducere*.

[9] See the note to Ext. 7.

[10] The article must be repeated in German before all substantives, although they are of the same gender, whenever they are placed side by side in a kind of antithetical order. That it must be repeated here in German before *causes* is, besides, a matter of course, since it is not used in the same number as the preceding substantives.

[11] Translate here *failure* by Mißlingen, and *success* by Gelingen. The antithesis would greatly lose in force by rendering the latter expression by Erfolg.

[12] Place *almost* before the preposition *for*, and *the same* after *knowledge* (Wiſſen).

[13] See page 25, note 7. *Marked*, transl. beſtimmt.

[14] For the expression *stage*, denoting a 'degree of progression in any change of state,' we use the Latin word Stadium, from the Greek στάδιον, denoting fixedness, firmness, and also a fixed standard of length (about 600 ft.), and figuratively a race-course. Neuter nouns having the Latin termination ium take in German ien *n* the plural.

[15] Render *of them* by the genitive plural of derſelbe.

retical.'[1] However[2] humiliating it may sound,[3] every one of our sciences, however grand[4] their present titles, can be traced back to the[5] most humble and homely[6] occupations of half-savage tribes.

It was not the true,[7] the good, and the beautiful which spurred[8] the early philosophers to deep researches and bold discoveries. The foundation-stone of[9] the most glorious structures of human ingenuity in ages to come[10] was supplied[11] by the pressing wants of a patriarchal and semi-barbarous society.

The names of some of the most ancient departments[12] of human knowledge tell their own tale. Geometry,[13] which at present declares itself free[14] from all sensuous impressions, and treats of its points and lines and planes as[15] purely

[1] The above terms are also used in German; viz. *empirical*, empiriſch, *classificatory*, claſſificirend, and *theoretical*, theoretiſch.

[2] *However*, ſo...auch. The verb *may* in the preceding sentence is synonymous with 'can,' whilst here it corresponds to the German mögen.

[3] *To sound*, klingen. The other usual equivalents of *to sound*, as ſchallen, hallen, tönen, would not be applicable here.

[4] *However grand*, wie großartig auch; *titles* = names.

[5] The whole of the above sentence might be rendered, almost literally, with grammatical correctness; but we should obtain a far more elegant version by turning it by 'the trace of all (ſämmtlicher) sciences, however grand their present names, can, however humiliating it may sound, be followed back (verfolgt) to the,' &c.

[6] When two or more adjectives, placed side by side, occur in the comparative or superlative degree, the respective termination must be added to each of them.

[7] Abstract substantives, or such as denote things, formed from adjectives, take in German the neuter gender. For the construction *it was... which* see page 34. note 13.

[8] *To spur* (*to*), anſpornen (zu); Turn here *early* by 'the oldest.'

[9] In phrases like the above we use in German the preposition zu with the dative, instead of the preposition *of*.

[10] The clause *the—come* must be rendered somewhat freely, since the expression *in ages to come* makes it here necessary to supply in German a verb distinctly expressing 'the *future* glorious development of the structures of human ingenuity.' Translate therefore, den glorreichſten Gebäuten des menſchlichen Geiſtes, die für alle künftige Zeiten daſtehen ſollen.

[11] *To supply*, liefern; *by*, von; *want*, here Bedürfniß.

[12] *Department* (referring to sciences, &c.), Fach; *tell their own tale*, ſprechen für ſich ſelbſt, *i.e.* speak for themselves.

[13] Use the definite article.

[14] Adjectives referring to the verb erklären (or to halten, annehmen, &c.) must be preceded by the preposition für. Cf. page 36, note 4.

[15] The preposition von must here be repeated. Translate *purely* by

ideal conceptions, not[1] to be confounded with the coarse and imperfect representations,[2] as they appear on paper to the human eye,—geometry, as its very name declares,[3] began with measuring a garden or a field. It is derived[4] from the Greek 'gē,' land, ground, earth, and 'metron,' measure. Botany, the science of plants, was originally the science of 'botanē,' which in Greek[5] does not mean[6] a plant in general, but fodder, from 'boskein,' to feed. The science of plants would have been called 'phytology,' from the Greek 'phyton,' a plant.

The founders[7] of astronomy were not the poet or the philosopher, but the sailor and the farmer.[8] The early[9] poet may have admired the "mazy[10] dance of planets," and the philosopher may have speculated[11] on the heavenly harmonies;[12] but *it was* to[13] the sailor alone *that* a knowledge of the glittering guides of[14] heaven became a question of life and death.[15] It was he who calculated their risings and settings[16] with the accuracy of a merchant and the shrewdness of an adventurer; and the names that were given to single stars or constellations clearly[17] show that they were invented by the ploughers of the sea and of the land. The moon, for instance, the golden hand[18] on the

rein, and *ideal* by ideal. *Conception*, here Begriff.

[1] Cf. the note to Ext. 23, and page 45, note 20. *To confound*, here verwechseln.

[2] Transl. here *representations* by Figuren, and use the definite article before *paper*.

[3] *As—declares*, wie der Name ſchon bezeugt; *with measuring a*, mit dem Ausmeſſen eines.

[4] *It is derived*, derſelbe ſtammt her. Retain the Greek terms, given in inverted commas, also in German.

[5] *In Greek*, im Griechiſchen.

[6] *To mean*, here bedeuten.

[7] *Founder*, here Begründer.

[8] Translate here *sailor* by Seefahrer, and *farmer* by Landmann.

[9] Turn here *early* by 'old.'

[10] *Mazy*, verſchlungen.

[11] *To speculate*, here grübeln (über).

[12] The *heavenly harmonies* are called in German Harmonie der Sphären.

[13] Translate here *to* by für, and place before it the word erſt as an equivalent for *alone*.

[14] Render here *of* by am.

[15] Translate *a—death* briefly by zur Lebensfrage.

[16] *Their—settings*, ihren Auf- und Untergang. When two compound expressions having the same subordinate member are placed side by side, the latter is generally omitted in the first expression, the principal member of which is connected with the second compound term by means of hyphens.

[17] *Clearly*, here deutlich.

[18] The word *hand*, denoting the 'index of a watch,' is rendered by Zeiger or Weiſer; the latter ex-

dark dial of heaven, was called by them the measurer– the measurer of time; for time was measured by[1] nights and moons and winters long before it was reckoned by days and suns and years. — MAX MÜLLER, *The Science of Language.*

XXXIV.

THE WARTBURG.

In the midst of the wild upland tract which forms the centre of Germany, between Frankfort and Leipsic, is[2] one spot[3] distinguished from all the surrounding country[4] by its singular and romantic beauty. The unmeaning[5] downs rise into bold, rocky hills; the patches of wood[6] sink into unfathomable depths of forest;[7] and from the midst of these[8] towers the cluster of heights,[9] on the highest of which[10] stands the ancient castle *of* the Wartburg, or Watchtower, of Eisenach.

pression being more used in higher diction, should be employed in the above metaphor.

[1] *By*, referring to 'measure,' is rendered in German by nach.

[2] The verb *to be* is generally rendered by ſich befinden, not only when it refers to the state of health of a person, but also when it denotes 'being in a place.' Compare the French *se trouver*.

[3] *Spot*, here Stelle. Turn *distinguished* by 'which distinguishes itself, and *all* by *whole*.

[4] *The surrounding country*, briefly in German, die...Umgegend. *Singular*, here eigenthümlich.

[5] *Unmeaning*, unbedeutend; *downs*, here Hügelland, to be used in the singular only; *rise into*, transl. gehen...über.

[6] We say also in German ein Fleckchen Land for *a patch of ground;* but in the above clause the literal translation of *patch* would not be applicable; we must therefore render the expression *patches of wood* freely by zerſtreut liegenden Gehölze. *To sink into*, here ſich entfalten zu; turn *unfathomable* by 'impenetrable.'

[7] *Depths of forest*, Waldesdickicht. Use the singular only.

[8] Turn *of these* by the genitive singular of the pronoun 'the same;' *to tower*, here emporragen.

[9] Turn *cluster of heights* by the compound term 'mountain-group.'

[10] *On—which*, auf deren höchſter Spitze. The above clause offers an illustration of the second instance (compare page 68, note 10) in which we must use the relative pronoun der, die, das, instead of welcher, welche, welches—viz. when the pronoun occurs in the genitive case.

In that castle *there* lived at the beginning of the thirteenth century one of the most saintly characters[1] of the Middle Ages, Elizabeth, Duchess of Thuringia. Her life, which was consumed[2] partly in deeds[3] of unbounded charity to the surrounding[4] poor, partly in patient endurance of[5] oppression and affliction of all kinds,[5] is one of the most instructive records[6] of those times that can be read.[7] It abounds with[8] all the extravagance and superstition which mark[9] the lives of so many *Roman* Catholic saints; but[10] it is also one of the best examples of[11] the character which marks[12] so many *of the* holy men, and especially *of the* holy women, of the *Roman* Catholic Church, and which is still to be seen[13] in the hospitals of foreign countries[14]—that devotion,[15] namely, which spends[16] itself in the service and condition of the poor,[17] *the* sick, and *the* afflicted. There she lived and suffered, and there her memory[18] was long preserved in the grateful recollection[19] of the Thuringian[20] peasants.

[1] *One—characters*, translate eine der frömmsten Persönlichkeiten. For the expression *Middle Ages*, cf. the note to Ext. 26. *Thuringia*, Thüringen.

[2] Turn *which was consumed* by 'which she passed' (dahinbrachte). Why the preference is here given to the active voice will be seen from the note to Ext. 8.

[3] *In deeds*, in der Ausübung.

[4] The attribute *surrounding* cannot be translated literally in the above clause, which must be rendered by gegen die Armen in der Umgegend; *endurance*, here Ertragen.

[5] *Of—kinds*, jeder Art von Unterdrückung und Bedrängniß; *is* = forms.

[6] *Records*, translate Schilderung. For *times*, cf. the note to Ext. 50.

[7] Turn *that—read* by 'which one can read.'

[8] Turn *it abounds with* by 'it is full of;' *extravagance*, here Ueberschwenglichkeit, to be used in the plural.

[9] *To mark*, here charakterisiren. For *lives* see Ext. 25, note *c*.

[10] The conjunction *but* is to be placed after *is*.

[11] *Of*, here von.

[12] The verb *to mark* may here be rendered by kennzeichnen.

[13] Render here the verb *to see* by finden, and see page 45, note 20.

[14] For the expression *foreign countries* we have in German the convenient single term Ausland, corresponding somewhat to the French *l'étranger*.

[15] *Devotion*, here Hingebung.

[16] *Spends — condition*, sich im Dienste und in der Pflege ... erschöpft.

[17] For this and the two following adjectives, employed here substantively, use in German the plural; *afflicted*, Betrübte.

[18] *Memory*, here Andenken.

[19] *Recollection*, Erinnerung.

[20] *Thuringian*, Thüringer. Adjectives formed from the proper names of places frequently take the suffix er, instead of the usual adjective suffix, isch, more particularly if the name consists of more than one syllable.

Up[1] the rugged pathway to that same castle three hundred years afterwards[2] *there* rode at the dead of night a troop of five horsemen, leading behind them[3] in custody a man closely muffled in a cavalier's cloak,[4] who was brought in silence[5] into the court of the fortress, and the gates closed[6] immediately behind him. That[7] man was Luther; those horsemen were the guard sent[8] by the Elector of Saxony to carry him off on his return from Worms,[9] and conceal him in this lonely and secluded spot[10] till the fury of his enemies was[11] overpast: and there, in what[12] he called his Patmos,[13] he lived[14] unknown and in disguise[15] *for* some of the most critical months of his career, and began that great work of his life—which[16] alone would make his name famous to all after ages[17]—the translation of the Bible[18] into the German *language.*

[1] *Up,* hinauf, to be placed after *castle; rugged,* rauh. Use in the above clause the accusative case, there being indicated direction together with motion, and turn *pathway* simply by 'way.'

[2] Turn *afterwards* by 'later,' and *at—night* by 'in the stillness of the night.' The German version will read far more elegantly if the clause *up—castle* is placed after the word *night.*

[3] *Leading behind them,* transl. tie...mit ſich führten; *closely,* dicht.

[4] Turn *cavalier's cloak* by the compound term 'rider-cloak.' The clause *closely—cloak* qualifies the word *man.* See Int. p. xiv., 1.

[5] *In silence,* ſtillſchweigend.

[6] *To close,* ſich ſchließen.

[7] Turn here *That* by 'this.'

[8] See the note to Ext. 23, and use the pluperfect of the passive voice. *To carry...off,* zu entführen.

[9] The above refers to a well-known incident in the life of Luther, whose personal safety was in danger after his memorable attendance at the Diet of Worms in 1521, before the Emperor Charles V.

[10] *Spot,* here Ort

[11] Use here the present conditional of ſein, this mood being generally required in adverbial clauses of time which are introduced by the conjunctions bis, ehe, als, ob, &c. The expression *overpast* may be translated literally by vorbei, or *was overpast* by the free, but more idiomatic, term ſich gelegt hätte.

[12] Turn *in what* by 'in the place which;' *called* = named.

[13] *Patmos,* one of the islands called Sporades, is celebrated as the place where the Apostle John wrote the Apocalypse.

[14] The verb *to live* may here be rendered by the expressive term verleben, which denotes 'to spend a certain time in living.' The prefix ver (compare the Latin *præ, pro,* and *per*), expresses 'a consuming, spending, destroying,' &c.

[15] *In disguise,* vermummt.

[16] Insert here the expletive ſchon, which gives greater force to the word *alone.*

[17] *To—ages,* für alle künftigen Zeiten.

[18] By means of his unsurpassed version of the Bible Luther became the founder of the glorious New-High-German idiom, which has since his times become the general literary language of Germany.

This castle, then,[1] is remarkable[2] as combining[3] *in itself*, more than any other spot, the associations[4] of the old and the new—of the Middle Ages and of the Reformation which destroyed[5] them; and, accordingly, in the popular tradition[6] Luther and St. Elizabeth still hold divided sway.—DEAN STANLEY, *The Reformation.* (*A Lecture.*)

[1] Render here *then* by alſo.

[2] Supply the adverb dadurch before *remarkable*, in accordance with the rule that, if the adjective or verb upon which the objective clause or the supine depends be followed by a preposition, the latter is added to the demonstrative adverb da or dar, as darin, damit, darauf, dazu, &c. These compound adverbs are always placed before the dependent clause; and if a 'verbal form in *ing*' occurs in the latter, it must be changed into a regular sentence with a finite verb: *e.g. We rely upon your keeping your word*, wir verlaſſen uns darauf, daß Sie Ihr Wort halten werden. The adjective merkwürdig, in the above clause, requires the preposition durch; it must, therefore, be preceded by dadurch. The reason of the rule just pointed out lies in the characteristic feature of the German language, to give all constructions with unequivocal grammatical distinctness, and to employ, as a rule, distinct forms and inflections.

[3] Render *as combining* by 'that it... combines' (verbindet), placing the verb after *new*.

[4] *Association*, transl. Erinnerung (an); *the old*, das Alte; *the new*, das Neue.

[5] *To destroy*, vernichten.

[6] *In—tradition*, transl. das Reich der Volksſage. We use here in German the accusative case, because the expression *hold...sway* will, in the above clause, best be translated by the transitive verb beherſchen. Translate *still* by noch immer, and *divided* by gemeinſchaftlich.

PART III.

I.

A LETTER FROM CHARLOTTE BRONTË.

Brussels, March 6[1] 1843.

I am settled[2] by this time, of course.[3] I am not too much overloaded with occupation,[4] and besides teaching English,[5] I have time to improve myself in German. I ought to consider myself well off, and to be thankful for my good fortunes.[6] I hope I am thankful: and if I could always keep up my spirits,[7] and never feel[8] lonely, or long for companionship[9] or friendship, or whatever they call it, I should do[10] very well. I am a good deal by myself[11] out of school hours; but that does not signify.[12] I know regularly give English lessons[13] to M. Heger and his brother-in-law. They get on with wonderful rapidity,[14] especially the first.[15] He already begins to speak English

[1] In German the date is generally placed before the name of the month.

[2] Use here the reflective verb sich einleben in the perfect tense; *by this time*, jetzt.

[3] Add here the expletive schon.

[4] *Occupation*, here Arbeit.

[5] Render *besides teaching English* by außerdem daß ich Englisch unterrichte.

[6] *To improve* = to perfect.

[7] Render *to — off* by mich glücklich schätzen.

[8] *Good fortunes*, here Glück.

[9] *Keep — spirits*, trans'. meine gute Laune bewahren

[10] Use for *feel* the present conditional of sich fühlen, and for *long* that of sich sehnen.

[11] Translate here *companionship* by Umgang, *i.e.* intercourse; and *whatever—it* by wie es sonst genannt wird.

[12] *To do*, here sich befinden.

[13] *By myself* = alone; *school hours* = the school-time.

[14] *To signify* in the above phrase is to be rendered by machen.

[15] *Lesson*, here Stunde.

[16] *Get — rapidity*, machen merkwürdige Fortschritte.

[17] Use the comparative of erst.

very decently.[1] If you could see and hear the efforts[2] I make to teach them to pronounce like Englishmen, and their unavailing attempts to imitate,[3] you would laugh to[4] all eternity.

The Carnival is just over, and we have entered upon[5] the gloom and abstinence of Lent. The first day of Lent we had coffee without milk for breakfast; vinegar and vegetables[6] with a very little salt fish, for dinner; and bread for supper.[7] The Carnival was nothing but masking and mummery. M. Heger took me and one of the pupils into the town to see the masks. It was animating[9] to see the immense crowds and the general gaiety, but the masks were nothing.[10]—MRS. GASKELL, *Life of Charlotte Brontë*.

II.

WILDBAD.

It was the opening[11] of the season of 1832 at *the Baths of* Wildbad.

The evening shadows[12] were beginning to gather over the quiet little German town, and the diligence[13] was expected every minute. Before the door of the principal[14] inn, waiting the arrival of the first visitors of the[15] year, were

[1] *Very decently*, transl. ziemlich geläufig.

[2] Compare the note to Ext. 23.

[3] *To imitate*, transl. mir nachzusprechen.

[4] Turn here *to* by 'in.'

[5] *We—upon*, here wir befinden uns bereits in.

[6] Render *the* by am.

[7] Translate *for* here and in the following clauses by zum.

[8] *Was—masking*, bestand bloß aus Maskeraden. Use *mummery* in the pl.

[9] *Animating*, anregend; *crowds*, here Menschenmenge, to be used in the singular only.

[10] *Were nothing*, transl. wollten nicht viel heißen.

[11] *Opening*, here Anfang. The so-called 'fashionable' *season* in large cities, watering-places, &c. is designated in German by the French expression Saison; but when denoting one of the four divisions of the year, the term *season* is rendered by the genuine Teutonic expression Jahreszeit. Comp. page 30, note 13.

[12] Form a compound term of *evening* and *shadows; to gather*, here sich lagern.

[13] See page 43, note 8.

[14] *Principal* = first; *to wait*, here erwarten.

[15] Turn *of the* by 'in this.' The clause *waiting—year* ought to be placed after the expression *were*.

assembled the three notable personages[1] of Wildbad, accompanied by their wives; the mayor[2] representing the inhabitants, the doctor representing the waters,[3] the landlord representing his own establishment. Beyond[4] this select circle, grouped snugly about[5] the trim little square in front of the inn, appeared[6] the townspeople in general, mixed here and there with the country people,[7] in their quaint German costume, placidly expectant[8] of the diligence: the men in short black jackets, tight black breeches,[9] and three-cornered beaver hats; the women with their long, light[10] hair hanging in one thickly-plaited tail behind *them*.

Round the outer edge of the assemblage thus formed[11] flying detachments[12] of plump, white-headed children careered[13] in perpetual motion, while mysteriously apart[14] from the rest of the inhabitants the musicians of the Bath[15] stood collected in one lost corner,[16] waiting the appearance of the first visitor[17] to play the first tune[18] of the season in form of a serenade.

[1] *Notable personages*, Notabilitäten; *accompanied by* = with.

[2] Use the German equivalent for *mayor*, the English term being used in German for the chief magistrate of an English or American city only. Render the term *representing* occurring after *mayor* by the imperfect of repräsentiren and omit that expression in the two following clauses.

[3] *Waters*, here Brunnen; *establishment*, Etabliſſement, to be pronounced as a French word.

[4] *Beyond*, außerhalb.

[5] *Grouped snugly about*, in gemüthlichen Gruppen auf; *trim*, here hübſch; *square*, Platz.

[6] *Appeared*, translate ſtanden; *townspeople* = citizens.

[7] *Mixed—country people*, unter die ſich hie und da die Landleute ... miſchten; *quaint*, ſonderbar.

[8] *Placidly expectant*, in ruhiger Erwartung.

[9] *Breeches*, Kniehoſen.

[10] *Light*, here blond. *Hanging—behind*, das hinten in einem dicken geflochtenen Zopf herunterhing.

[11] *Round—formed*, um die ſo beſchaffene Verſammlung...herum. The term *careered* is the principal verb of the above sentence, which does not begin with the subject.

[12] Retain the expression Detachements, pronouncing it as in French, but sounding the final s. *Plump, white-headed*, kräftigen, flachshaarigen.

[13] *To career*, here laufen; *perpetual*, here beſtändig.

[14] *Mysteriously apart*, in myſteriöſer Entfernung; *rest of the* = other.

[15] *Bath*, here Badeort.

[16] *Collected — corner*, in einem verlaſſenen Winkel zuſammengedrängt. For the rendering of the present participle *waiting* compare Introduction p. xvii., II., *g*.

[17] *Visitor* (at watering places), Badegaſt or Kurgaſt.

[18] *Tune* = piece; *in form*, in der Geſtalt. The expression *serenade*, to be pronounced as a German word, may be retained.

The light of a[1] May evening was still bright[2] on the tops of the great wooded hills watching high over[3] the town on the right hand and the left, and the cool breeze[4] that comes before sunset came keenly fragrant here with the balsamic odour[5] of the firs of[6] the Black Forest. * * * "The diligence!" cried a child from the outskirts[7] of the crowd.

The musicians seized their instruments, and silence fell on the whole community.[8] From far away[9] in the windings of the forest gorge[10] the ring of horses' bells came[9] faintly clear through the evening stillness.

"Play, *my* friends!" cried the mayor to[11] the musicians: "here are the first sick people[12] of the season. Let them[13] find us cheerful."

The band[14] played a lively dance-tune, and the children footed it[15] merrily to the music.—WILKIE COLLINS, *Armadale.*

[1] Use the definite article. *May* and *evening* form in German one compound expression.

[2] *Was still bright,* lag noch glänzend; *top* (of a hill, &c.), Gipfel.

[3] *Watching high over,* translate die...überragten; *on—left,* rechts und links.

[4] *Breeze,* here Lufthauch; *that comes before,* der dem...vorhergeht.

[5] The clause *came—odour* should be somewhat freely rendered by trang hierher, beladen mit dem ſcharfen, balſamiſchen Wohlgeruch.

[6] Turn here *of* by 'in.'

[7] *Outskirts,* translate äußerſten Reihen.

[8] *Fell — community,* trat in der ganzen Verſammlung ein.

[9] *From far away . . . came,* aus weiter Ferne ertönte.

[10] *Windings—gorge,* Krümmungen der Waldſchlucht; *the ring,* das Klingen. *Horses' bells* and *evening stillness* form in German compound expressions. *Faintly clear,* ſchwach aber deutlich.

[11] *To,* here zu, to be placed after *musicians.*

[12] *Sick people,* Patienten. A German would probably use the word Kurgäſte or Badegäſte. Compare page 100, note 17.

[13] Turn *let them* by 'they shall.'

[14] *Band* (a company of musicians), Muſikbande, or simply Bande; *dance-tune,* Tanzmelodie.

[15] Turn *footed it* by 'danced.'

III.

DEATH OF JAMES I. OF SCOTLAND.[1]

The King kept[2] Christmas, 1436, at the monastery of the Black Friars[3] in Perth, within reach[4] of his Highland enemies. He was repeatedly warned of his[5] danger, but was of[6] a fearless temper. On the 20th of February he was,[7] at the close[8] of the day, loosely robed, chatting before the fire of the reception room with the Queen and her ladies. Three hundred Highlanders, *with* Graham at their head,[9] broke that[10] night into the monastery. Bolts and locks had been tampered[11] with. It was there[12] that a Catherine Douglas,[13] finding that the great bolt of the chamber door had been removed,[14] thrust her arm through the staples, and suffered[15] it to be crushed, while time was

[1] James I., son of Robert III. of Scotland, was born in 1393. He passed his youth in England as a prisoner of Henry IV., and received a liberal education in this country. He was distinguished both for his poetical and musical talents.

[2] *To keep* (a holiday), feiern. Supply 'feast' after *Christmas*, and 'of the year' before the date.

[3] *Black Friars* are called in German Dominikaner, after their founder Dominicus de Guzman. Form here a compound expression by adding the equivalent for *monastery* to that for *Black Friars*.

[4] *Within reach*, leicht erreichbar. Turn *of—enemies* by 'to his enemies in the Highlands.'

[5] Use the definite article. The verb warnen, *to warn*, requires in German the preposition vor.

[6] *Was of*, say er beſaß; *temper* here Gemüth.

[7] See page 94, note 2.

[8] *At the close*, gegen Ende; *loosely*, leicht. The clause *chatting* (plaudernd) *before the fire* should be placed at the end of the sentence.

[9] *At their head*, an der Spitze. Sir Robert Graham was one of the bitterest enemies of King James, on account of the latter's endeavour to restrict the feudal rights of the nobles in favour of the people. Sir Robert allied himself to the Highlanders, who, being kept in subjection by the King, were ready for any act of revenge.

[10] *Broke that*, say drangen in jener.

[11] The verb *to tamper* is one of those idiomatic English expressions which it is so difficult to render into foreign languages. The free translation waren heimlich in Unordnung gebracht worden will convey the meaning of the clause *had been tampered with*.

[12] *There* is to be rendered in the above clause by hier and *that* by wo.

[13] Catherine Douglas was one of the ladies in attendance on the Queen.

[14] *To remove*, here abnehmen.

[15] When *to suffer* is synonymous with 'to allow, to let,' it is translated by laſſen. Render the expression *to be crushed* by zermalmen.

gained for the King's escape[1] into a vault below. The flooring[2] was replaced, and the Highlanders, not finding[3] the King, would have retired; but one[4] who suspected the way[5] of escape caused[6] the floor to be searched. James I. was discovered, and was[7] killed by sixteen wounds in the breast alone. Although unarmed, he defended himself well,[8] leaving the mark[9] of his grip on those of his murderers with whom he grappled.[10] His wife, who sought to shelter him, was wounded in the struggle.

There remained[11] only a six-year-old son to be the King's successor. But the child's father had been the friend of his people: the citizens of Perth hunted[12] the murderers, caught them, and killed them with barbarous, protracted torture.[13]—HENRY MORLEY, *English Writers.*

IV.

THE FIORDS[14] OF NORWAY.

It is difficult to say whether these fiords are the most beautiful[15] in summer or in winter. In summer they glitter with[16] golden sunshine, and purple[17] and green

[1] Turn *while—escape* by 'while the King gained time to escape' (sich zu flüchten); *vault below*, darunter befindliches Gewölbe.

[2] *The flooring*, die Dielen (pl.); *replaced*, here wieder niedergelegt.

[3] Compare Int. page xvi., *c.*

[4] Supply 'of them;' *to suspect* being here synonymous with 'to conjecture,' is to be rendered by vermuthen.

[5] *Way* = manner; *of escape*, des Entkommens.

[6] *Caused* = let; *to search*, here untersuchen.

[7] The repetition of the auxiliary verb *was* is unnecessary in German. Use *the breast* in the accusative.

[8] See page 75, note 4, and insert before *well* the expletive doch.

[9] Turn *mark* by the plural 'traces,' and render *grip* by Griff, which latter expressions are both derived from the same root.

[10] *Grappled*, rang; *sought*, versuchte.

[11] *To remain*, here zurückbleiben; *six-year-old*, sechsjährig.

[12] *To hunt*, here verfolgen.

[13] *With — torture*, mit barbarisch langsamen Folterqualen.

[14] *The fiords* (German Buchten or Fjorde, from the Swedish Fjärd) are inlets from the sea between the steep, rocky islands of Scandinavia.

[15] See page 87, note 1.

[16] In German we use in the above phrase, instead of *with*, the preposition 'in,' contracted with the definite article.

[17] Translate here *purple* by

shadows from the mountain and forest lie on them; and these may be more lovely[1] than the faint light of the winter noons of[2] those latitudes, and the snowy pictures of frozen peaks[3] which then show themselves on the surface: but before the day is half over[4] out come the stars, the glorious[5] stars, which shine like nothing that we have ever seen.[6] There the planets cast a faint shadow, as the young[8] moon does with us; and these planets and the constellations of the sky, as they silently glide over[9] from peak to peak of these rocky passes, are imaged on the waters so clearly, that the fisherman, as he unmoors his boat for his evening task, feels as if he were about to shoot forth[12] his vessel into another heaven, and to cleave his way[13] among the stars.

Still as everything is[14] to the eye, sometimes for a hundred miles together along these deep sea-valleys, there is rarely silence; the ear is kept awake by a thousand voices. In the summer there are cataracts leaping[18] from ledge to

violett. The word purpurn, generally, or perhaps invariably, given in dictionaries for *purple*, is now chiefly used in German, as is also the case in English poetical language, for a rich bright colour in which the red predominates. In speaking of the redness of the sky we use the word purpurn or purpurfarbig, but in speaking of the deep blue colour of the sky we should employ the word violett, or the more poetical violfarben.

1 *Lovely* = beautiful.

2 *Light—of*, Mittagslicht im Winter in.

3 *Peak*, here Bergſpitze. *Then*, signifying 'at that time,' is rendered by dann.

4 *Over*, here vorüber; *to come out* (of stars, &c.), aufgehen.

5 When *glorious* is synonymous with 'magnificent, splendid,' it is rendered by herrlich.

6 Turn *like—seen* by 'as (wie) we nothing equal (Aehnliches) have ever seen.' The auxiliary verb *have* may be omitted in the translation.

7 Place *there* after *cast*.

8 *Young* = new; *with*, here bei.

9 *Glide over*, dahingleiten. The expression *peak* may in the above clause be rendered by Spitze merely, and the preposition *to* by zu.

10 *Are imaged on the*, ſpiegeln ſich ...im. Use the singular for *waters*, and place before this term the adverbial expression *so clearly*.

11 *That the fisherman...feels*, daß es dem Fiſcher...ſcheint; *as*, here wenn; *evening task*, Abendbeſchäftigung.

12 *If—forth*, translate wäre er im Begriff...hinzuſteuern. Turn here *vessel* by 'boat,' and *another* by 'second.'

13 *Cleave his way*, ſich einen Weg ...zu bahnen; *among* = through.

14 *Still—is*, ſo ruhig Alles...erſcheint. The expression *to the eye* is to be placed after *valleys*.

15 *For a hundred...together*, auf hunderte von. Translate *there is* by ſo herrſcht doch.

16 *There are . . . leaping*, ſtürzen; *from—rocks*, von einem Felſenriff zum andern; *there is*, man hört.

ledge of the rocks; and there is the bleating of the kids that browse there,[1] and the flap of the great eagle's wings,[2] as it dashes abroad from its eyrie, and the cries[3] of whole hosts of sea-birds which inhabit the islets; and all these sounds are mingled and multiplied by the strong echoes, till they become a din as loud[4] as that of a city.

Even at night, when the flocks are in the fold,[6] and the birds at roost, and the echoes[7] themselves seem to be asleep, there is occasionally a sweet[8] music heard, too soft for even the listening ear to catch by day. Every breath[9] of summer wind that steals[10] through the pine forests wakes this music *as it goes*. The stiff, spiny[11] leaves of the fir and pine vibrate[12] with the breeze, like the strings of a musical instrument, so that every breath of the night wind in a Norwegian forest wakes[13] a myriad of tiny harps; and this gentle[14] and mournful music may be heard in gushes[15] the whole night through. This music of course ceases, when each tree becomes laden[16] with snow; but yet there is sound in the midst[17] of the longest winter night. There is[18] the rumble of some avalanche, as after a drifting

[1] *That browse there*, die dort weiden.

[2] In German we should form a compound expression of *flap* and *wings*, viz. Flügelschlag; *dashes abroad*, emporfliegt.

[3] Use for *cries* the frequentative noun formed from schreien. *Hosts*, here Schwärme.

[4] Supply here the preposition zu, render *are mingled* by gesellt sich, and turn *and—echoes* by 'the loud echo which yet multiplies' (vervielfacht).

[5] *Till — loud*, bis sie zu einem lauten Geräusch...anwachsen.

[6] Use in German the plural, and render *at roost* by ruhen.

[7] The singular will in German read better than the plural.

[8] *Sweet*, here lieblich; *soft*, leise. The subsequent clause is to be turned by 'for (um) by day even to the listening (lauschenden) ear,' and *to catch* rendered by vernehmbar zu sein.

[9] *Breath*, here Hauch. *Summer wind* and *pine forests* are in German compound expressions.

[10] Translate here *steals* by weht, and *wakes* by erweckt.

[11] *Spiny*, stachelig. *Fir and pine* should be used in German in the plural.

[12] Use for *vibrate* the corresponding foreign expression, and turn *with the breeze* by 'in the wind.'

[13] *Wakens*, wach ruft; *a myriad* is to be rendered by Myriaden, and *tiny* by klein.

[14] *Gentle*, transl. leiseklingende; *mournful*, klagend or melancholisch.

[15] *In gushes*, stoßweise.

[16] *Becomes laden* = is covered.

[17] *But—midst*, dennoch läßt sich Geräusch auch inmitten...vernehmen. Form a compound expression of *winter* and *night*.

[18] *There is* may here be turned by 'one hears;' *the rumble*, das Rollen; *as*, wenn; *drifting storm*, translate Sturmwind.

storm a mass of snow,[1] too heavy to keep its place, slides and tumbles from the mountain peak: there is[2] also now and then a loud crack of the ice in the nearest glacier: and, as many declare,[3] there is a crackling to be heard by those who listen when the Northern lights[4] are shooting and blazing across the sky.—Harriet Martineau, *Feats on the Fiords.*

V.

HELLENIC TRAITS[5] IN MODERN PERSIA.

Even now, after so many centuries of vicissitude,[6] the Persian presents[7] many points of resemblance, perhaps more than we can find in Modern Greece[8] itself, to the primitive and heroic Greek of Homer. * * *

The Persians are still[9] noted for hospitality and love of display,[10] for highly refined manners and great personal beauty. They have still an intense love of[11] poetry, of song, and also of music, while their practice of[12] this art is

[1] Form for *mass of snow* the compound expression 'snow-mass;' *to keep,* here bewahren.

[2] See page 105, note 18.

[3] *Declare,* here behaupten, *i.e.* assert, maintain. The whole of the following clause, *there—listen,* may be briefly rendered in German by kann der Lauschende ein Kniſtern hören.

[4] *Northern lights*=North-lights. *Are—across,* flammend über den . . . dahinwirbeln.

[5] *Trait* (of character), Zug.

[6] The above clause cannot be rendered literally as it stands, but must be turned by 'after the vicissitudes(Veränderungen)through so many centuries.'

[7] *To present,* here darbieten. The expression *points of resemblance* may be rendered simply by Aehnlichkeiten, or more idiomatically, though rather freely, by verwandte Züge, *i.e.* kindred traits.

[8] *Modern Greece,* Neu-Griechenland; *to,* here mit; for the epithets *primitive* and *heroic* use the corresponding foreign expressions.

[9] Supply here the expletive adverbial expression heutigen Tages; *noted,* bekannt. The possessive pronouns of the third person plural ought to be supplied after *for* in the above clause, and in the next, and, on account of the difference of number, also before *great.*

[10] *Love of display,* Prachtliebe; *highly—manners,* höchſt feine Manieren; *personal,* here körperliche.

[11] *They—of,* ſie hegen noch immer große Liebe zur.

[12] Translate *their practice of* by in der Ausübung, bei ihnen, and place this clause after *this art.*

rude and simple. They still[1] associate poetry with recitation and the banquet, and when Malcolm[2] wrote printing was still unknown among[3] the useful arts of the country. They are passionately fond[4] of horses, much given[5] to the chase and to the *practice of* horse-racing. Men of letters[6] are esteemed, and their society valued, even as[7] in the Odyssey the bard is among[8] those whom men are[9] accustomed to invite to dinner. On *the* occasion of a marriage[10] they celebrate prolonged feasts of three days for the poor, and from that up *to* thirty or forty days for the highest classes.[11]

Amidst[12] great depravity much *of* filial piety[13] and *of* maternal influence remains.[14] It is observed[15] that they do not usually allude to[16] women by name. There is[17] an approach to this abstinence in the Homeric poems, where names of men,[18] and likewise of goddesses, in the vocative are frequent;[19] but I am[20] not sure that we have any

[1] The adverb *still* is here, as in many other cases, to be rendered by noch immer; *to associate*, verbinden. The German version of the above clause will read better by turning *with* by 'and,' and the subsequent *and* by 'with.'

[2] The above refers to Sir John Malcolm, who published some highly valuable works on Persia in 1815 and 1829, which, by the by, have also been rendered into German.

[3] *Printing—among*, transl. gehörte die Buchtruckerkunst noch nicht zu den.

[4] *Are...fond of* = love.

[5] *Much given*, transl. sind...sehr ergeben; *horse-racing*, Pferderennen.

[6] *A man of letters*, ein Gelehrter; *to value*, here schätzen.

[7] *Even as*, say so wie. *Odyssey*, Odyssee, and *Iliad*, Iliade, are in German feminine, in accordance with their original gender in Greek.

[8] Turn *is among* by 'belongs to.'

[9] *Men are*, say: man hat; *to be accustomed*, here pflegen; dinner, Mahl.

[10] Turn *a marriage* by 'weddings.'

[11] Turn the clause *they—classes* briefly by 'feasts are celebrated which last three days with (bei) the poor, and about (an) thirty to (bis) forty days with the highest classes.'

[12] *Amidst*, here bei.

[13] *Filial piety*, kindliche Pietät.

[14] Translate *remains* by herrscht, *i.e.* reigns, and add the expletive noch, *still*.

[15] Turn *it is observed* by 'one has observed.'

[16] *To allude to*, here erwähnen.

[17] *There is* may be rendered in the above clause by ist...vorhanden, *approach to* by Aehnlichkeit mit, and *abstinence* by Zurückhaltung. The equivalent usually given for *abstinence*, viz. Enthaltsamkeit, should only be used when it coincides more with 'temperance.'

[18] See page 65, note 16.

[19] The idiomatic expression in German for *are frequent* would here be häufig vorkommen.

[20] In German the clause will be made more emphatic by inserting here the conjunction aber.

instances of a woman addressed by her proper name throughout the Iliad or Odyssey.[1] But certainly one of the most curious[2] notes of similarity is that,[3] together with their high and refined[4] politeness, they retain a liability when under great excitement to a sort[5] of cannibal ferocity.* * *

To appreciate fully,[6] however, the resemblances of Greek and Persian, we must take[7] the latter as he is found in the military tribes of the province of Pars or Fars. The members of these tribes are chiefly horsemen, all soldiers, and all brigands. But they abhor the name and character of thief;[8] plunder is redeemed[9] by violence in their eyes, and it is evidently accompanied with the practice[10] of a generous and delicate hospitality. Alexander the Great endeavoured to bring[11] these tribes to settle, and to adopt agricultural habits;[12] but they have defied his efforts, and still remain like the old Helli of the hills, when they[13] hung over the Pelasgians[14] of the valleys.—W. E. GLADSTONE, *Studies on Homer and the Homeric Age.*

[1] Turn *that—Odyssey* by 'that there occurs in the whole of the Iliad or Odyssey a single instance (Fall) where a woman is addressed (angeredet wird) by her proper name' (Eigennamen).

[2] When *curious* is synonymous with 'remarkable,' it is generally rendered by merkwürdig. *Notes of similarity* may be rendered like *points of resemblance,* page 106, note 7.

[3] Insert here the pronoun 'they,' and transl. *together with* by bei all; *high* = great.

[4] *Refined,* here ausgebildet.

[5] Turn literally *they — sort* by 'are capable under (bei) great excitement of a sort,' &c.

[6] *Fully,* here vollſtändig; *of* = between. *Greek* and *Persian* are to be used in the plural.

[7] *To take,* here betrachten; *military* = warlike.

[8] Use the indefinite article.

[9] *To redeem,* here beſchönigen; *violence,* Gewaltthätigkeit.

[10] *Practice,* Ausübung; *delicate,* zartfühlend.

[11] *To bring,* here bewegen; *to settle,* ſich niederlaſſen.

[12] *To—habits,* Ackerbau zu treiben; *to defy,* here ſich widerſetzen. The adverb *like,* gleich, is to be placed after *hills.*

[13] Turn *they* by 'these,' and render *hung—over* by betrohten.

[14] The *Pelasgians* (Pelasger) were, according to Herodotus, the earliest inhabitants of Greece. They are said to have been an agricultural people. After the Helli had spread over the country, an amalgamation of the two races took place.

VI.

A NIGHT MARCH.[1]

On[2] the night selected for the enterprise,[3] that of the 27th September, the moon was a day old in its fourth[4] quarter, and rose a little before twelve. It was low water[5] *at* between four and five in the morning. The Grand Commander[6] at the appointed hour of midnight[7] crossed to Philippsland, and stood on the shore to watch[8] the setting forth of the little army. He addressed a short harangue[9] to them, in which he skilfully struck the chords of Spanish chivalry[10] and the national love of glory, and was answered[11] *with* loud and enthusiastic cheers. Don Osorio d'Ulloa then stripped[12] and plunged into the sea immediately after the guides. He was followed[13] by the Spaniards, after whom came the Germans, and then the Walloons. The two hundred sappers and miners[14] came

[1] *Night march*, nächtliche Expedition. The march described in the above extract was undertaken by Requesenz, the successor of Alva as governor of the Netherlands, to get possession of the Island of Shonen, so as to have the way open to the sea, and thus effect a union with the expected Spanish fleet.

[2] *On* = in; *selected*, beſtimmt. See Int. p. xiv., I.

[3] Insert here the expletive 'namely,' and repeat the preposition 'in.'

[4] Turn *was—fourth* by 'stood... one day in the last.'

[5] *It—water*, transl. die Ebbe war am tiefſten.

[6] *Grand Commander*, Oberkommandant.

[7] Turn *hour of midnight* by 'midnight's-hour;' *to cross to*, überſetzen nach.

[8] *To watch*, here beaufſichtigen; *setting forth*, Aufbruch.

[9] *Harangue*, Anſprache; *to strike*, here berühren.

[10] *Chivalry*, here Ritterlichkeit; *love of glory*, Ruhmbegierde.

[11] Translate *was answered* by tönte ihm entgegen, and put the expression *cheers* (Beifall) with its attributes in the nominative. The verb *to answer* governs the dative of the person and accusative of the thing, and could therefore, according to the rule stated in note *b* to Ext. 22, not be rendered here literally, even if the expression were suitable for the above clause.

[12] *To strip*, here ſich entkleiden; *immediately*, gleich.

[13] The rule alluded to in the last note but one refers also to the verb folgen, which requires the dative. It must, therefore, be turned into the active voice, putting the noun *Spaniards* in the nominative case, and turning *whom* by 'these.'

[14] Use for *sappers* and *miners* the corresponding foreign terms.

next;[1] and Don Gabriel Peralta, with his Spanish company, brought up the rear.

It was a wild[2] night. Incessant lightning alternately revealed[3] and obscured the progress of the midnight march through the black[4] waters, as the anxious[5] Commander watched the expedition[6] from the shore; but the soldiers were quickly swallowed up in the gloom.[7] As they advanced cautiously, two by two, the daring adventurers found themselves soon nearly up to[8] their necks in the waves, whilst so narrow was the submerged[9] bank along which they were marching, that a misstep[10] to the right or left was fatal. Luckless individuals[11] repeatedly sank to rise no more.

Meantime, as the sickly[12] light of the waning moon came forth at intervals[13] through the stormy clouds, the soldiers could plainly[14] perceive the files of Zealand vessels through which they were to march, and which were anchored[15] as close to the flat as the water would allow. Some had recklessly stranded themselves,[16] in their eagerness to interrupt the passage of the troops; and the artillery[17] played unceasingly from the larger vessels. * * *

At times they halted for breath,[18] or to engage in fierce

[1] *Next*, here zunächſt; *brought—rear*, bildete...den Nachtrab.

[2] *Wild* = stormy. Use in German the noun *lightning* in the plural.

[3] Render here *to reveal* by enthüllen, *to obscure* by verbergen, and *progress* by Vorrücken. For *midnight* use here the attributive adjective mitternächtlich.

[4] Translate *black* by dunkel, and turn *waters* by 'flood,' and *as* by 'whilst.'

[5] *Anxious*, here beſorgt.

[6] Retain this identical expression, pronouncing it as a German word. *From*, say von...aus.

[7] *In the gloom* = by the darkness.

[8] *Up to*, bis an. Use *necks* in the singular.

[9] *Submerged* transl. vom Waſſer bedeckt, and turn *along* by 'upon.'

[10] *Misstep*, Fehltritt; *was fatal*, transl. verderblich wurde.

[11] *Individuals* = persons; *repeatedly*, here häufig; *more* = again.

[12] *Sickly*, here fahl.

[13] Turn *came—intervals* by 'from time to time broke,' and *stormy clouds* by 'storm-clouds.'

[14] *Plainly*, deutlich; *file*, Reihe; *Zealand*, here ſeeländiſch.

[15] *To be anchored*, vor Anker liegen: *flat*, here Untiefe; *would allow*, transl. es geſtattete.

[16] *Had recklessly stranded themselves*, waren unbedachtſamer Weiſe geſtrandet; *interrupt* = prevent; *passage*, Uebergang.

[17] *Artillery*, here Geſchütz.

[18] *They—breath*, hielten ſie an um Athem zu ſchöpfen; *to engage*, here ſich einlaſſen; *fierce*, hitzig.

skirmishes with their nearest assailants. Standing[1] breast-high in the waves, and surrounded at intervals[2] by total darkness, they[3] were yet able to pour an occasional[4] well-directed volley into the hostile ranks. The Zealanders, however, did not assail them with fire-arms[5] alone. They transfixed some with their fatal harpoons; they dragged others from[6] the path with boat-hooks; they beat out[7] the brains of others with heavy flails. Many[8] were the mortal duels thus[9] fought in the darkness, and, as it were, in the bottom of the sea:[10] many were the deeds of audacity[11] which no one was to mark save those by whom they were achieved. Still, in spite of all impediments and losses, the Spaniards steadily advanced.[12] If other arms proved less available,[13] they were attacked by the fierce[14] taunts and invectives of their often invisible foes, who reviled[15] them *as* water-dogs, fetching and carrying[16] for a master who despised them; *as* mercenaries, who coined[17] their blood for gold, and were employed[18] by tyrants for the basest uses. If, stung[19] by these mocking voices, they turned in the darkness to chastise their unseen[20] tormentors, they were certain[21] to be trampled upon by their

[1] Turn *standing* by 'although they stood,' and supply the verb 'were' before *surrounded*.

[2] *At intervals*, von Zeit zu Zeit.

[3] See the note to Ext. 7.

[4] Turn *pour* by 'send,' *an occasional* by the adverb 'occasionally,' and render *well-directed volley* by wohlgezielte Salve.

[5] *Fire-arm*, Feuergewehr.

[6] *To drag ... from*, herabreißen.

[7] Translate *to beat out* in the above clause by zerschmettern, and use *brains* in the singular only.

[8] Turn *many* by 'numerous,' and *mortal* by 'deadly.'

[9] *Thus*, transl. die auf diese Weise.

[10] *In—sea*, auf dem Meeresgrunde.

[11] Turn *of audacity* by the attributive adjective 'audacious,' and *was* by 'ought;' *to mark*, here wahrnehmen; *save* = except.

[12] *To advance steadily*, unaufhaltsam vorwärts rücken.

[13] *To prove available*, sich als wirksam erweisen.

[14] *Fierce* = violent; *taunts*, Schimpfreden; *invectives*, Schmähungen.

[15] *To revile*, here schelten.

[16] The idiomatic German expression for *to fetch and carry*, in reference to a dog, is apportiren. See Int. p. xvi., *b*.

[17] Turn here *coined* by 'sold.'

[18] *Were employed*, here sich gebrauchen ließen; *for*, zu; *uses*, Dienste.

[19] Translate here *stung* by aufgestachelt, *mocking voices* by Spottreden, and *to turn* by sich umwenden.

[20] *Unseeen* = invisible.

[21] The adjective *certain* is, in clauses like the above, generally rendered by unfehlbar, *i.e.* without fail, and sometimes by gewiß; the verb itself is then generally used in the passive voice, as here: *they — upon* = they were certainly trampled upon (niedergetreten).

comrades, and to be pushed from their narrow pathway into the depth of[1] sea. Thus many perished.

The night wore on,[2] and the adventurers still fought it out manfully,[3] but very slowly; the main body[4] of Spaniards, Germans, and Walloons soon after daylight[5] reaching the opposite shore, having sustained considerable losses,[6] but in perfect order. The pioneers[7] were not so fortunate. The tide rose over them[8] before they could effect their passage, and swept nearly every one away.[9]— MOTLEY, *The Rise of the Dutch Republic.*

VII.

THE STUDY OF NATURE.

Happy truly[10] is the naturalist. He has no time for melancholy dreams. The earth becomes to him transparent: everywhere he sees[11] significancies, harmonies, laws, trains of cause and effect endlessly interlinked,[12] which draw him out of the narrow sphere of self-interest and self-pleasing[13] into a pure and wholesome region[14] of solemn joy and wonder. * * *

[1] Turn *depth of* by the adjective 'deep.'

[2] *To wear on*, in the above sense, dahinſchleichen.

[3] *Fought—manfully*, rückten tapfer fechtend...vorwärts.

[4] *Main body*, Hauptmacht.

[5] *Daylight*, here Tagesanbruch; *to reach*, here erreichen. Turn *reaching* by 'reached.'

[6] The clause *having—losses* may be very briefly rendered in German by means of the adverbial expression mit großem Verluſte.

[7] We generally use also in German the foreign expression Pionnier: the genuine Teutonic term which expressively denotes the meaning is Schanzgräber, *i.e.* trench-digger.

[8] *Rose over them*, ſtieg über ſie hinweg.

[9] *To sweep...away*, here davonſchwemmen; *every one* = all.

[10] *Truly*, here wahrhaft, to be placed before *happy*. *He has*, say ihm bleibt; *for*, zu.

[11] Turn *sees* by 'discovers,' and render *significancies* by Sinn.

[12] *Trains of... endlessly interlinked*, in endloſer Reihenfolge verkettet, which clause must follow after *cause and effect; self-interest*, Selbſtſucht.

[13] *Self-pleasing*, Selbſtgefälligkeit.

[14] Retain the same expression in German, pronouncing it as a German word. Supply before *of* the word voll, and use the following nouns in the plural.

Happy, especially,[1] the sportsman who is also a naturalist; for as[2] he roves in pursuit[3] of his game over hills or up the beds of streams, where[4] no one but a sportsman ever thinks[5] of going, he will be certain to see[6] things noteworthy, which the mere naturalist would never find, simply because he could never guess[7] that they were there to be found.[8] I do not speak merely of the rare birds which may be shot,[9] the curious facts[10] as to the habits of fish which may be observed, great as[11] these pleasures are; I speak of the scenery,[12] the weather, the geological formation[13] of the country, its vegetation,[13] and the living habits[14] of its denizens. A sportsman out in all weathers,[15] and often dependent for success on his knowledge[16] "what the sky is going[17] to do," has opportunities for becoming a meteorologist which *no one*, beside,[18] but a sailor, possesses; and one[19] has often longed for a scientific[20] gamekeeper or huntsman, who by discovering a[21] law for the mysterious and seemingly capricious phenomena[22] of "scent"

[1] *Especially*, here vor Allem.

[2] See page 43, note 11.

[3] *In pursuit*, beim Verfolgen; *his* = the; *up—streams*, ſtromaufwärts.

[4] *Where*, here wohin, to be followed by *of going*.

[5] Turn *no—thinks* by 'it only to a hunter occurs' (einfällt).

[6] Turn *he—see* by 'he will certainly...see.' Fore the place of *noteworthy* cf. Int. p. xiv., I.

[7] *Could never guess*, durchaus nicht ahnen kann.

[8] See page 45, note 20.

[9] Turn *may be shot* by 'he can shoot.'

[10] See page 48, note 8, and use the corresponding foreign expression. *As to*, betreffend, to be placed after *fish*, which is to be used in the plural.

[11] *Great as*, ſo groß...auch; *are* = may be.

[12] Employ the corresponding foreign expression.

[13] The same terms, pronounced as German words, may be retained in the translation.

[14] *Living habits*, Lebensgewohnheiten, *i.e.* habits of life; *denizens* = inhabitants.

[15] Turn *in all weathers* by 'in every weather,' placing this expression before *out*, im Freien.

[16] Construe *often—knowledge* by 'whose success often depends on it (haben), that he knows.'

[17] *Is going*, transl. geſonnen iſt, to be placed after *to do*.

[18] Supply the dative of the personal pronoun er, and see page 41, note 14. *Possesses* = has.

[19] The indefinite pronoun man would here be inadmissible in German. We must therefore render the above clause freely. The phrase ſchon Mancher hat, for *one has often*, will convey the author's meaning.

[20] *Scientific*, say wiſſenſchaftlich gebildeten; *huntsman*, here Jägerburſch.

[21] *By discovering a*, durch die Entdeckung eines.

[22] Employ the corresponding foreign forms of both *capricious* and *phenomena*. *Scent* (the hunting expression), here Witterung.

might perhaps throw light on *a* hundred dark passages[1] of hygrometry.

The fisherman, too,[2]—what an inexhaustible treasury of wonders lies at his feet in the subaqueous world[3] of the commonest mountain burn![4] All *the* laws which mould[5] a world are busy, if he but knew it, fattening[6] his trout for him, and making them rise to the fly, by strange electric influences, at one hour rather than at another.[7]

Many *a* good[8] geognostic lesson, too, both as to the nature of a country's rocks[9] and as to the laws by which strata[10] are deposited, may an observing man[11] learn as[12] he wades up the bed of a trout-stream;[13] not to mention[14] the strange forms and habits of the tribes of water-insects.

CHARLES KINGSLEY, *Glaucus, or the Wonders of the Shore.*

[1] Translate *passages* by Vorfälle, *i.e.* incidents. *Hygrometry* may also be used in German after changing the final *y* into ie. This rule holds good with reference to other Greek nouns ending in *y*.

[2] Turn *too* by 'and also,' beginning the sentence with these words.

[3] *Subaqueous world* may here be rendered by the expressive compound term Waſſerwelt.

[4] The Scottish word *burn* is to be turned by 'stream,' and joined to the word *mountain*.

[5] *Mould*, here bilden.

[6] *To fatten*, here groß füttern. Cf. Int. p. xv., II., *a*. The personal relation expressed in English by *his* and *for him* may in German be simply rendered by the dative of the personal pronoun er, to be placed before *trout*, and the possessive pronoun *his* turned by the article 'the.'

[7] Arrange the sentence *and—another* in this manner: 'and through unknown electric influences are the cause (bewirken) that they rather (eher) at one hour than at another to the (zur) fly rise' (emporſchwimmen).

[8] *Good* = useful; *lesson*, here Lehre. Turn *too* by 'also,' and place it at the beginning of the sentence.

[9] Turn *of—rocks* by 'of the rocks of a country.'

[10] Retain the same expression in German. *Deposited*, gebildet.

[11] Turn *an observing man* by 'a good observer;' *to learn*, here ſchöpfen.

[12] See page 43, note 11, and turn *up* by 'through.'

[13] We say in German 'trout-brook,' using *trout* in the plural.

[14] Turn *not to mention* by 'without speaking of,' and *tribes* by 'families.'

VIII.

A FUNERAL DANCE.[1]

Drums were beating,[2] horns blowing,[3] and people were seen all running[4] in one direction; the cause was a funeral dance: *and* I joined[5] the crowd, and soon found myself in the midst of the entertainment.[6] The dancers were most grotesquely[7] got up. About a dozen huge ostrich feathers adorned their helmets; *either* leopard or *the* black and white monkey skins[8] were suspended from their shoulders; and a leather tied round the waist covered a large iron bell which was strapped[9] upon the loins of each dancer: this they rang to the time[10] of the dance. A large crowd got up in this style[11] created an indescribable hubbub, heightened[12] by the blowing of horns and the beating[13] of seven nogaras of various notes. Every dancer wore an antelope's horn suspended[14] round the neck, which he blew occasionally in the height of his excitement. These instruments produced a sound partaking[15] of the braying of a donkey and the screech of an owl.

Crowds[16] *of* men rushed round and round[17] in a sort of

[1] *A funeral dance*, ein Tanz zur Leichenfeier.

[2] *To beat* (a drum), rühren. Use the imperfect of the passive voice.

[3] Translate *blowing* by the imperfect of the intransitive verb erklingen, *i.e.* resounded.

[4] Turn *people—running* by 'one saw all (alles) people...run.'

[5] *To join*, here sich anschließen.

[6] *Entertainment*, here Festlichkeit.

[7] *Grotesquely*, grotest; *got up*, here ausstaffirt.

[8] *Skin*, here Fell, forms a compound term with the plural of the nouns *leopard* and *monkey*; see page 93, note 16. *To be suspended*, hängen; *from*, von...herab.

[9] *Strapped*, mit einem Riemen ...befestigt; *upon*, here an.

[10] *They — time*, schellten sie im Tacte; *of the dance* = during the dancing (Tanzens).

[11] *In this style*, auf diese Weise; *to create*, here hervorbringen.

[12] *Heightened*, say der noch...erhöht wurde.

[13] *The beating*, das Schlagen. Retain the expression *nogaras* — a kind of drum — also in German. *Notes*, transl. Klang.

[14] Turn *wore...suspended* by 'had ...hanging,' and form a compound term of the plural of *antelope* and the singular of *horn*. *In—excitement* = in the highest excitement.

[15] *Partaking* = which had something.

[16] Turn *crowds* by 'a crowd,' and see for *men* page 65, note 16.

[17] *Rushed — round*, wirbelten im Kreise herum.

galop infernal,[1] brandishing their lances and iron-headed maces, and keeping tolerably in line five or six deep,[2] following the leader who headed[3] them, dancing backwards. The women kept[4] outside the line, dancing a slow, stupid step,[5] and screaming a wild and most inharmonious chant, while a long string[6] of young girls and small children, *their* heads[7] and necks rubbed with red ochre and grease, and prettily[8] ornamented with strings of beads around their loins,[9] kept a very good line,[10] beating the time[11] with their feet, and jingling[12] the numerous iron rings which adorned their ankles, to keep time[13] with the drums. One woman attended upon[14] the men, running through the crowd with a gourd full *of* wood ashes,[15] handfuls of which[16] she showered[17] over their heads, powdering them like millers: the object[18] of the operation I could not understand.—Sir S. W. Baker, *The Albert N'yanza.*

[1] *Galop infernal,* Höllengallop; *iron-headed* (lit. mit eisernem Knopfe), transl. here eisenbeschlagen.

[2] *Keeping—deep,* in Reihen von fünf bis sechs Mann hoch ziemlich Schritt hielten. For the construction *of following.* Compare Int. page xv., II., *a.*

[3] Render *headed* by anführte placing it after *dancing backwards.* Cf. Int. page xvii., II., *g.*

[4] *To keep,* here sich halten.

[5] *Dancing — step,* indem sie in langsamer, alberner Weise tanzten; *screaming a....chant,* transl. einen ...Gesang ausstießen.

[6] *String,* here Reihe.

[7] Use both *heads* and *necks* in the singular. *Rubbed,* eingerieben.

[8] *Prettily,* here zierlich; *strings of beads,* Perlenschnüre.

[9] Turn *around their loins* simply by 'the loins,' placing this expression before *prettily.*

[10] *To keep a very good line,* sehr gut Schritt halten.

[11] *To beat the time,* here den Takt angeben.

[12] *To jingle,* schellen.

[13] *To keep time,* transl. im gleichen Takte.

[14] *Attended upon,* transl. befand sich unter.

[15] Form a compound term of *wood* and *ashes,* which latter expression is used in German in the singular only.

[16] *Of which,* wovon, is to be placed before *handfuls,* in German 'handsful.'

[17] *To shower,* streuen; *to powder,* here pudern.

[18] *Object,* here Zweck; *operation,* Handlung.

IX.

SIR ROBERT PEEL.

Nature had combined in Sir Robert Peel many admirable parts.[1] In him a physical frame[2] incapable of fatigue was united with an understanding equally vigorous and flexible. He was gifted with the[3] faculty of method in the highest degree,[3] and with great powers of application,[4] which were sustained by a prodigious memory, while he could communicate his acquisitions[5] with clear and fluent elocution.

Such a man under any[6] circumstances and in any sphere of life[7] would probably have become remarkable.[8] Ordained from[9] *his* youth to be busied with the affairs of a great empire, such a man after long years of[10] observation, practice, and perpetual discipline[11] would have become what Sir Robert Peel was in the latter portion of his life,[12] a transcendent administrator of public business[13] and a matchless master of debate[14] in a popular assembly. In the course of time the method[15] which was natural *to* Sir Robert Peel had matured into a habit of such expertness,[16] that no one in the despatch[17] of affairs ever adapted

[1] *Parts*, here Eigenſchaften.

[2] *Physical frame*, Körperbau. Turn *incapable of* by 'which knew no;' *flexible*, geſchmeidig.

[3] *The—degree*, einem äußerſt methodiſchen Sinn.

[4] *Powers of application*, transl. Arbeitskraft; *to sustain*, unterſtützen.

[5] *His acquisitions*, ſeine erworbenen Kenntniſſe, or, more briefly and more comprehensively, das Erworbene. *Elocution* = eloquence.

[6] *Any*, here alle; the subsequent *any* is synonymous with 'every.'

[7] *Sphere of life*, Lebensſphäre.

[8] *To become remarkable*, ſich auszeichnen.

[9] *Ordained from*, von...auf dazu beſtimmt; *to be busied*, ſich beſchäftigen.

[10] *Long years of*, jahrelanger.

[11] We use in German the same expression without the final *e*.

[12] Turn *in—life* by 'in his last life's-years,' to be followed by 'namely.' *Transcendent*, vorzüglich.

[13] *Business*, here Geſchäft or Angelegenheit, to be used in the plural with the definite article.

[14] *Master of debate*, Meiſter im Debattiren; *popular* = public.

[15] *The method*, say das Methodiſche; *natural*, here eigen.

[16] *Had—expertness*, hatte ſich...zu einer ſolchen Gewandtheit ausgebildet.

[17] *Despatch*, Erledigung.

the means more fitly to the end;[1] his original flexibility[2] had ripened into consummate tact;[3] his memory had accumulated such stores[4] of political information,[5] that he could bring luminously together[6] all that was necessary to establish[7] or to illustrate a subject; *while* in the House of Commons he was equally eminent in[8] exposition and in reply:[8] in the first[9] distinguished by his arrangement, his clearness, and his completeness; in the second ready,[10] ingenious, and adroit, prompt in detecting[11] the weak points of his adversary, and dexterous in extricating himself[12] from an embarrassing position.

Thus gifted and thus accomplished,[13] Sir Robert Peel had a great deficiency;[14] he was without imagination. Wanting[15] imagination, he wanted prescience. No one was more sagacious[16] when dealing with the circumstances before him; no one penetrated[17] the present with more acuteness and accuracy. His judgment[18] was faultless, provided he had not to deal with[19] the future. Thus it happened through his long career, that while[20] he always was looked

[1] *Adapted — end,* translate die Mittel dem Zwecke beſſer anzupaſſen wußte.

[2] *Flexibility,* Geſchmeidigkeit.

[3] *Into consummate tact,* zum vollendetſten Takt.

[4] Turn *his — stores* by 'in his memory lay accumulated such a mass.'

[5] *Information,* here Wiſſen.

[6] *Bring luminously together,* klar zuſammenfaſſen.

[7] Render here *to establish* by darthun, and *to illustrate* by beleuchten.

[8] Translate *in—reply* by in der Expoſition und in Repliken. Foreign expressions are not unfrequently employed in German political writings. The literal translation of the above would be im Auseinanderſetzen und im Entgegnen.

[9] The terms *first* and *second* are, in the above signification, generally rendered by jener and dieſer.

[10] Render here *ready* by the expressive idiomatic term ſchlagfertig, meaning literally 'ready for striking,' and figuratively 'ready with a repartee.'

[11] *In detecting,* im Entdecken (der); turn *points* by 'sides.'

[12] *In — himself,* ſich... herauszuziehen; *embarrassing,* ſchwierig.

[13] Translate *Thus—accomplished* by bei all dieſen Gaben und vorzüglichen Talenten.

[14] *Had—deficiency,* transl. fehlte ...eine wichtige Eigenſchaft, *i.e.* lacked an important quality. *Imagination,* Phantaſie.

[15] *Wanting,* da ihm...fehlte; *prescience,* Vorausſicht.

[16] *Sagacious,* ſcharfſichtig; *when—him,* transl. wenn er mit factiſch vorliegenden Verhältniſſen zu thun hatte.

[17] *To penetrate,* here durchſchauen.

[18] *Judgment* (denoting the faculty of the mind), Urtheil; *faultless,* here unfehlbar.

[19] *Provided—with,* transl. vorausgeſetzt daß es ſich nicht um...handelte.

[20] Turn *thus — while* by 'thence

upon[1] as the most prudent and safest of leaders,[2] *he* ever, after a protracted display of admirable tactics, concluded his campaigns by surrendering at discretion.[3]—B. DISRAELI, *Lord George Bentinck.*

X.

A BALL AT[4] THE BASTILLE.

It was now near mid-winter,[5] and the weather stormy and rainy. But the French, never at a loss[6] where taste and ingenuity are required,[7] were as distinguished in displays of this kind[8] then as *they are* now. The inner courtyard[9] of the Bastille was carefully laid over with smooth timber, and covered with an awning[10] of blue canvas, setting weather and rain at defiance.[11] The canvas was painted blue to represent[12] the heavens, and powdered[13] with gilt stars and planets. The galleries were[14] festooned with alternate strips of white and tawny,

(daher) it came that he, although he during his long career.'

[1] *Looked upon* = considered.

[2] *Leader*, Parteiführer: use the singular.

[3] Translate the clause *ever—discretion* by seine Feldzüge nach langwierigem Aufwand von bewunderungswürdiger Taktik stets mit der Uebergabe auf Gnade und Ungnade endete.

[4] Turn *at* by 'in.' The final *e* of *Bastille* is pronounced in German. The ball described in the above extract took place in 1518, in honour of the English embassy sent to Paris in consequence of the nuptials between the Princess Mary, daughter of Henry VIII., then two years old, and the Dauphin, who was born on February 28, 1518.

[5] Turn *near mid-winter* by 'nearly in the midst of the winter.'

[6] *Never at a loss*, die nie in Verlegenheit gerathen; *ingenuity*, Erfindungsgeist.

[7] *Required*, here nöthig; *to be distinguished*, sich auszeichnen. The adverb *then* (damals) is to be placed after the reflective pronoun.

[8] The expression *in—kind* may be freely and briefly rendered by in dergleichen Arrangements.

[9] *Courtyard*, Hofraum.

[10] *And — awning*, worüber ein Zeltdach...gespannt ward.

[11] *To set at defiance*, here Trotz bieten; *weather*, here Sturm.

[12] *To represent*, darstellen. *Heavens* is to be used in the singular only.

[13] Translate *powdered* by the idiomatic expression besät, *i.e.* sown over, which is poetically used with reference to stars.

[14] Turn *were—colours* by 'were alternately with white and tawny strips, the royal colours, festooned, (travirt); *tawny*, braungelb.

the royal colours. The floor was carpeted in the same manner.[1] From the centre[2] hung an immense chandelier, "throwing such a marvellous blaze of light[3] on the starry ceiling as to rival[4] the sun." A raised[5] platform ran along the whole length of the apartment, carpeted like[6] the hall, with benches all round, covered with gold-brocade.[7] Overarching the platform *was* a latticed bower[8] of box, ivy, and evergreens,[9] from which roses and other flowers trailed. The King took *his* seat at the table on a high daïs covered with cloth of gold,[10] placing the Duchess of Alençon at his left, and next her[11] the Bishop of Ely. On his right was the papal legate, with the beautiful Countess of Borromeo, daughter of Galeazzo Visconti; next her the Earl[12] of Worcester, with[13] noblemen and ladies alternately. The gentlemen of the embassy dined[14] at tables on the floor below the platform.

Dancing[15] commenced to the sound of trumpets and fifes, and lasted until nine, when[16] supper was served[17] on gold and silver dishes; each course[18] being announced by a flourish of trumpets.[19] The supper ended, different

[1] Turn *was — manner* by 'was covered with a similar carpet.'

[2] *From the centre*, von der Mitte... herab

[3] *Blaze of light*, Lichtglanz; *starry* = star-sown. See preceding page, note 13.

[4] *As to rival* = that it rivalled.

[5] *Raised*, erhaben; *platform*, here Gerüst; *ran along* = went through.

[6] *Carpeted like* = covered with a similar carpet as.

[7] Turn *with — brocade* by 'and all round (rings herum) stood, with gold brocade covered (überzogene), benches.'

[8] Begin the above sentence by *a latticed* (gegitterte) *bower*, and place the words *overarching* (überwölbte) *the platform* after *trailed* (herunter hingen).

[9] *Evergreens*, immergrünen Sträuchern.

[10] *Cloth of gold*, Goldstoff. Arrange the above sentence, 'the King took at a table on a high, with cloth of gold covered daïs (Estrade) *his* seat' (Platz).

[11] *Next her*, neben diese.

[12] See page 31, note 7.

[13] Translate *with* by und dann, placing the adverb *alternately* immediately after it. *Noblemen* may here be rendered by vornehme Herren, and *ladies* by Damen.

[14] Render *dined* by speisten, and insert the words 'which stood' after *tables*. *Floor* (the part of a room on which we walk), Diele.

[15] Turn *dancing* by 'the dance,' and *sound* by 'music.'

[16] See page 41, note 9, No. 4.

[17] *To serve* (meals), auftragen or serviren.

[18] *Course* (at meals), Gang. Render *being* by wobei...wurde, placing the adverb before *each course*.

[19] *Flourish of trumpets*, Trompetentusch. Translate *ended* by nachdem...zu Ende war

companies of maskers successively appeared in quaint costumes ;[1] and, last of all, the King dressed in a long, close-fitting[2] vest of white satin, embroidered with gold,[3] intended to represent[4] Christ's robe, with compasses and dials, the meaning of which puzzled[5] the spectators. Then dancing recommenced,[6] and the whole was finished by[7] ladies handing round[8] to all the company confections[9] and bonbons on silver dishes. The entertainment is said[10] to have cost the King more than 450,000 crowns.—J. S. BREWER, *State Papers of the Reign of Henry VIII.*

XI.

A POPULAR[11] FALLACY.

(THAT YOU MUST LOVE ME AND LOVE MY DOG.[12])

"Good[13] sir, or good madam (as it may be[14]), we most willingly embrace[15] the offer of your friendship. We have long known[16] your excellent qualities. We have wished[17]

[1] *Quaint costumes*, seltſame Coſtüme; *last of all*, zu allerletzt.

[2] *Close-fitting*, enganliegend.

[3] *Embroidered with gold*, goldgeſtickt. See Int. p. xiv., I.

[4] *Intended to represent*, das...vorſtellen ſollte.

[5] Translate *the—puzzled* by über deren Bereutung...ſich den Kopf zerbrachen.

[6] *Recommenced*, begann . . . von Neuem.

[7] *The—by*, transl. das Feſt endete damit daß.

[8] *To hand round*, herumreichen.

[9] *Confections*, Confect; Bonbons is also used in German.

[10] *Is said (to)*, here ſoll. A French *crown* was worth about 5 shillings.

[11] *Popular*, here gangbar or allgemein; *fallacy*, Irrthum.

[12] Turn the above proverbial saying by 'he who (wer) loves me must also love my dog.'*

[13] *Good*, transl. mein lieber.

[14] *As—be*, je nachdem der Fall iſt.

[15] Turn *we—embrace* by 'we accept with the greatest pleasure.'

[16] Turn *we—known* by 'we know ...already since long.'

[17] Use the imperfect, adding the expletive längſt, and render *to have you nearer to us* by the idiomatic phrase daß Sie uns näher ſtänten.

* The German adage corresponding to the English proverbial saying runs thus :—

„Wer ſchlägt meinen Hund,
Der liebt mich nicht von Herzensgrund."

to have you nearer to us, to hold[1] you within the innermost fold *of* our heart. We can have no reserve[2] towards a person of your open and noble nature. The frankness of your humour[3] suits us exactly. We have been long looking for[4] such a friend. Quick! let us disburthen our troubles into each other's bosom;[5] let us make our single joys shine[6] by reduplication.—But, *yap, yap, yap!*[7] what is this confounded cur?[8] he has fastened[9] his tooth, which is none of the bluntest, just in the fleshy part of my leg."

"It is my dog, sir. You must love him for my sake. Here,[10] Test, Test, Test!"

"But he has bitten me."

"Ay, that he is apt to do[11] till you are better acquainted with him. I have had[12] him three years; he never bites me."

Yap, yap, yap! "He is at it again."[13]

"Oh, sir, you must not kick[14] him. He does not like to be kicked. I expect my dog to be treated with all the respect due to myself."[15]

"But do you always take him *out* with *you* when you go a-friendship-hunting?"[16]

[1] Supply 'and' before *to hold* (einſchließen); *the—fold*, tiefinnerſtes, which is to be employed as an attributive adjective to *heart*.

[2] *Have no reserve*, transl. keine Zurückhaltung beobachten. The German construction will be both more idiomatic and elegant by turning the above sentence by 'towards any one (Jemant) of your open and noble character can we have no reserve.'

[3] Transl. *The — humour* briefly by Ihre Freimüthigkeit; *to suit*, here zuſagen.

[4] Turn *We — for* by 'we have sought long after.'

[5] The idiomatic rendering of the above would be: Schnell! erleichtern wir gegenſeitig unſer Gemüth.

[6] Turn *let—shine* by 'our single (einzelnen) joys shall...shine.'

[7] The above onomatopœia, *i.e.* a word formed in imitation of a sound, would be in German Wau, wau, wau, corresponding to the English *bow-wow*.

[8] *What—cur*, was iſt das für ein abſcheulicher Köter.

[9] *He has fastened*, say er hat ſich mit...hineingebiſſen.

[10] Turn *Here* by komm, and translate the coined name *Test* by Prüf.

[11] *He—do*, thut er wohl.

[12] Omit the past participle *had*, and insert the expletive ſchon after *him*.

[13] *At it again*, ſchon wieder daran.

[14] Translate *not kick* by keine Fußtritte geben, and *to be kicked* by mit Füßen getreten werden.

[15] Turn *my—myself* by 'that one treats my dog with all to myself due (mir ſchuldigen) respect.'

[16] *Go a-friendship-hunting*, auf die Jagd nach Freunden ausgehen.

"Invariably.[1] 'Tis the sweetest, prettiest, best-conditioned animal. I call him *my* 'test,'—the touchstone by which to try[2] a friend. No one can properly be said to love me[3] who does not love him."

"Excuse us, dear sir, or madam (aforesaid[4]), if upon further consideration[5] we are obliged to decline the otherwise invaluable offer of your friendship. We do not like dogs."

"Mighty well,[6] sir; you know the conditions. You may have worse offers. Come *along*, Test!"

The above dialogue is not so imaginary,[7] but that in the intercourse of life we have had frequent occasions[8] of breaking off an agreeable intimacy[9] by reason of these canine appendages. They do not always come in the shape of dogs; they sometimes wear the more plausible and human character[10] of kinsfolk, near acquaintances, my friend's friend,[11] his partner, his wife, or his children.

We could never yet form[12] a friendship, however much to[13] our taste, without the intervention of some third anomaly,[14] some impertinent clog affixed to the relation[15]—the understood dog in the proverb.[16]—CHARLES LAMB, *The Essays of Elia.*

[1] Turn *Invariably* by 'always; *sweetest* here liebſte, and *best-conditioned*, gutmüthigſte.

[2] *By—try*, an dem ich...erprobe.

[3] Turn *No—me* by 'no one can really say that he loves me.'

[4] *Aforesaid*, vorhergenannt, to be placed, in a parenthesis, as an attributive adjective before *sir*.

[5] Translate *upon further consideration* by bei genauerer Ueberlegung, and place *we* after *if*.

[6] *Mighty well*, say ſchon recht.

[7] *So imaginary*, ſo ſehr erdichtet.

[8] Turn *but—occasions* by 'than that we not often in life had had occasion' (Veranlaſſung gehabt hätten).

[9] *Intimacy*, here Umgang.

[10] *Character*, say Gepräge.

[11] Turn *my friend's friend* by 'of the friend of my friend.' The term *partner*, denoting 'an associate in business,' is generally rendered by Aſſocié, or more frequently by Compagnon.

[12] *To form* (a friendship), ſchließen.

[13] *However much to*, wie ſehr ſie auch nach.

[14] *Anomaly*, anomalen Weſens.

[15] *Some—relation*, irgend einer ſtörenden Bürde, die ſich an das Verhältniß anhaftet.

[16] Turn *the—proverb* by 'what one understands by (unter) the dog in the proverb.'

XII.

A SINGLE COMBAT.

Gradually, one by one,[1] many of Villena's comrades[2] joined their leader; and now the green mantle of Don Alonzo de Pacheco was seen[3] waving without the copse, and Villena congratulated himself on[4] the safety of his brother. Just at that moment a Moorish[5] cavalier spurred from his troop, and met[6] Pacheco in full career.[7] The Moor was not clad, as was the common custom of the Paynim nobles,[7] in the heavy Christian armour. He wore the light flexile mail[8] of the ancient heroes of Araby or Fez. His turban, which was protected by chains of *the* finest steel interwoven with[9] the folds, was of the most dazzling white: white, also, was his tunic and short mantle. On his left arm hung a short circular[10] shield; in his right *hand* was poised[11] a long and slender lance. As this Moor, mounted on a charger[12] in whose *raven* hue not a white hair could be detected, dashed forward against Pacheco, both Christian and Moor[13] breathed hard, and remained passive.[14] Either nation felt it as[15] a sacrilege to thwart the encounter of champions[16] so renowned.

[1] The words *Gradually, one by one*, should be placed after *joined*.

[2] *Comrade*, here Gefährte.

[3] *Was seen* = one saw; *to wave*, flattern; *without*, außerhalb.

[4] *To congratulate oneself* (*on*), sich Glück wünschen (zu).

[5] The words *Moorish*, *Moor*, are generally rendered by maurisch, Maure, when they refer more especially to the descendants of the Arabs on the north-west coast of Africa, whilst *Moor*, signifying a man of negro race, is called Mohr or Neger. Spurred forwards.

[6] *To meet*, zusammentreffen (mit).

[7] *Paynim nobles*, transl. vornehme Ungläubige.

[8] *Flexile mail*, biegsame Rüstung.

[9] *Interwoven with*, welche in...eingewoben waren.

[10] *Circular* = round.

[11] *Was poised*, say balancirte er.

[12] *Mounted on a charger*, der einen Rappen ritt. The term Rappe, being allied to the word Rabe, *raven*, denotes in German a black horse.

[13] Use the nouns *Christian* and *Moor* in the plural, and render *breathed hard* by athmeten tief auf.

[14] *To remain passive*, sich ruhig verhalten.

[15] Turn *felt it as* by 'felt that it would be;' *sacrilege*, here Frevel.

[16] The term *champions* is here qualified by the words *so renowned*.

"God save[1] my brave brother!" muttered Villena anxiously. "Amen!" said those around him;[2] for all who had ever witnessed the wildest valour in that war trembled as they recognised the dazzling robe and coal-black charger of Muza Ben Abel Gazan. Nor was that renowned Infidel mated with an[3] unworthy foe. "Pride of the tournament and terror of the war" was the favourite[4] title which the knights and ladies of Castille had bestowed on[5] Don Alonzo de Pacheco.

When the Spaniard saw the redoubted Moor approach, he halted abruptly for a moment; and then, wheeling his horse round,[6] took a wider circuit,[7] to give additional impetus to his charge.[8] The Moor, aware of[9] his purpose, halted also, and awaited the moment of his rush, when once more he darted[10] forward, and the combatants met with a skill which called forth a cry of involuntary applause[11] from the Christians themselves. Muza received[12] on the small surface of his shield the ponderous spear of Alonzo, while his own light lance struck upon[13] the helmet of the Christian, and by the exactness of the aim rather[14] than the weight of the blow made Alonzo reel in his saddle.

The lances were thrown aside; the long broad falchion of the Christian, the curved Damascus cimiter[15] of the Moor, gleamed in the air. They reined[16] their chargers opposite each other in grave[17] and deliberate silence.

[1] Turn *save* by 'protect,' and render *anxiously* by the poetical expression angſtbeklommen.

[2] *Those around him*, die ihn Umgebenden.

[3] *Nor was...mated with an*, auch ſollte...ſich mit keinem...meſſen.

[4] The word *favourite* placed before a noun is in German generally rendered by the genitive of Liebling, to which the qualified noun is appended.

[5] *To bestow (on)*, beilegen.

[6] *To wheel round* (a horse), ſchwenken. Supply 'he' after *took*.

[7] *Circuit*, Umlauf; *to — impetus*, um ... größere Kraft zu verleihen.

[8] *Charge*, here Angriff.

[9] *Aware of*, der ... merkte; *rush*, here Anlauf.

[10] *To dart*, here ſtürzen.

[11] *A — applause*, einen unwillkührlichen Beifallsruf.

[12] *Received*, fing...auf; *on*, transl. mit.

[13] *Struck upon*, say traf

[14] Turn *rather* by 'more;' *reel*, here wanken.

[15] *The — cimiter*, die krumme Damascenerklinge.

[16] *To rein* (a horse), anhalten; *opposite* is to be placed after *each other*.

[17] Turn *grave* by 'earnest.' and *deliberate* by 'solemn.'

"Yield thee,[1] *sir* knight!" at length cried the fierce Moor.

"False Paynim," answered Alonzo, in a voice that rang hollow through[2] his helmet, "a Christian knight is the equal of[3] a Moorish army!"

Muza made no reply,[4] but left the rein of his charger on his[5] neck; the noble animal understood the signal, and with a short impatient cry[6] rushed forward at full speed. Alonzo met the charge with *his* falchion upraised[7] and his whole body covered with his shield: the Moor bent; the Spaniards raised a shout;[8] Muza seemed stricken from his horse. But the blow of the heavy falchion had not touched him; and seemingly without an effort[9] the curved blade of his own cimiter, gliding by that part of his antagonist's throat where the helmet joins the cuirass, passed unresistingly and silently through the joints;[10] and Alonzo fell at once,[11] and without a groan,[12] from his horse, his armour to all appearance[13] unpenetrated, while the blood oozed[14] slow and gurgling from a mortal[15] wound.—

BULWER, *Leila, or the Conquest of Granada.*

[1] *Yield thee*, ergib dich.

[2] *Rang ... through*, aus ... hervorklang.

[3] *Is the equal of*, wiegt ... auf.

[4] *Made no reply* = replied nothing.

[5] Translate *his* by deſſen to avoid a grammatical ambiguity.

[6] *Cry* (of a horse), Gewieher; *to rush*, here ſprengen; *at full speed*, im vollen Galopp.

[7] *Upraised*, erhoben, to be placed before *falchion*. For *his whole body* comp. Ext. 34, note *b*, and use the accusative case. *Covered* should be placed after *shield*. *To bend*, here ſich bücken.

[8] *To raise* (a shout), ausſtoßen; *stricken* = thrown.

[9] *Without an effort*, ohne Kraftanſtrengung.

[10] The whole of the clause *the curved—joints* should be turned in German in the following manner, viz. 'passed (drang) the curved blade of his own cimiter (Damaſcenerer), whilst it glided there (da ... hineinglitt) into the neck of his antagonist, where the helmet joins the cuirass (ſich der Rüſtung anſchließt), without resistance and silently (leiſe) through the joints' (Fugen).

[11] *Fell at once*, ſtürzte ſofort.

[12] *Groan* = sigh.

[13] *To all appearance*, allem Anſchein nach; *unpenetrated* = not penetrated.

[14] *Oozed ... from*, aus ... hervordrang, *gurgling*, quillend.

[15] When *mortal* is used in the signification of 'destructive to life,' it is rendered by tödtlich.

XIII.

GERMAN POETRY.

Those of us (and they are many[1]) who owe a great debt of gratitude[2] to the German spirit and to German literature, do not like to be told of any powers being lacking there;[3] we are like the young ladies[4] who think the hero of their novel is only half a hero unless he has all perfections united in him.[5] But Nature does not work,[6] either *in* heroes or races, according to the young ladies' notion.[7] We all are[8] what we are, the hero and the great nation are what they are, by our limitations as well as by[9] our powers, by lacking something as well[10] as by possessing something.

It is not always gain[11] to possess this or that gift, or loss to lack this or that gift. Our great, our only first-rate body of contemporary poetry[12] is the German; the grand business[13] of modern[14] poetry, a moral interpretation[15] from an independent point of view of man and the world, it is only German poetry, Goethe's poetry, that has, since the

[1] Translate here *they are many* by es gibt deren viele.

[2] *Owe—gratitude*, zu großem Danke verpflichtet sind.

[3] Turn *to—there* by 'to hear that it lacks (entbehre) any powers' (Eigenschaften).

[4] Translate here *ladies* by Mädchen, and turn *think* by 'believe.' *Novel*, Roman.

[5] *Has...united in him* = unites in himself.

[6] *Work*, here schafft; *either...or* = neither...nor.

[7] Render *young ladies' notion* by Mädchenphantasie.

[8] Supply here the demonstrative das.

[9] *By*, translate in Folge. *Limitation*, here Beschränktheit.

[10] *By—well*, sowohl dadurch daß uns etwas mangelt. The translation of this clause will give the student a clue how to translate the following one.

[11] Supply the indefinite article before *gain* and *loss*.

[12] Turn *Our—poetry* by 'our only (einzig) great contemporary poetic school of first rank' (Rang). The expression *contemporary* is to be rendered here by zeitgenössisch, an adjective formed by modern German writers from the noun Zeitgenosse, in analogy of eitgenössisch, from Eitgenosse.

[13] Render *business* by Aufgabe.

[14] Retain the same expression, and turn *a* by 'namely, the.'

[15] *Interpretation*, Interpretation. Insert here the words *of man and the world*, and turn *it—has* by 'has only in German poetry, in Goethe's poetry.'

Greeks, made much way with.[1] Campbell's power of[2] style, and the natural magic of Keats and Wordsworth, and Byron's Titanic personality, may be wanting[3] to his poetry; but see[4] what it has accomplished without them! How[5] much more than Campbell with his power of style, and Keats and Wordsworth with their natural magic, and Byron with his Titanic personality! Why,[6] for the immense, serious task it had to perform, the steadiness of German poetry, its going near the ground, its patient fidelity to nature, its using great plainness of speech, poetical drawbacks in one point of view, were safeguards and helps in another.—MATTHEW ARNOLD, *Study of Celtic Literature.*

XIV.

EMBARKATION OF AN ATHENIAN FLEET.[7]

At daybreak on the day appointed,[8] when all the ships were ready in Peiræus[9] for departure, the military force was marched down in a body[10] from the city and embarked. They were accompanied by nearly the whole population,

[1] *Made — with*, bedeutende Fortſchritte gemacht.

[2] Turn *power of* by 'vigorous.'

[3] *Wanting*, here abgehen or fehlen.

[4] Translate here *see* by bedenkt, *i.e.* 'consider,' and supply nicht Alles after *it*.

[5] *How* is in the above phrase generally rendered by um wie.

[6] The whole of the following sentence, from *why* to *another*, must be arranged in a completely different manner, in order to obtain an idiomatic version, viz.: 'Indeed the steadiness (Solidität) of the German poetry, its going near the ground (ihr niedriger Flug), its patient fidelity to nature, the great simplicity of its language, however much all these (wie ſehr dies Alles), considered from one point of view, are drawbacks (Mängel), formed (ſo bildeten ſie doch), considered from another point of view, safeguards and helps (Schutz- und Beförderungsmittel) for the fulfilment of its immense, serious task.'

[7] The above extract refers to the departure of an Athenian fleet, 416 B.C., for Sicily, to assist the town of Segesta against the town of Selinus. The commanders were Alcibiades Nicias and Lamachus.

[8] The past participle *appointed* qualifies here the noun *day*. For *when* see page 41, note 9.

[9] The proper name Piräus is used in German with the definite article.

[10] Turn *the—body* by 'the whole

metics[1] and foreigners as well as citizens; so that the appearance was that[2] of a collective emigration, like the flight to Salamis sixty-five years before. While the crowd of foreigners brought thither by curiosity[3] were amazed by the grandeur of the spectacle, the citizens accompanying were[4] moved by deeper and more stirring anxieties.[5] Their sons, brothers, relatives, and friends were just starting on[6] the longest and largest enterprise which Athens had ever[7] undertaken; against an island extensive as well as powerful, known to none of them accurately,[8] and into a sea[9] of undefined possibilities; glory and profit on the one side, but hazards[10] of unassignable magnitude on the other. At this final parting ideas of doubt and danger became far more painfully present[11] than *they had been* in any of the preliminary discussions; and in spite of all the reassuring effect of the unrivalled armament before them,[12] the relatives now separating at the water's edge[13] could not banish the dark presentiment that they were bidding each other farewell for the last time.[14]

The moment immediately succeeding this farewell—when all *the* soldiers were already on board, and the keleustês[15] was on the point of beginning his chant to put

military force (Kriegsmacht) marched down.'

[1] Supply the preposition von before *metics*, which term being derived from the Greek *μέτοικος*, is rendered in German by Metöken. The *metics* were in Athens aliens who were allowed to settle in the city on payment of a tax.

[2] *The — that*, es das Aussehen... hatte, *collective emigration*, Gesammtauswanderung; *before* is to be placed after *Salamis*.

[3] Turn *brought — curiosity* by 'whom curiosity had tempted hither' (angelockt); *amazed*, in Erstaunen gesetzt.

[4] *The—were*, waren die sie begleitenten Bürger.

[5] *More stirring anxieties*, aufregenderen Besorgnissen.

[6] *Were—on*, waren im Begriff sich auf...zu begeben. *Large* may here be rendered by großartig, and *enterprise* by Expedition.

[7] *Ever*, here je.

[8] *Accurately*, genau.

[9] Render here *sea* by Meer, and not by See; the latter expression being rarely used figuratively.

[10] Turn *hazards* by 'dangers,' and render *of unassignable* by von unberechenbarer.

[11] Render *ideas—present* by traten ihnen die Gedanken an die Ungewißheit und die Gefahren viel schmerzlicher vor die Seele, and *preliminary discussions* by Berberathungen.

[12] Turn *of—them* by 'which the present incomparable armament (Kriegsflotte) made.'

[13] Turn *water's edge*, by 'shore.'

[14] *Bidding—time*, sich ein letztes Lebewohl zuriefen.

[15] Retain the above Greek expression also in German. The office

the rowers in motion—was peculiarly solemn and touching. Silence having been enjoined and obtained by sound of trumpet,[1] both the crews in every ship and the spectators on shore followed the voice of the herald in praying to the gods for success[2] and in singing[3] the pæan. On every deck were seen[4] bowls of wine prepared, out of which the officers and the epibatæ[5] made libations with goblets of silver and gold.

At length the final[6] signal was given, and the whole fleet quitted Peiræus in single file, displaying[7] the exuberance of their yet untried force by a race of speed[8] as far as Ægina. Never in[9] Grecian history was an invocation more unanimous, emphatic, and imposing addressed to the gods; never was the refusing nod[10] of Zeus more stern[11] or peremptory.—GEORGE GROTE, *History of Greece.*

of the *keleustês* was 'to give by his chaunt the time in which the rowers were to row.'

[1] Turn *Silence—trumpet* by 'after through a sound of trumpet (Trompetenstoß) quiet had been enjoined (geboten) and restored.'

[2] *In praying...for success*, im Gebet um Erfolg.

[3] *In singing* should be rendered, in analogy with *in praying*, by the expression Gesang; and the term *pæan* (Gr. παιάν)—a name given to hymns chanted to Apollo before battles, &c.—retained in German.

[4] Turn *were seen* by 'one saw,' or rather freely by 'stood;' *bowls of*, Gefäße mit; render *prepared* by in Bereitschaft.

[5] Retain the term *epibatæ* also in German. The epibatæ corresponded to the English marines, and the German Seesoldaten. *To make libations*, Trankopfer darbringen.

[6] Turn here *final* by 'last.'

[7] *Displaying*, indem sie kundgaben; *untried*, unerprobt.

[8] *By—speed*, in einem Wettrudern, *as far as* = until.

[9] Supply the words 'in the course of the,' and turn *invocation* by 'prayer,' placing it after *imposing* (ergreifend).

[10] *Refusing nod*, versagende Kopfschütteln.

[11] Render *stern* by streng, and *peremptory* by the foreign form of this term.

XV.

THE CHARGE[1] AT BALAKLAVA.

Our eyes were turned[2] in a moment on our own cavalry. We saw Brigadier-General Scarlett ride along in front of his massive squadrons.[3] The Russians—evidently *corps d'élite*,[4] their light blue jackets embroidered with silver lace[5]—were advancing on[6] their left, at an easy gallop, towards the brow of the hill. A forest of[7] lances glistened in their rear, and several squadrons of grey-coated[8] dragoons moved up[9] quickly to support them as they reached the summit. The instant they came in sight[10] the trumpets of our cavalry gave out a warning blast,[11] which told us all that in another moment we should see the shock of battle[12] beneath our *very* eyes.

[1] *Charge*, here Cavallericangriff; *at*, bei.—The above extract describes a well-known, brilliant episode which occurred during the Crimean war near Balaklava, a small town seven miles from Sebastopol.

[2] *To turn*, here richten; turn *in a* by 'in the next;' *Brigadier-General*, Brigade-General.

[3] Arrange the clause *ride—squadrons* in the following manner, 'the front of his massive (richten) squadrons along (entlang) ride.'

[4] Employ the expression *corps d'élite* or Elitencorps with the indefinite article. The expressive literal equivalent, auserlesene or ausgewählte Truppen, is also frequently used.

[5] Turn *their—lace* by 'in light blue with silver lace embroidered jackets.' When *lace* is synonymous with 'string' or 'cord,' it is rendered by Schnüre.

[6] *On*, here zu; *at an*, im; *brow* (of a hill), Gipfel.

[7] Do not form here a compound expression, but render *of* by the corresponding preposition, though the compound term Lanzenwald occurs in poetical diction.

[8] The literal German equivalent of *grey-coated* is graurückig or graugerockt, but these expressions are hardly admissible in serious style. Turn, therefore, *grey-coated* by 'with grey coats,' placing this expression after *dragoons*, or say simply 'grey dragoons.'

[9] *To move up*, heranrücken.

[10] Turn *The—sight* by 'as soon as they became visible.'

[11] The clause *gave—blast* may be rendered by stießen einen Warneton aus, and *told* turned by 'announced.' But the term Ton seems hardly expressive enough for the word *blast*, and we could obtain a vigorous and idiomatic rendering by turning the whole of the above clause by 'announced to us a warning trumpet-blast (Trompetenstoß) of our cavalry that we should see in the next moment,' &c.

[12] The expression *the shock of battle* may here be briefly rendered by den Zusammenstoß. *Beneath* = before.

Lord Raglan, all his[1] staff and escort, and groups of officers, the Zouaves,[2] French generals and officers, and bodies of[3] French infantry on the height, were spectators of the scene, as though they were looking on the stage[4] from the boxes of a theatre. Nearly every one dismounted and sat down, and not a word was said.[5] The Russians advanced from the hill at a slow canter,[6] which they changed to a trot, and at last nearly halted. Their first[7] line was at least double the length of ours;[8] it was three times as deep. Behind them was a similar line, equally strong and compact. They evidently despised their insignificant-looking enemy, but their time was come.[9] The trumpets again rang out[10] through the valley, and the Greys[11] and Enniskilleners went right at[12] the centre of the Russian cavalry. The space between them was only a few hundred yards;[13] it was scarce enough to let the horses "gather way,"[14] nor had the men quite space sufficient for the full play[15] of their sword arms. The Russian line brings forward each wing[16] as our cavalry advance, and threatens to annihilate them as they pass on. Turning[17] a little to *their* left, so as[18] to meet the Russian right, the

[1] Turn *all his* by 'his whole.'

[2] The proper name Zuave follows in German, like all other names of nations ending in e, the weak declension.

[3] *Bodies of*, Abtheilungen von.

[4] *Stage* (of theatres), Bühne; *boxes* (also of theatres), Logen, with the g soft, as in French.

[5] *Said* = spoken.

[6] *At a slow canter*, im kurzen Galopp; *to a trot*, in Trab.

[7] *First*, vorderſte, or simply erſte.

[8] *Double—ours*, noch einmal ſo lang als unſere.

[9] Turn *their—come* by the idiomatic phrase ihre Stunde hatte geſchlagen.

[10] *The—out*, von Neuem erſcholl Trompetengeſchmetter.

[11] The proper names *Greys* and *Enniskilleners* are generally rendered in German by die ſchottiſchen Grauen and Enniskiller Dragoner.

[12] Render *went right at* by rückten gerade auf...los.

[13] An English yard is more than a German Elle, but it will suffice here to render the word *yards* by Schritt, turning *a few* by 'several.'

[14] *Gather way*, einen Anlauf zu nehmen.

[15] Transl. here *play* by Gebrauch. For *sword arm* we say in German 'right arm.'

[16] Turn *The—wing* by 'the two wings of the Russian line march forward' (rücken vor), and render the expression *advance* by avanciren. For the word *as*, occurring above twice, see page 43, note 11. *Pass on*, ſich vorwärts bewegen.

[17] The expression *the Greys*, occurring next page, forms here the subject of the sentence, which must be introduced by the conjunction indem: see Int. p. xv., II., *a*.

[18] *So as* um. Turn the expres-

Greys rush on[1] with a cheer that thrills to every heart: the wild shout of the Enniskilleners rises[2] through the air at the same instant. As lightning flashes[3] through a cloud, the Greys and Enniskilleners pierced through the dark masses of Russians. The shock[4] was but for a moment. There was a clash of steel and a light play of swordblades in the air,[5] and then the Greys and the red-coats disappear in the midst of the shaken[6] and quivering columns. In another[7] moment we see them emerging and dashing on[8] with diminished numbers and in broken order against the second line, which is advancing against them as fast as it can to retrieve[9] the fortune of the charge. It was a terrible moment. "God help them;[10] they are lost!" was the exclamation of more than one man, and the thought of many. With unabated[11] fire the noble hearts dashed at their enemy. It was a fight of heroes. The first line of Russians, which had been smashed[12] utterly by our charge, and had fled off at one flank and towards[13] the centre, were coming back to swallow up[14] our handful *of* men.

By sheer steel and sheer courage[15] Enniskillener and Scot were winning their desperate way right[16] through the enemy's squadrons, and already grey horses and red coats had appeared right at the rear[17] of the second mass, when

sion *the Russian right* by 'the right wing of the Russians.'

[1] Supply 'they' before *rush on*, stürmen...heran. Transl. *with a cheer* by mit einem Hurrah, and *thrills to* by durchbebt.

[2] *Rises*, say erſchallt.

[3] *To flash*, here fahren.

[4] *Shock*, Zuſammenſtoß: the term Chef, pronounced like its English equivalent, is, as a military term, also used in German. *Was but for* = lasted only.

[5] The clause *There—air* requires in German a free rendering. The version die Schwerter klirrten und durchblitzten die Luft will convey the author's meaning.

[6] *Shaken*, erſchüttert; *column* (as a military term), Colonne.

[7] Turn *in another* by 'in the next.'

[8] *Dashing on*, losſtürmen; *with—order*, in verminderter Anzahl und in Unordnung.

[9] *To retrieve*, herſtellen; *charge*, here Gefecht.

[10] *Help them*, here ſteh' ihnen bei.

[11] *Unabated*, ungeſchwächt.

[12] *Smashed*, here vernichtet.

[13] *At — towards*, auf der einen Flanke und gegen...zu.

[14] *To swallow up*, verſchlingen.

[15] Turn *By—courage* by 'through steel and courage alone.'

[16] Render *Enniskillener — right* by bahnten ſich die Enniskiller und Schotten einen gefahrvollen Weg gerade, and turn *enemy's* by 'hostile.'

[17] *Right—rear*, nicht hinter.

with irresistible force, like one bolt[1] from a bow, the 1st Royals,[2] the 4th Dragoon Guards, and the 5th Dragoon Guards rushed at the remnants of the first line of the enemy, went through it[3] as though it were made of pasteboard, and dashing on the second body of Russians as they were still disordered[4] by the terrible assault of the Greys and their companions, put them to utter rout.[5] This Russian horse[6] in less than five minutes after it met our dragoons was flying with all its[7] speed before a force certainly not half its strength.[8] A cheer burst[9] from every lip; in the enthusiasm officers and men[10] took off their caps and shouted with delight;[11] and, thus keeping up the scenic[12] character of their position, they clapped their hands[13] again and again. Lord Raglan at once despatched Lieutenant Curzon, aide-de-camp, to convey his congratulations[14] to Brigadier-General Scarlett, to say,[15] "Well done!"—W. H. RUSSELL, *The War in the Crimea.*

1 *One bolt,* ein Bolzen.

2 *The 1st Royals,* das erſte königliche Garderegiment. Turn the following clause by 'the fourth and fifth regiment of the Dragoon Guards' (Garde-Dragoner).

3 *Went through it,* durch dieſelbe drangen; *body,* here Corps.

4 *Were still disordered,* ſich noch immer in Unordnung befanden.

5 *Put—rout,* ſchlugen ſie gänzlich in die Flucht, or briefly warfen ſie gänzlich.

6 *Horse* = cavalry; *to meet,* here zuſammentreffen (mit)

7 Turn *all its* by 'the greatest.'

8 In German we can express the clause *before—strength* concisely by turning it by 'before a certainly not half so numerous force.'

9 *A cheer burst,* ein Beifallsruf (or ein Hurrah) erſcholl.

10 *Men,* here Gemeine, *i.e.* privates, or simply Soldaten.

11 *To shout with delight,* vor Freude jauchzen; *thus,* here ſo; *to keep up,* aufrecht erhalten.

12 *Scenic,* theatraliſch.

13 *They—hands,* klatſchten ſie...in die Hände.

14 *To—congratulations,* um ... ſeinen Glückwunſch zu überbringen.

15 Supply 'to him,' and render *Well done!* by Bravo!

XVI.

A LETTER FROM COLERIDGE.[1]

Dear Poole,

From October 1779 to 1781.—I had asked[2] my mother one evening to cut my cheese entire, so that I might[3] toast it. This was no easy matter,[4] it being *a* 'crumbly' cheese. My mother, however, did it. I went into the garden for something or other,[5] and in the meantime my brother Frank minced[6] my cheese, to disappoint[7] the favourite. I returned, saw the exploit, and, in an agony of passion,[8] flew at Frank. He pretended[9] to have been seriously hurt by my blow, flung himself on the ground, and there lay with outstretched limbs. I hung[9] over him mourning and in *a* great fright; he leaped up, and, with *a* horse-laugh,[10] gave me a severe blow on the face. I seized a knife, and was running at[11] him, when my mother came in and took me by the arm. I expected a flogging,[12] and, struggling from her, I ran away to a little hill or slope, at the bottom of which[13] the Otter flows, about a mile from

[1] The above is an extract from one of five letters which Coleridge addressed to his friend, Mr. Poole, describing his early years.

[2] *Asked* is here synonymous with 'requested;' *to—entire* should be turned by 'to cut me off the cheese in one piece.'

[3] Render *might* by könnte. *To toast*, transl. rösten or braten. In Germany cheese is not 'toasted,' and there exists no distinctly corresponding German expression.

[4] Turn *no easy matter* by 'not easy,' and see for *being* Int. page xvi., *c*; *crumbly*, krümelig. *Did it*, say brachte es zu Stande.

[5] *For—other*, say um irgent etwas zu holen.

[6] *To mince* means klein hacken or schneiden, but may be rendered here by zerbröckeln.

[7] *To disappoint*, transl. zu ärgern, *i.e.* to vex, annoy.

[8] *In—passion*, briefly in einem Wuthanfall; *to fly at*, losstürzen auf.

[9] *Hung*, here beugte mich.

[10] *Horse-laugh*, lautes Gelächter; *severe*, here tüchtig; *on* = into.

[11] *To run at any one*, auf Jemand zulaufen.

[12] *A flogging*, say Schläge; *struggling*, mich losreißend.

[13] Turn *at—which* by 'at whose foot.' The proper name *Otter* may be used in German as feminine, in accordance with the rule that most proper names of rivers are feminine, even those ending in er, as die Tiber.

Ottery. There I stayed: my rage died away,[1] but my obstinancy vanquished my fears,[2] and taking out a shilling book which had[3] at the end morning and evening prayers,[4] I very devoutly repeated them, thinking[5] at the same time, with a gloomy inward satisfaction, how miserable my mother must be! I distinctly remember my feelings when I saw a Mr. Vaughan pass over the bridge, at about a furlong's distance,[6] and how I watched[7] the calves in the fields beyond the river. It grew dark, and I fell asleep. It was towards *the* end *of* October, and it proved a stormy night.[8] I felt cold in my sleep,[9] and dreamed that I was pulling the blanket over me, and actually pulled over me a dry thorn-bush which lay on the ground near me. In my sleep I had rolled from the top of the hill till within[10] three yards of the river, which flowed by the unfenced[11] edge of the bottom. I awoke several times, and finding myself[12] wet, and cold, and stiff, closed my eyes again that I might[13] forget it.

In the meantime my mother waited about half an hour, expecting my return when the 'sulks' had evaporated.[14] I not returning,[15] she sent into the churchyard and round the town. Not found![16] Several men and all the boys were sent out to ramble about[17] and seek me. In vain! My mother was almost distracted;[18] and at ten o'clock at

[1] *Died away,* here legte ſich.

[2] Use the singular only, and form a compound term of *skilling* and *book*.

[3] *Had,* transl. enthielt.

[4] See page 93, note 16.

[5] The verb denken requires the preposition an. See page 97, note 2, and introduce the finite verb by während.

[6] *At — distance,* transl. ungefähr einige hundert Schritt von mir entfernt. The term Schritt is generally employed in German in order to express distance, especially when less than a mile.

[7] *To watch,* here beobachten.

[8] Turn *it—night* by 'the night became stormy.'

[9] *I — sleep,* mir ward kalt im Schlafe. Supply the nominative or dative of the first personal pronoun before *dreamed*. *Ground,* signifying surface of land, Boden.

[10] *Within,* here bis ungefähr. The expression *yards* may in the above clause be retained in German.

[11] *By the unfenced,* am uneingehegten; *bottom* = foot.

[12] Turn *finding myself* by 'since I found that I was.'

[13] Turn *that I might* by 'in order to.'

[14] *When—evaporated,* ſobald meine üble Laune vergangen.

[15] See Int. page xvi., *c*.

[16] Turn here *found* by the supine.

[17] *To ramble about,* umher ſtreifen.

[18] The term *distracted* is here to be rendered by außer ſich.

night[1] I was cried by the crier in Ottery, and in two villages near it, with a reward offered for me. No one went to bed; indeed I believe half the[2] town were up all the night.

To return to myself.[3] About five in the morning, or a little after, I was broad[4] awake, and attempted to get up and walk; but I could not move. I saw the shepherds and workmen at a[5] distance, and cried,[6] but so faintly, that it was impossible to hear me thirty yards off.[7] And there I might[8] have lain and died; for I was now almost given over, the ponds and even the river having been dragged.[9] But, providentially,[10] Sir Stafford Northcote, who had been out[11] all night, resolved to make one other trial, and came so near that he heard me crying.[12] He carried me in his arms *for* nearly a quarter *of a* mile, when we met my father and Sir Stafford Northcote's servants. I remember, and never shall forget, my father's face as[13] he looked upon me while I lay in the servant's[14] arms—so calm, and the tears stealing down his face;[15] for I was the child of his old age. My mother, as you may suppose, was outrageous with[16] joy. Meantime in rushed a young lady, crying out,[17] "I hope you'll whip him,[18] Mrs. Coleridge." This woman still lives at Ottery; and neither philosophy nor religion has been able to conquer the antipathy which I feel towards her, whenever I see her. I

[1] Translate *at night* by Nachts, *cried* by ausgerufen, and *near it* by in der Nähe. Turn *with* by 'and.'

[2] See page 31, note 18. *Were up*, blieb...auf.

[3] *To — myself* is idiomatically rendered by um auf mich selbst zurückzukommen. *After* = later.

[4] *Broad*, transl. vollkommen.

[5] *At a* = in the.

[6] The verb *cried* is here synonymous with 'called,' and not with 'wept;' use therefore rufen.

[7] *Thirty yards off*, auf dreißig Yard.

[8] Use the verb können and see p. 52, note 1. *Given over*, aufgegeben.

[9] We use in German for *to drag*, in the above signification, the allied expression treggen.

[10] Render here *providentially* by glücklicher Weise.

[11] *Had been out* may here be translated by the idiomatic expression auf den Beinen gewesen. Turn *all* by 'the whole,' and *one other* by 'yet one.'

[12] See above, note 6, and Int. page xviii.

[13] Turn *I—as* by 'I remember the face of my father—and shall never forget it—how.'

[14] *Servant*, here Diener.

[15] *The—face*, die Thränen ihm über die Wangen liefen; *old age*, in German briefly Alter.

[16] *Outrageous with*, transl. außer sich vor.

[17] *Crying out*, say mit dem Ausrufe.

[18] *Whip him*, ihm Prügel geben.

was put to bed,[1] and recovered in a day or so.[2] But I was certainly injured,[3] for I was weakly and subject to ague[4] for many years after.—S. T. Coleridge, *Biographia Literaria.*

XVII.

PIGEON CHASE[5] IN SAMOA.

One of the most popular of Samoan amusements[6] is pigeon catching. There are places in the wood[7] expressly prepared for[8] and devoted to the sport from time immemorial, called Tia. Great preparations are made for[9] the expedition, which may[10] remain on the hills for a month or more. Pigs, yams,[11] taro, and breadfruit are cooked in abundance; and nearly all the people of the village accompany their chiefs.[12] Arrived at the Ita (Tia), the bush is cleared off,[13] huts run up, and stones placed to form the circle[14] round which the chiefs sit in ambush, under green boughs cut fresh every day from the trees. By his side[15]

[1] *Put to bed,* zu Bette gebracht.

[2] *In — so,* translate ungefähr nach einem Tage.

[3] *I — injured,* transl. es hatte mir jedenfalls geschadet.

[4] *Subject to ague,* dem kalten Fieber unterworfen; *for,* here während, and *after,* darauf.

[5] Form in German the compound expression *pigeons-chase. Samoa* is one of the Navigator islands.

[6] *Most popular — amusements,* beliebtesten Vergnügungen auf Samoa; *pigeon catching,* Taubenfang.

[7] Arrange in German, 'In the wood there are places, called Tia.'

[8] *Expressly — for,* die eigens dazu eingerichtet sind. Place *to the sport devoted* after *immemorial.*

[9] *For,* here zu. The following noun may be retained in German.

[10] The notion of possibility may here be expressed in German by wohl, and *or more* rendered by auch länger.

[11] *Yams,* Yamswurzeln. These plants, which belong to the *genus Dioscorea,* form, when prepared, a nutritious food. The same is the case with the plant *taro,* which is of the *genus Arum,* and called in German der schildförmige Aron, or simply Taro. The expression *bread-fruit* may be translated literally.

[12] *Chief* (of savages), Häuptling.

[13] *The — off,* wird das Buschholz weggeschafft; *to run up* (huts), aufschlagen.

[14] Turn *and — circle* by 'and stones placed in a circle.'

[15] *By his side,* neben sich, to be placed after *pigeon.*

each chief has his tame pigeon, perching[1] on a stick about three feet long, and with some fifty yards of string attached to its legs;[2] and before him lies a bamboo,[3] thirty or forty feet in length, to the small[4] end of which is fastened a net bag.[5] When all is ready, and after a drink of ava all round,[6] the tame pigeons are thrown up to fly together, while the chiefs hold the strings in their hands, and with[7] a gentle jerk make them wheel round and round the circle very prettily. The wild pigeons are attracted,[8] and fancying they are hovering over food[9] flock in amongst them. One chief after another then raises his net to entangle the wild birds, and the man who[10] catches the greatest number is *the* winner. To him[11] all the others of the company give whatever was agreed[12] before the game began—generally a quantity of food, or so many roots of ava;[13] all which is again by him divided amongst his companions, and indiscriminate feasting[14] follows.—W. T. PRITCHARD, *Polynesian Reminiscences.*

[1] Turn *perching* by 'that sits.' The term *stick* is qualified by the clause *about three feet long.*

[2] Turn *and—legs* by 'and to whose feet is attached an about fifty yards (Ellen) long string.'

[3] *Bamboo*, here Bambusrohr; *in length* = long.

[4] Turn here *small* by 'thin.'

[5] *A net bag*, ein netzartiger Sack.

[6] *After—round*, nachdem Alle einen Trunk Ava zu sich genommen. *Ava* is a fermented drink made from the root of long-pepper. *To throw up*, in die Höhe werfen.

[7] *With*, here vermittelst; *jerk*, Ruck; *make—circle*, lassen sie...herum kreisen.

[8] *Attracted*, say angelockt; *fancying* = since they believe (that)

[9] *Food* (of animals), Futter; *flock in*, so mischen sie sich.

[10] Translate *the man who* simply by wer, and *winner* by Sieger.

[11] Place *to him* after *give*.

[12] *To agree*, here bestimmen; *before the...began*, vor Anfang des.

[13] Turn *so—ava* by 'so and so many ava-roots,' and *all—divided* by 'which he all again...divides.'

[14] *Indiscriminate feasting*, eine allgemeine Schmauserei.

XVIII.

EARLY EXPERIENCES.

A lady[1] looked out of a bow-window, where some fowls[2] and *joints of* meat were hanging up, and said:

"Is that the little[3] gentleman from Blunderstone?"

"Yes, ma'am,"[4] I said.

"What[5] name?" inquired the lady.

"Copperfield, ma'am," I said.

"That won't do,"[6] returned the lady. "Nobody's dinner is paid for here[7] in that name."

"Is it Murdstone, ma'am?" I said.

"If you're Master[8] Murdstone," said the lady, "why do you *go and* give another name first?"

I explained to the lady how it was,[9] who then rang a bell and called out, "William! *show* the coffee-room;"[10] upon which a waiter came running out of the kitchen[11] on the opposite side of the yard to show it,[12] and seemed a good deal surprised when he found[13] he was only to show it to me.

It was a large long room, with some large maps[14] in it. I doubt[15] if I could have felt much stranger[16] if the maps

[1] *Lady*, here and throughout the whole extract, simply Frau; *to look out of*, herausgucken zu.

[2] *Some fowls*, Geflügel.

[3] Turn here *little* by 'young.'

[4] *Yes, ma'am*, ja wohl, Madam.

[5] Turn *what* by 'your,' and *inquired* by 'asked.'

[6] *That won't do*, das ist nicht richtig.

[7] Place the words *here is for* before *Nobody's*, render *to pay* by bezahlen, and turn *in that name* by 'who is so called (heißt).'

[8] Retain the same expression, and render *give* by angeben.

[9] Translate *how it was* by wie die Sache sich verhielt, and *who then* by worauf diese.

[10] *Coffee-room*, here Gastzimmer; *came running*, gelaufen kam.

[11] Supply 'which...lay.'

[12] *To show it*, transl. um den Gast hineinzuführen; *a good deal* = very.

[13] Supply the conjunction 'that,' and render *was—me* by daß mich hineinführen sollte.

[14] *Maps*, here Wandkarten; *in it*, transl. versehen.

[15] The verb *to doubt* requires in German the preposition an. See page 97, note 2.

[16] *If — stranger*, ob ich mich hätte fremder fühlen können. The auxiliary verb *had* in the following clause may be omitted.

had been real foreign countries, and I cast away[1] in the middle of them. I felt it was taking[2] a liberty to sit down with my cap in my hand on the corner[3] of the chair nearest the door, and when the waiter laid a cloth on purpose for me,[4] and put a set of castors[5] on it, I think I must[6] have turned red all over with modesty.

He brought me some chops[7] and vegetables, and took the covers[8] off in such a bouncing manner that I was afraid I must[9] have given him some offence. But he greatly[10] relieved my mind by putting[11] a chair for me at the table, and saying very affably, "Now, six-foot,[12] come on!"

I thanked him, and took my seat[13] at the board; but found it extremely difficult to handle[14] *my* knife and fork with anything like dexterity, or to avoid[15] splashing myself with the gravy, while he was standing opposite,[16] staring so hard,[17] and making me blush in the most dreadful manner every time I caught his eye.[18] After watching me into the second chop,[19] he said:

[1] *Cast away*, say verſchlagen werden wäre. Turn *in the middle of them* by 'in their midst.'

[2] *It was taking*, transl. daß ich mir damit...erlaubte, and turn *to—hand* by 'whilst I sat down, the cap in the hand.'

[3] *Corner*, here Rand; *nearest*, zunächſt.

[4] *Laid—me*, eigens für mich den Tiſch deckte; *to put*, here ſtellen.

[5] *A set of castors*, eine Flaſchenmenage. The letter q is pronounced in this word as in French, but the vowel e is also heard.

[6] *I think I must*, ſo muß ich wohl; *to turn red with*, erröthen vor; *all over*, über und über.

[7] The nearest approach to the term *chop* is in German Rippchen, the diminutive of Rippe, *rib*. In some parts of Germany *a chop* is called eine Carbonade or Hammel Cotelette. The last word is neuter when spelt without the final e.

[8] *Cover*, here Deckel; *in—manner*, mit ſolcher Heftigkeit.

[9] Render here *must* by the present conjunctive. *To give offence*, beleidigen; *some*, say irgendwie.

[10] *Greatly*, here bedeutend; *relieved my mind*, beruhigte mich.

[11] See Int. p. xv. II., *a*, and use the imperfect of *putting* and *saying*.

[12] A literal translation of the term *six-foot* would here be quite inadmissible. We may substitute the expression Herr Rieſe as an equivalent for the waiter's ironical designation, and render *come on* by komm Er her.

[13] *Took my seat* = sat down, *board*, here Tafel.

[14] *To handle*, handhaben; *with—dexterity*, irgendwie mit Geſchicklichkeit.

[15] Supply the pronoun es before *to avoid*, and see for the word *gravy* page 66, note 9.

[16] *Opposite*, transl. mir gegenüber.

[17] *Staring so hard*, mich ſo ſtarr anglotzend.

[18] *Every—eye*, ſo wie ich ſeinen Blicken begegnete.

[19] It is impossible to render the clause *After—chop* literally. We may translate it by nachdem ſeine

There's half a pint of ale[1] for you. Will you have it now?"

I thanked him, and said, "Yes." Upon which he poured it out of a jug into a large tumbler, and held it *up* against the light, and made it look beautiful.[2]

"My eye!"[3] he said. "It seems a good deal, don't it?"[4]

"It does seem[5] a good deal," I answered, with a smile. For it was quite delightful to me[6] to find him so pleasant.[7] He was a twinkling-eyed, pimple-faced man, with his hair standing upright all over his head;[8] and as he stood[9] *with* one arm a-kimbo, holding *up* the glass to[10] the light with the other hand, he looked[11] quite friendly.

"There was a gentleman here yesterday,"[12] he said; "a stout gentleman, by the name[13] *of* Topsawyer. Perhaps you know him?"

"No," I said, "I don't think."

"In breeches and gaiters,[14] broad-brimmed hat, grey coat, speckled choker,"[15] said the waiter.

"No," I said bashfully, "I haven't the pleasure."

"He came in here,"[16] said the waiter, looking *at the light* through the tumbler, "ordered[17] a glass of this ale—

Blicke mich verfolgt hatten, bis ich mich an die zweite Carbonnade machte.

[1] *Half — ale*, ein halbes Pint (to be pronounced as in English) Bier. Supply the participle bestellt after *you*.

[2] *And — beautiful*, so daß es wunderschön aussah.

[3] *My eye!* transl. der Tausend!

[4] *A — it?* recht viel, nicht wahr?

[5] Supply the adverb wirklich as an equivalent for the emphatic *does; with a smile* = smiling.

[6] *It — me*, ich war ganz entzückt.

[7] *Pleasant*, here freundlich.

[8] *A — head*, turn 'a man with twinkling (blinzelnden) eyes, a face full of pimples (Finnen), and a head which was covered with upright (in die Höhe) standing hair.'

[9] *Stood*, so dastand; *a-kimbo*, in die Seite gestemmt.

[10] *To*, say gegen. Place the expression *with — hand* before *holding*, connecting it with the preceding clause by means of the conjunction 'and.'

[11] *To look*, here aussehen.

[12] Place the adverb *yesterday* at the beginning of the sentence, and omit the adverb *There*.

[13] Turn *by the name* by 'with name,' placing this expression after the proper name.

[14] *Gaiters*, Gamaschen; *broad-brimmed*, mit breiter Krämpe, to be placed after *hat*, which requires in German the indefinite article.

[15] *Speckled choker*, breitem, gefleckten Halstuch.

[16] *In here*, hierher. Turn here *tumbler* by 'glass.'

[17] *To order*, in the above signification, bestellen. Use the imperfect of wollen for *would*, and supply the adverb durchaus after *it*.

'would' order it—I told him not[1]—drank it, and fell dead. It was too old for him. It oughtn't to be drawn,[2] that's the fact."

I was very much shocked[3] to hear of this melancholy accident, and said I thought I had better[4] have some water.

"Why, you see,"[5] said the waiter, still looking *at the light* through the tumbler, with one of his eyes shut up,[6] "our people don't like things being ordered and left. It offends 'em. But I'll drink it, if you like.[7] I'm used to it, and use is everything. I don't think it'll hurt me, if I throw my head back, and take it off quick.[8] Shall I?"

I replied that he would much oblige me by drinking it,[9] if he thought he could do it safely, but by no means otherwise.[10] When he did[11] throw his head back, and took it off quick, I had a horrible fear, I confess,[12] of seeing him meet the fate of the lamented[13] Mr. Topsawyer, and fall[14] lifeless on the carpet. But it didn't hurt him. On the contrary, I thought he seemed the fresher for it.[15]

"What have we *got* here?" he said, putting a fork into my dish. "Not[16] chops?"

"Chops," I said.

"Lord bless my soul!"[17] he exclaimed. "I didn't know

[1] *I—not*, transl. ich rieth ihm ab; *fell*, say ſtürzte...nieder.

[2] *To draw* (liquids from casks, &c.), zapfen; *fact*, here Sache.

[3] *Very much shocked*, äußerſt beſtürzt; turn *to hear* by 'when I heard,' and *melancholy* by 'sad;' *accident*, Unfall.

[4] *I—better*, ich möchte lieber.

[5] *Why, you see*, ja, ſehen Sie; *still looking* = whilst he still (noch immer) looked.

[6] *With—up*, und ein Auge zudrückt; *left* by 'the people here in the house do not like (mögen es nicht) that one orders things and then leaves (ſtehen läßt) them.'

[7] *Like* = will; *use* (synonymous with 'continued practice'), Gewohnheit; *to hurt*, ſchaden.

[8] *And—quick*, und es ſchnell austrinke.

[9] *By drinking it*, wenn er es trinken wollte; *safely* = without danger.

[10] *Otherwise*, ſonſt, to be placed before *but*.

[11] See preceding page, note 5.

[12] *I confess*, say ich muß geſtehen, to be placed before *a horrible fear* (Angſt); *of—meet*, transl. daß er... theilen würde.

[13] *Lamented*, beklagenswerth. The title *Mr.* may here be retained

[14] *Fall*, hinſtürzen. The auxiliary verb würde, given in the last note but one, is to be put at the end of the sentence.

[15] *On—it*, er ſchien mir, im Gegentheil, dadurch aufgefriſcht.

[16] *Not*, transl. doch nicht.

[17] *Lord—soul!* du lieber Himmel!

they were[1] chops. Why, a chop is the[2] very thing to tak off the bad effects[2] of that beer! Ain't it lucky(?"[3] So[4] he took a chop by the bone in one hand, and potato in the other, and ate away[5] with *a* very good appe tite, to my extreme satisfaction.[6] He afterwards[7] too another chop and another potato, and after that anothe chop and another potato. When we had done,[8] he brough *me* a pudding, and having set it before me,[9] seemed t ruminate, and to become absent in his mind for[10] som moments.

"How's[11] the pie?" he said, rousing himself.[12]

"It's a pudding," I made answer.[13]

"Pudding!" he exclaimed. "Why, bless me, so it is.[14] What!" looking at it nearer,[15] "you don't mean to say it' a batter-pudding?"[16]

"Yes, *it is*, indeed."

"Why,[17] a batter-pudding," he said, taking up a table spoon,[18] "is my favourite pudding. Ain't that lucky Come on, little 'un,[19] and let's see who'll get most!"

The waiter certainly got most.[20] He entreated me mor

[1] *They were*, transl. daß es... wären. *Why*, corresponding to 'indeed,' is generally rendered by wahrhaftig.

[2] *The—effects*, ist gerade das Beste um die übeln Folgen...zu vertreiben.

[3] *Ain't it lucky?* ist das nicht ein Glück?

[4] *So*, say also; *by the*, am. Supply the definite article after *in*.

[5] *Ate away*, translate aß...darauf los. Use for *appetite* the corresponding foreign expression.

[6] *To — satisfaction*, zu meiner großen Beruhigung.

[7] *Afterwards*, here dann, which adverb is to introduce the sentence; *another*, in the above signification, noch eine.

[8] *Had done*, transl. fertig waren. Retain the word *pudding*, which is in German used in the masculine gender, because it terminates in ing.

[9] *Set — me*, mir vorgesetzt hatte. Insert the pronoun 'he' after *seemed*, and render *to ruminate* by nachzubrüten.

[10] *To—for*, während...geistesabwe send zu sein.

[11] *How's*, transl. wie schmeckt. See page 28, note 13.

[12] *Rousing himself*, indem er zu sich kam.

[13] *To make answer*, entgegnen.

[14] Translate the whole sentence, *Why—is*, briefly by ja, wahrhaftig.

[15] *Looking—nearer*, indem er ihn genauer besah. *You don't mean*, Sie wollen doch nicht.

[16] Translate *batter-pudding* by Mehlpudding, *i.e.* flour-pudding, or retain the original English expression in German.

[17] See above, note 1.

[18] *Table-spoon*, Eßlöffel. For the expression *favourite* see page 125, note 4.

[19] *Little 'un*, Kleiner; *to get most*, am meisten abkriegen.

[20] *Certainly got most*, bekam entschieden am meisten ab.

than once to come in[1] and win; but what with[2] his tablespoon to my tea-spoon, his dispatch to[3] my dispatch, and his appetite to my appetite, I was left far behind[4] at the first mouthful, and had no chance[5] with him. I never saw any one enjoy a pudding so much, I think; and he laughed when it was all gone,[6] as if his enjoyment *of it* lasted still. * * *

The blowing of the coachhorn[7] in the yard was a seasonable diversion,[8] which made me get up and hesitatingly inquire, in[9] the mingled pride and diffidence of having a[9] purse (which I took out of my pocket), if *there* were anything to pay.

"*There's* nothing else,"[10] he said, "except the waiter."

"What should you—what should I—how much ought I *to*—what would it be right[11] to pay the waiter, if you please?" I stammered, blushing.

"If I had not a family, and that[12] family hadn't the cowpox," said the waiter, "I wouldn't take sixpence.[13] If I didn't support[14] an aged parent and a lovely sister"—here[15] the waiter was greatly agitated[16]—"I wouldn't take a farthing. If I had a good place, and was treated well here, I should beg acceptance[17] of a trifle instead of taking of it. But I live on broken wittles (victuals),[18] and I sleep on the coals——" Here the waiter burst into tears.

I was very much concerned for[19] his misfortunes, and

[1] *To come in*, zuzulangen.

[2] *What with*, transl. bei; *to*, here gegen.

[3] *His dispatch to*, bei ſeiner Geſchwindigkeit gegen. The preposition *to* must be repeated before *his appetite*.

[4] *I—behind*, blieb ich...weit hinter ihm zurück.

[5] Retain the same expression, pronouncing it as in French, but sounding the final *c*; *with*, here gegen.

[6] *All gone*, transl. alle; *lasted still*, noch fortdauerte.

[7] Turn *coachhorn* by 'posthorn.'

[8] *Seasonable diversion*, rechtzeitige Unterbrechung; *made*, here veranlaßte.

[9] *In—a*, mit einem Gemiſch von Stolz und Schüchternheit über den Beſitz einer.

[10] *Else*, here weiter.

[11] *What—right*, wie viel gehört es ſich, daß ich; *if you please*, here bitte.

[12] Turn *that* by 'this.'

[13] Retain this expression as well as the names of the other coins occurring further on.

[14] *To support*, here erhalten.

[15] *Here*, transl. bei dieſen Worten.

[16] *Greatly agitated*, tief bewegt.

[17] *I—acceptance*, say ſo würde ich Ihnen...anbieten.

[18] *On broken victuals*, von Ueberbleibſeln.

[19] *I—for*, ich nahm an...innigen Antheil. Use *misfortunes* in the singular.

felt that any recognition short of[1] ninepence would be mere brutality of heart.[2] Therefore I gave him one of my three bright shillings,[3] which he received with much humility and veneration,[4] and spun up[5] with his thumb directly afterwards to try the goodness of.[6]—CHARLES DICKENS, *David Copperfield*.

XIX.

JOHN ZISKA.[7]

John Ziska had not been trained[8] in any school which could have initiated him in the science of war:[9] that indeed, except in Italy, was still rude, and nowhere more so than[10] in Bohemia. But, self-taught,[11] he became one of the greatest captains[12] who had appeared hitherto in Europe. It renders[13] his exploits more marvellous, that he was totally deprived of sight. Ziska has been called[14] the inventor of the modern art of fortification:[15] the famous mountain near Prague, fanatically[16] called Tabor,

1 *Any—of*, jede Belohnung unter.

2 *Mere — heart*, reine Hartherzigkeit.

3 *Bright shillings*, blanke Schillinge.

4 *Veneration*, transl. Respect.

5 *Spun up*, in die Höhe schnellte.

6 *The goodness of*, dessen Aechtheit.

7 Johann Ziska (or Zizka) von Trocnow was born about the year 1360. When a boy he lost one eye, and an arrow deprived him of the other at the siege of the castle Rabi.

8 *To train*, in the sense of 'to educate,' erziehen.

9 *Science of war* = war's science.

10 Turn *that—than* by 'this stood indeed (überhaupt), except in Italy, on a low degree (Stufe), and nowhere lower than.'

11 The expression *self-taught* must here be freely rendered; say therefore aus eigenen Mitteln, *i.e.* by his own resources.

12 Render here *captain* by Feldherr, and *to appear* by auftreten.

13 Translate *it renders* by was... macht, and supply the expletive noch before *marvellous*, and the verb ist before *that*.

14 *Has been called*, wird genannt.

15 *Art of fortification*, Befestigungskunst.

16 *Fanatically*, fanatischer Weise. The mountain alluded to is said to have been so called after Mount Tabor in Palestine, or because the word *Tabor* signifies in the Slavonic languages a 'fence,' and hence also a 'place fenced in,' or a 'camp.'

became by his skill an impregnable intrenchment. For[1] his stratagems he has been compared to Hannibal. In battle, being destitute of[2] cavalry, he disposed at intervals ramparts of carriages[3] filled with soldiers, to defend his troops from the enemy's horse. His own station[4] was by the chief standard; where, after hearing the situation explained, he[5] gave his orders for the disposition of the army. Ziska was never defeated;[6] and his genius[7] inspired the Hussites with such enthusiastic affection,[8] that some of those who had served under him refused to obey any other general, and denominated themselves orphans in commemoration of[9] his loss.—HENRY HALLAM, *Middle Ages.*

XX.

THE GENTLEMAN.[10]

What fact[11] more conspicuous[12] in modern history than the creation of the gentleman? Chivalry is that, and

[1] Render *for* by in Bezug auf; turn *he—Hannibal* by 'one has compared him to (the) Hannibal.'

[2] *Being destitute of*, da es ihm an...mangelte; *disposed*, ſtellte...auf.

[3] *Ramparts of carriages*, Wagenburgen, *i.e.* carriage-forts. This ancient mode of erecting a barrier against the attacks of the cavalry was so far only improved by the Hussites, that they coupled the carriages together by means of iron chains, to prevent the enemy from breaking through the barricade.

[4] *Station*, here Platz; *chief standard*, Hauptſtandarte.

[5] Turn *where—he* by 'where he, after the situation was explained to him.'

[6] *To be defeated*, geſchlagen werden, use the perfect. Ziska was defeated once, at Kremsir in Moravia.

[7] *Genius*, Genie, to be pronounced as in French.

[8] *Affection* = love.

[9] *Commemoration of*, Erinnerung an.

[10] The expression *gentleman*, as a mark of character, may now be considered as quite 'naturalized' in the German language. It is pronounced as in English, and generally used without any inflection in the genitive.

[11] See page 48, note 8, and use the corresponding foreign expression. The verb 'is' should be supplied after *fact*.

[12] Turn *conspicuous* by 'remarkable,' and *modern* by 'in the newer'

loyalty is that,[1] and in English literature[2] half the drama and all the novels, from Sir Philip Sidney to Sir Walter Scott, paint this figure.[3] The word 'gentleman,' which, like the word 'Christian,'[4] must hereafter[5] characterise the present and the few preceding centuries, by the importance attached to it, is a homage[6] to personal and uncommunicable properties.[7] Frivolous and fantastic additions[8] have got associated with the name; but the steady[9] interest of mankind in it must be attributed to the valuable properties which it designates. An element which unites all the most forcible persons[10] of every country, makes them intelligible and agreeable to each other,[11] and is somewhat so precise that it is at once felt[12] if an individual lack[13] the masonic sign, cannot be any casual[14] product, but must be an average result[15] of the character and faculties universally found in men. It seems a certain permanent average;[16] as the atmosphere is a permanent composition, whilst so many gases are combined[17] only to be decompounded.

'Comme il faut' is the Frenchman's description[18] of good society—'as we must be.' It is a spontaneous fruit[19]

[1] Translate *Chivalry—that* by er iſt der Inbegriff von Ritterlichkeit und Loyalität.

[2] Insert here the verb *paint*, rendering it by ſchildern; *half the*, die Hälfte der; *all the*, ſämmtliche.

[3] *Figure*, say Erſcheinung.

[4] Insert here the clause *by the importance attached to it*, rendering it by wegen der Wichtigkeit die ihm beigelegt wird.

[5] *Hereafter*, say in ſpätern Zeiten; *few preceding*, letztvergangenen.

[6] Render here *homage* by Würdigung, using the following adjectives in the genitive plural.

[7] *Properties*, in the above sense, Eigenſchaften.

[8] Translate *additions* by Aeußerlichkeiten, and *have got associated* by ſind...verknüpft worden.

[9] *Steady*, here andauernd; *in it*, an demſelben.

[10] *The — persons*, die tüchtigſten Perſönlichkeiten.

[11] *Makes them...to each other*, das bewirkt, daß ſie einander...werden.

[12] *It is...felt*, es ſich...herausfühlt.

[13] *To lack*, fehlen or mangeln, which verbs require the dative of the person.

[14] *Casual*, zufällig. The following noun is also used in German.

[15] *Average result*, Durchſchnittsreſultat; *universally — men*, die wir allgemein im Menſchen finden.

[16] Turn *It—average* by 'the average seems to be a certain, permanent *one*.' *So many*, ſo und ſo viele.

[17] *Are combined*, ſich verbinden. Turn *be* by 'become,' and render *decompounded* by zerſetzt.

[18] Translate *description* by Charakteriſirung, and *of good* by der feinen.

[19] *A — fruit*, das ſpontane Erzeugniß

of talents and feelings of precisely that[1] class who have[2] most vigour, who take the lead[3] in the world of this hour, and,[4] though far from pure, far from constituting[5] the gladdest and highest tone of human feeling, is as good as the whole[6] society permits it to be. It is made of the spirit more[7] than of the talent of men,[8] and is a compound result, into which every great force enters as an ingredient,[9] namely, virtue, wit, beauty, wealth, and power. —RALPH WALDO EMERSON, *Essays.*

XXI.

CIVILIZATION IN AMERICA.

Munificent bequests and donations for public purposes, whether charitable or educational,[10] form a striking feature in the modern history of the United States, and especially of New England. Not only is it common for rich capitalists to leave by will[11] a portion of their fortune towards the endowment[12] of national institutions, but individuals[13] during their lifetime make magnificent grants of money[14]

[1] *Of precisely that,* gerade derjenigen.

[2] See page 72, note 3.

[3] *To take the lead,* an der Spitze stehen. Render *of this hour* by „eutig, using it as an attributive adjective before *world.*

[4] Supply the relative pronoun die; *far from,* weit davon entfernt... zu sein.

[5] *Far from constituting,* weit entfernt...auszumachen.

[6] Render *the whole* by im Allgemeinen, placing this expression after *society. Permits it to be,* es zuläßt.

[7] *It—more,* er ist mehr das Product des Geistes.

[8] Use the singular. *Compound result,* Gesammtresultat.

[9] *Into — ingredient,* zu dem jede große Kraft...ein Bestandtheil liefert.

[10] *For — educational,* briefly zu wohlthätigen oder Erziehungszwecken bestimmt.

[11] Turn *Not—will* by 'it is not only usual that rich capitalists... leave by will' (vermachen).

[12] *Towards the endowment,* zur Dotation; *national institutions,* öffentliche Anstalten.

[13] Turn *individuals* by 'persons;' *during their lifetime,* bei Lebzeiten.

[14] *Grants of money,* Geldschenkungen.

for the same objects. There is here no compulsory law[1] for the equal partition of property among children, as in France; and, on the other hand,[2] no custom of entail or primogeniture, as in England: so that the affluent[3] feel themselves at liberty to share their wealth between their kindred and the public;[4] it being impossible to found a family, and parents having frequently the happiness of seeing all their children well provided for[5] and independent long before their death.

I have seen a list of bequests and donations,[6] made during the last thirty years, for the benefit[7] of religious, charitable, and literary institutions, in the State *of* Massachusetts alone, and they amounted to no less a[8] sum than six millions *of* dollars, or more than a million sterling.

There are popular libraries[9] in almost every village of Massachusetts, and a growing taste for the reading of good books is attested[10] by the sale of large editions[11] of *such* works as Herschel's "Natural Philosophy,"[12] Washington Irving's "Columbus," and Plutarch's "Lives."[13] Of each of these[14] from five to twenty thousand copies[15] have been sold. It will seem still[16] more remarkable, that no less than sixteen thousand copies have been purchased of "Johnes's Translation of Froissart's Chronicles,"[17] illus-

[1] *Compulsory law*, Zwangsgesetz; *property*, here Vermögen.

[2] Turn *hand* by 'side,' and render *no — primogeniture* by nicht die Sitte des Fideicommiß und des Erstgeburtsrechtes.

[3] *The affluent*, die Vermögenden. Turn *feel — liberty* by 'have full liberty.'

[4] Render here *public* by Staat or Nation. See for the present participles *being* and *having* Int. p. xvi. II. *c*.

[5] *Provided for*, in the above sense, versorgt; *independent*, here in einer unabhängigen Lage.

[6] Supply 'which were.'

[7] *For the benefit*, zum Besten.

[8] *To — a*, auf keine geringere. Supply the preposition auf between *or* and *more*.

[9] Turn *popular libraries* by 'people's-libraries,' and render *a growing* by der zunehmende.

[10] *Is attested*, wird...bewiesen; *sale* (with reference to books) Absatz.

[11] *Large editions*, starke Auflagen.

[12] *Natural Philosophy*, Physik (Gr. φυσικὴ). The genuine German expression is Naturlehre.

[13] The German title of *Plutarch's "Lives"* is, in accordance with the original Greek title, Βίοι παράλληλοι, Vergleichende Lebensbeschreibungen, or simply Biographien.

[14] Use the genitive of derselbe.

[15] *Copy* (of a book), Exemplar.

[16] *It will still*, say es dürfte noch.

[17] Use here in German the singular of the corresponding foreign form. *To illustrate* (a book) *by*, illustriren mit.

trated by wood engravings, and twelve thousand of Liebig's "Animal Chemistry."[1] These editions[2] were very cheap, as there was no author's copyright.[3] But it is still more surprising, that about four thousand copies of Prescott's "Mexico" should have been sold[4] in one year in the United States at the price of six dollars, or about twenty-six shillings. When,[5] in addition to these signs of the times, we remember the grants, before alluded to, of the New England and[6] other States in behalf of public schools and scientific surveys, we may indulge very sanguine hopes of[7] the future progress[8] of this country towards a high standard[9] of general civilization. — Sir Charles Lyell, *Travels in North America.**

XXII.

PEPI'S COTTAGE.

In looking through[10] Mr. Haag's portfolio I one day saw a very fine sketch of a bandit-like[11] figure with a rifle, and which he had treated[12] as *a* 'poacher.'

"Who is that?" I asked.

"That's 'Schützen[13] Pepi,'" he replied; "a most pic-

[1] The original German title of this celebrated work is Thierchemie.

[2] *Edition*, here Ausgabe.

[3] *As—copyright*, da kein literarisches Eigenthumsrecht existirte; *surprising* = remarkable.

[4] *Should—sold*, sich...verkauften.

[5] Insert here the pronoun *we*, and render *in addition to* by the preposition bei.

[6] Supply here ten. *In behalf*, zum Besten; *surveys*, here Untersuchungen.

[7] *We—of*, so können wir uns den lebhaftesten Hoffnungen hingeben in Bezug auf.

[8] Render here *progress* by Entwickelung, and *towards* by zu.

[9] Translate *standard* by Stufe, and supply 'a' before *general*.

[10] *To look through*, here besehen; *portfolio*, Portefeuille, to be pronounced as in French.

[11] *Bandit-like*, banditenmäßig.

[12] *Treated*, say dargestellt, *i.e.* represented.

[13] Schütze signifies in English 'a

* The above was written nearly thirty years ago.

turesque fellow.[1] I was at his cottage yesterday, and if you like[2] we'll go there some day together. If we could *manage to* find out when there was[3] a 'Heimgarten,' 'twould be all the better, for that's a curious[4] scene, and well worth seeing."

"What is a Heimgarten?" I inquired.

"Sometimes the young people of the neighbourhood agree[5] to go on a certain evening to a house they have fixed on,[6] and then, when the day's work is done,[7] they all pour in there to dance and sing and amuse themselves[8] as they best may. It is a sort *of* evening party[9] to which the guests come uninvited, just as when[10] a lady opens her 'salons' on certain days, and announces she will be 'at home.'[11] But you will see what it is, and I am sure it will amuse you."

From all[12] I heard of Pepi, he seemed to be so original a fellow, that I set off[13] one evening to pay him a visit.[14] His dwelling was as picturesque as his person, and the room and the groups[15] there when we entered were all that a painter could desire. As usual, the ceiling and walls[16] were of panelling, quite dark from smoke and age. At a table a young peasant was sitting, playing the

hunter, rifleman,' &c. Pepi is a popular abbreviation of Joſeph, and should be retained in the translation.

[1] *Fellow*, here Burſche.

[2] Render *like* by Luſt haben, and turn *some day* by 'once.'

[3] *There was*, transl. ſtattfindet; *all the.* in the above signification, um ſo.

[4] Render *curious* by merkwürdig, and *well worth seeing* by ſehenswerth, which latter expression is also to be placed as an attributive adjective before *scene.*

[5] *To agree*, here ſich verabreden.

[6] The clause *they — on* may in German be briefly rendered by the adjective beſtimmt, and placed as an attribute before *house.*

[7] *When*—done, transl. wenn's Feierabend iſt; *pour in there*, ſtrömen... dahin.

[8] *To amuse oneself*, ſich amüſiren; *as—may*, ſo gut ſie nur können.

[9] *Evening party*, Abendgeſellſchaft.

[10] *Just as when*, wie wenn. Retain the word *salons* also in German.

[11] *To be at home*, in the above sense, is simply rendered by empfangen, *i.e.* to receive. Use here the present tense, and supply 'that' before *she.*

[12] *From all*, nach Allem was. Insert the pronoun mir after *seemed he*, and render *original* by originell.

[13] *To set off*, ſich auf den Weg machen. See page 79, note 5.

[14] Turn *to—visit* by 'in order to visit him.'

[15] Use in German the singular, and supply the expletive 'only' before *desire.*

[16] *Wall*, here Wand; *were of panelling*, beſtanden...aus Holzgetäfel; *dark* = black.

cithern,[1] and in a corner, near the large green stove,[2] their faces gleaming in[3] the flickering blaze coming from a hearth close by, sat Pepi with his pipe, while beside him his wife and daughter were busy with their spinning-wheels.[4] Bare-legged boys[5] were lying about listening to the music, and one of them every now and then would throw[6] some pine-chips on the fire to make a merry[7] flame; and then the light illumined the whole nearer group from head to foot, spinning-wheels and all.[8] * * *

Presently[9] a loud knocking was heard without, the door flies open, and in bursts[10] a whole troop of youths, singing, shouting, dancing; they offer no greeting,[11] they say nothing in fact, but, with cap on head,[12] continue their wild song, and dance round, snapping their fingers[13] as they still pour in.

"Hush![14] no dancing! Leave off, I say! Hans,[15] don't stamp so!" cried Pepi, who was now no more[16] master in his own house than he was over the elements. A wild shout and a[17] louder song was the reply. The[18] first ebullition of mirth over, they stood round[19] the cithern-

[1] The *cithern*, Zither or Cither (from the Greek κιθάρα), is a flat stringed instrument, still frequently played by the German peasants in Bavaria, in the Tyrol, and in Austria proper.

[2] Insert here the verb *sat*, to be used in the third person plural.

[3] *Their—in*, das Geſicht von...beleuchtet; *close by*, dicht dabei.

[4] *Spinning-wheels*, Spinnräder.

[5] Turn *bare-legged boys* by 'boys with bare legs.'

[6] Turn *every—throw* briefly by 'occasionally threw;' *pine-chips*, Tannenſpäne.

[7] *Merry*, say hell, *i.e.* bright.

[8] Translate *and all* by alles Andere mit eingeſchloſſen.

[9] *Presently*, transl. plötzlich; *to fly open*, auffliegen.

[10] *In bursts*, ſtürmt herein. For the construction of the following present participles see Int. p. xvii. II. *g*.

[11] Turn *they—greeting* by 'they greet not,' and render *nothing* by gar nichts.

[12] Turn *with—head* by 'the cap on the head;' *round*, here herum.

[13] *To snap the fingers*, mit den Fingern ſchnalzen; *as they still*, say während ihrer immer mehr.

[14] *Hush*, ſtill. Use for *dancing* and *leave off* the past participles of tanzen and aufhören, and supply Euch after *say*.

[15] Hans is a popular abbreviation of Johann, *John*.

[16] Turn *no more* by 'just as little,' and omit *he was* in the translation.

[17] Supply the adverb noch, and render here *song* by Singen.

[18] Supply the adverb als at the beginning of the sentence, and the verb war after *over* (vorüber). Render here *ebullition* by Ausbruch *i.e.* outburst, transport.

[19] *Stood round*, umſtanden.

player and talked and sang. I all the while[1] remained sitting where I was, heartily enjoying[2] the scene. * * *

And now the circle broke up,[3] and the different groups began to dance.

"I won't have it!"[4] cried Pepi. "Leave off, I tell ye! It's Friday; for shame!"

"Ho, ho! no matter;[5] we 'will' dance!" and round they went,[6] in spite of him and his wife. Why,[7] they might as well have tried to stop the streams that came leaping along down[8] the mountains in spring, as to arrest[9] the whirl of those lads' dancing.—CHARLES BONER, *Chamois Hunting in the Mountains of Bavaria and the Tyrol.*

XXIII.

BARREN HONOURS.[10]

The body[11] of the deceased Inca was skilfully embalmed and removed[12] to the great Temple of the Sun at Cuzco. There the Peruvian[13] sovereign, on entering the[14] awful sanctuary, might behold the effigies[15] of his royal ancestors, ranged in opposite files,[16] the men on the right, and their

[1] *All the while,* während der ganzen Zeit; *sitting—was,* ruhig auf meinem Platze sitzen.

[2] *To enjoy,* here sich freuen, to be followed by the genitive case.

[3] *Broke up,* say löste sich auf.

[4] *Won't have it,* will es nicht. *For shame,* schämt Euch.

[5] *No matter,* macht nichts.

[6] *Round they went,* herum ging es im Kreise.

[7] *Why,* here wahrhaftig, to be placed before *as well.* Render *might* by the pluperf-cond. of können, and see page 52, note 1.

[8] *Came — down,* simply herunterstürzten.

[9] *To arrest,* in the above sense, Einhalt thun. Render *whirl* and *dancing* by the compound expression Wirbeltanz.

[10] *Barren honours,* nichtige Ehrenbezeigungen.

[11] *Body* (of a deceased person), Leiche or Leichnam. The title *Inca* is in German usually written with a I: in the genitive singular, and throughout the plural, it takes s.

[12] *Removed* = brought. *Temple of the Sun,* briefly Sonnentempel.

[13] *Peruvian,* peruvianisch.

[14] *On entering the,* beim Eintritt in das.

[15] *Effigies,* say Gestalten.

[16] *Ranged—files,* in Reihen einander gegenüber aufgestellt.

queens[1] on the left, of the great luminary which blazed in refulgent gold on the walls of the temple.

The bodies, clothed in the princely attire[2] which they had been accustomed[3] to wear, were placed[4] on chairs of gold, and sat *with* their[5] heads inclined downwards, their hands placidly crossed over their bosoms,[6] their countenances exhibiting[7] their natural dusky[8] hue—less liable to change[9] than the fresher colouring of a European complexion[10]—and their hair *of* raven black[11] or silvered over[12] *with age*, according to the period at which they died. It seemed like[13] a company of solemn worshippers fixed in devotion,[14] so true[15] were the forms and lineaments of life. The Peruvians[16] were as successful as the Egyptians in the miserable[17] attempt to perpetuate the existence of the body beyond[18] the limits assigned to it by nature.

They cherished a still stranger illusion in the attentions[19] which they continued to pay[20] to these insensible remains, as if they were instinct[21] with life. One of the

[1] Translate here *queens* by Gemahlinnen, *luminary* by Gestirn, and *to blaze* by strahlen.

[2] *Clothed—attire*, angethan in den fürstlichen Gewändern.

[3] *To be accustomed*, pflegen, to be used here in the imperfect.

[4] Transl. *were placed* by befanden sich, and turn *chairs of gold* by 'golden chairs.'

[5] See Ext. 34, note b, and use *heads* and *countenances* in the singular. *Inclined downwards*, geneigt.

[6] *Placidly — bosoms*, ruhig über die Brust gekreuzt.

[7] *Exhibiting*, während...zeigte.

[8] *Dusky* (of colour), dunkel.

[9] *Less — change*, die den Veränderungen weniger unterworfen ist.

[10] *Colouring—complexion*, briefly in German Gesichtsfarbe der Europäer.

[11] Form a compound expression by joining the adjective *black* to the plural of *raven*.

[12] *Silvered over*, silberweiß; *according to the period*, translate je nach dem Alter, *i.e.* age.

[13] Turn *it—like* by 'it made the impression of.'

[14] The clause *a—devotion* requires in German a somewhat free rendering; say einer Gesellschaft Andächtiger, die in feierliches Gebet versunken.

[15] Render here *true* by lebenstreu and omit the expression *of life*.

[16] *Peruvian*, Peruvianer. For the adverb *as* see page 43, note 11.

[17] Turn *miserable* by 'sad.' Render *to perpetuate* by verlängern and *body* by Körper.

[18] *Beyond*, here über . . . hinaus. Turn *assigned — nature* by 'which nature has assigned (gesetzt) to it.'

[19] A literal translation of *they cherished...in the attentions* would not be in accordance with the genius of the German language, where we must supply an additional verb, viz. 'a still stranger illusion which they cherished (hegten) manifested itself in the attentions.'

[20] *To pay* (an attention), erweisen or bezeigen; *insensible*, here leblos.

[21] Render here *instinct* by beseelt and *with* by von.

houses belonging to a deceased Inca was kept[1] open and occupied by his guards and attendants with all the state appropriate to royalty.[2] On[3] certain festivals the revered bodies were brought out with great ceremony into the public square of the capital. Invitations were sent by the captains of the guard of the respective[4] Incas to the different nobles and officers of the court; and entertainments[5] were provided in the names[6] of their masters, which displayed[7] all the profuse magnificence of their treasures; and "such a display,"[8] says an ancient chronicler, "was there in the great square of Cuzco on this occasion of gold and silver plate[9] and jewels, as no other city in the world ever[10] witnessed." The banquet was served by the menials of the respective households,[11] and the guests partook[12] of the melancholy cheer in the presence of the royal phantom,[13] with the same attention to[14] the forms of courtly etiquette[15] as if the living monarch had presided.[16] —WILLIAM H. PRESCOTT, *History of the Conquest of Peru.*

[1] *Was kept*, say blieb; *to occupy* (a dwelling), bewohnen.

[2] *The—royalty*, dem Pomp, welcher der königlichen Würde zukommt.

[3] *On*, here an; *into*, nach; *capital*, in the above sense, Residenzstatt.

[4] Retain the same expression. Render *nobles* by Vornehmen, and *officers of the court* by Hofbeamten.

[5] Turn *entertainments* by 'banquets,' and translate *provided* by veranstaltet.

[6] Use the singular, and render *masters* by Souveräne.

[7] *To display*, zur Schau stellen; *profuse magnificence*, Prachtfülle.

[8] Translate *display* by Pracht, and *was there* by war...entfaltet.

[9] *Of—plate*, an goldenem und silbernem Geräth.

[10] See page 17, note 5.

[11] Turn *The—households* by 'the menials (Dienerschaft) of the respective households (Hofhaltung) served (wartete...auf) at the banquet.'

[12] *To partake of cheer*, ein Mahl einnehmen.

[13] Retain the same expression.

[14] *To*, here auf.

[15] *Of courtly etiquette*, der Hofetiquette.

[16] *To preside*, den Vorsitz führen.

XXIV.

COPYRIGHT.[1]

There have been[2] times in which men of letters looked,[3] not to the public, but to the government, or to a few great men,[4] *for* the reward of their exertions. It was thus[5] in the time of Mæcenas and Pollio at Rome, of the Medici at Florence, of Lewis the[6] Fourteenth in France, of Lord Halifax and Lord Oxford in this country. Now, Sir,[7] I well know that there are cases in which it is fit and graceful,[8] nay, in which it is a sacred duty, to reward the merits or to relieve the distresses of men of genius[9] by the exercise[10] of this species of liberality. But these cases are exceptions. I can conceive[11] no system more fatal to the integrity[4] and independence of literary men,[12] than one under which they should be taught[13] to look for their daily bread to the favour of ministers and nobles. I can conceive no system more certain to turn[14] those minds which are formed by nature to be the blessings and ornaments of our species[15] into public scandals and pests.

[1] *Copyright*, literarisches Eigenthumsrecht. The above extract is taken from a speech delivered by Macaulay in 1841 in answer to Mr. Serjeant Talfourd, who tried to bring in a Bill for the purpose of extending the copyright in a book to sixty years after the death of the author.

[2] See page 25, note 7.

[3] Turn *looked* by 'expected,' and *to*, occurring three times in the above sentence, by 'from.'

[4] Render *great men* by hochgestellte Persönlichkeiten.

[5] Begin the sentence by *thus;* render *in the time* by zu den Zeiten, and *of*, occurring before the proper names, von. The *Medici* are called in German Mediceer.

[6] See page 85, note 9.

[7] See page 32, note 1, and render *well* by recht wohl.

[8] Turn *graceful* by 'beautiful.'

[9] Place *men of genius*, gemiedegabter Männer, after *merits* and render *to—of* by der Noth derselben abzuhelfen.

[10] *Exercise*, Ausübung. Turn *of this species* by 'of such a;' *liberality*, Großmuth.

[11] *Conceive*, say mir . . . denken; *more fatal*, das...verderblicher wäre.

[12] *Literary men*, Schriftsteller. Render here *one* by dasjenige.

[13] *Should be taught*, daran gewöhnt würden. For *to look...to* see above, note 3.

[14] *More—turn*, das mit größerer Gewißheit...verwandelte; *mind*, here Geist; *formed*, dazu geschaffen.

[15] *Species*, here Geschlecht; *scandals*, Schandflecken · *pests*, Plagen.

1. Redlichkeit, Rechtschaffenheit.

We have, then, only one resource left.[1] We must betake ourselves[2] to copyright, be the inconveniences of copyright what they may.[3] Those inconveniences, in truth, are neither few nor small. Copyright is monopoly,[4] and produces all the effects which the general voice[5] *of* mankind attributes to monopoly. My honourable[6] and learned friend talks very contemptuously of those who are led away by the theory[7] that monopoly makes things dear. That monopoly makes things dear is certainly a theory, as all the great truths which have been established[8] by the experience of all ages and nations, and which are taken for granted in all reasonings,[9] may be said[10] to be theories. * * *

Now I will not affirm that the existing[11] law is perfect, that it exactly hits the point at which the monopoly ought to cease; but this I confidently[12] say, that the existing law is[13] very much nearer that point than the law proposed by[14] my honourable and learned friend. For consider[15] this; the evil effects of the monopoly are proportioned[16] to the length of its duration. But the good effects for the sake of which[17] we bear the evil effects are by no means proportioned to the length of its duration. A monopoly of[18] sixty years produces[19] twice as much evil as a monopoly of thirty years, and thrice as much evil as a monopoly of twenty

[1] Turn *We—left* by 'there remains (bleibt...übrig), then (also), to us only one means.'

[2] *Betake ourselves,* unſere Zuflucht ...nehmen.

[3] *Be—may,* was auch immer die Nachtheile deſſelben ſein mögen.

[4] Use here *monopoly* with the indefinite, and in the following instances with the definite, article.

[5] Render *the general voice* by im Allgemeinen, placing this expression after *mankind,* which is to be used with the definite article.

[6] *Honourable,* ehrenwerth.

[7] *Are—theory,* der Theorie huldigen; *to make dear,* here vertheuern.

[8] *To establish,* here beſtätigen; *ages* = times.

[9] *Are—reasonings,* in Folge aller Vernunftſchlüſſe als ausgemacht angenommen werden.

[10] Turn *may be said* by 'can be called,' and supply the adjective bloße before *theories.*

[11] *Existing,* here beſtehend.

[12] *Confidently,* mit voller Zuverſicht.

[13] Turn *is* by 'comes,' and leave *very* untranslated.

[14] Turn *proposed by* by 'which... proposes.'

[15] *To consider,* here bedenken.

[16] *Are proportioned,* ſtehen im richtigen Verhältniß.

[17] *For—which,* um derentwillen.

[18] We say in German ein Monopol auf with reference to a space of time.

[19] Render here *to produce* by verurſachen, and *evil* by Schaden.

years. But it is by no means the fact[1] that a posthumous monopoly of sixty years gives to an author[2] thrice as much pleasure and thrice as strong a motive to exertion[3] as a posthumous[4] monopoly of twenty years. On the contrary, the difference is so small[5] as to be hardly perceptible.—LORD MACAULAY, *A Speech on Copyright.*

XXV.

THE ELECTION OF A POPE.

There are four different modes[6] of electing the supreme pontiff; by 'inspiration,'[7] by 'compromise,' by 'scrutiny,' and by 'access.'

An election by[8] 'inspiration' is effected by several *of the* cardinals calling aloud, as by *a* sudden impulse, the name of the person whom they wish[9] to raise to the pontifical dignity.

It is called an election by 'compromise' when the cardinals, not being able to determine on[10] a proper person, agree to submit[11] the choice of a pontiff to one or more of their own body,[12] nominated for that purpose. It was thus

[1] *By—fact*, durchaus nicht factiſch erwieſen.

[2] Turn *a—author* by 'a monopoly which lasts until sixty years after the death of an author gives to him' (dieſem...gewährt).

[3] *Thrice — exertion*, ein dreifach ſtärkeres Motiv zur Arbeit.

[4] Turn *posthumous* by 'after his death,' placing this expression after *years*.

[5] *Small*, here gering. Turn *as—perceptible* by 'that one hardly perceives it.'

[6] *Mode* is here synonymous with 'manner.' Turn *supreme pontiff* simply by 'pope,' or by 'the highest head (Oberhaupt) of the Church.'

[7] Retain the same term, and use Compromiß for *compromise*, Scrutinium for *scrutiny*, and Acceß for *access*. Turn the word *by*, before *inspiration*, by 'namely,' leaving it untranslated before the other nouns.

[8] *By*, vermittelſt; *is—by*, wird dadurch bewirkt, daß; *impulse*, Impuls.

[9] Turn *wish* by 'will,' and render *raise* by erheben.

[10] *Not—on*, nicht im Stande, hinſichtlich...zur Entſcheidung zu gelangen.

[11] *To submit*, here übertragen.

[12] *Of—body*, aus ihrer Mitte.

that[1] John XXII., after having obtained the solemn assent of the whole college[2] to abide by his decision, assumed to himself the pontificate; an event which induced the cardinals not to entrust this power in future to any of their number,[3] without such restrictions as might effectually prevent[4] the recurrence of a similar event.

In choosing a pope[5] by 'scrutiny' the cardinals each write their own name, with that of the person whom they wish[6] to recommend, on a 'billet'[7] or ticket, which they afterwards place, with many ceremonies and genuflections, in a large and highly ornamented[8] chalice, on the altar of the chapel in which they assemble. The tickets are then taken out by officers[9] appointed from their own body[10] for that purpose, and the number is carefully compared with that of the persons present;[11] after which, if it appear that any one of the cardinals has two-thirds of the votes in his favour,[12] he is declared to be canonically elected pope.[13]

When, however, after repeated trials, this[14] does not occur, a new proceeding takes place, which is called election[15] by 'access,' in which any[16] cardinal may accede to the vote of another by an alteration of his ticket in a prescribed form. When by these means[17] the choice of a pontiff is

[1] *It—that,* auf dieſe Weiſe.

[2] *College,* Collegium; *to abide by,* here ſich fügen, which verb requires the dative case. *To assume,* ſich aneignen. Construe the above clause in the following manner, 'assumed John XXII. the pontificate, after he had,' &c.

[3] *Not...to any of their number,* keinem aus ihrer Mitte.

[4] *As—prevent,* welche... durchaus unmöglich machten.

[5] Turn *in — pope* by 'when a pope is chosen,' and *the—their* by 'so writes each of the cardinals his.'

[6] Turn *with — wish* by 'and the name of him (desjenigen) whom he ...wishes.'

[7] The word Billet (to be pronounced Billjett) is also used in German, where it is employed in the neuter gender.

[8] We say in German reich (*i.e.* richly) verziert for *highly ornamented.*

[9] *Officers,* here Beamten Render here *from* by aus.

[10] When the term *body* is synonymous with *corporation,* it is rendered in German by Körperſchaft.

[11] *Present,* anweſend, to be placed before *persons.* Translate *after—appear* briefly by und zeigt es ſich.

[12] *In his favour,* zu ſeinen Gunſten.

[13] *To—pope,* als nach canoniſchem Rechte zum Papſt erwählt.

[14] The demonstrative pronoun *this* is to be placed after *when; does not occur,* say nicht der Fall iſt; *proceeding,* Verfahren.

[15] Use the indefinite article.

[16] *Any* is here synonymous with 'every.' *May—vote,* dem Votum... beitreten kann.

[17] *By these means,* say auf dieſe Weiſe

effected, the tickets are prudently[1] committed to the flames, to prevent[2] all pretext for further inquiry.—WILLIAM ROSCOE, *The Life and Pontificate of Leo X.*

XXVI.

REMINISCENCES OF GOETHE.

DEAR LEWES, London, 28th April, 1855.

I wish[3] I had more to tell you regarding Weimar and Goethe. Five and twenty years ago at least a score of young English lads[4] used to live at Weimar for study, or sport, or society,[5]—all of which were[6] to be had in the friendly little Saxon capital. The Grand Duke[7] and Duchess received us with the kindliest hospitality. The Court was splendid, but yet most pleasant and homely.[8] We were invited in our turns[9] to dinners, balls, and assemblies[10] there. Such young men as had a right[11] appeared in uniforms, diplomatic and military. * * * Of the winter nights[12] we used to charter[13] sedan chairs, in

[1] *Prudently*, vorſichtiger Weiſe; *to commit*, here überliefern.

[2] Render *to prevent* by zuvorkommen, and *inquiry* by Unterſuchung.

[3] Translate *wish* by the present conditional of wollen, *had* by that of können, and *regarding* by über.

[4] Turn *a—lads* by 'twenty young Englishmen;' *used to live*, hielten... ſich auf.

[5] Turn *for—society* by 'on account of their studies, of the pleasure, or of the society.'

[6] *All—were*, was Alles...war.

[7] The expression *Grand Duke* forms in German a compound term; and the word *Grand* must be repeated before *Duchess*. *Kindliest* may here be rendered by herzlichſt.

[8] The expression gemüthlich, for *homely*, will here fully convey the author s meaning.

[9] *In our turns*, der Reihe nach. For *dinners* use here the expression Diner, which is in the singular pronounced in German as in French, but in the plural the *s* is also sounded.

[10] *Assemblies*, Aſſembléen. The syllable em has in this word the French nasal sound.

[11] Turn *Such—right* by 'those young men (Leute) who had the right to it.' Place the expressions *diplomatic* and *military* as attributes before *uniforms*.

[12] Translate *of— nights* by an Winterabenten.

[13] Translate *charter* by miethen *i.e.* to hire.

which we were carried through the snow to those pleasant Court entertainments.[1] I for my part had the good luck[2] to purchase Schiller's sword, which formed[3] a part of my Court costume, and still hangs in my study, and puts me in mind of days of youth the most kindly and delightful.[4]

We knew[5] the whole[6] society of the little city, and but that the young ladies, one and all, spoke admirable English,[7] we surely might have learned the very best German. The society met[8] constantly. The ladies of the Court had their evenings. *The* theatre was *open* twice or thrice *in* the week,[9] where assembled a large family party. Goethe had retired from the direction, but the great traditions[10] remained still.* * *

In 1831, though he had retired from the world,[11] Goethe would nevertheless very kindly receive strangers. His daughter-in-law's tea-table was always spread for us.[12] We

[1] *Court entertainments*, Hoffeſte.

[2] Turn *had — luck* by 'was so lucky.'

[3] *To form*, here ausmachen; *Court costume*, Hofcoſtüm; *study*, in the above signification, Arbeitszimmer.

[4] Turn *puts—delightful* by 'reminds me of days which belonged to the most kindly (freundlichſten) and delightful (ſchönſten) of my youth.'

[5] *To know* may be rendered by kennen or wiſſen. The former is generally used when the object of our knowledge consists of material things, of things external, as it were; but when we do not wish to express that our knowledge is based so much on 'inspection' as on the 'result of reasoning,' and we merely want to indicate that we are *conscious* of a thing, wiſſen is to be employed. Das Gekannte, says Jakob Grimm, ſind Dinge, das Gewußte mehr Gedanken. Thus Ich weiß den Weg expresses more 'I possess a theoretical knowledge (which may have been acquired from descriptions) of the way,' whilst Ich kenne den Weg indicates that 'I have from personal experience a knowledge of the way.' In a few instances only either kennen or wiſſen may be employed. Compare the French *connaître* and *savoir*. In the above instance the verb *to know* refers to external knowledge; use therefore kennen.

[6] Render *the whole* by die ſämmtliche, and supply the adjective gute.

[7] Turn *but—English* by 'if only all the young ladies had not spoken admirable (ausgezeichnet, to be used adverbially) English.' *The very best*, das allerbeſte.

[8] *To meet*, here zuſammenkommen. Turn *ladies — Court* by 'Court-ladies,' and supply the adjective beſtimmt before *evenings*.

[9] Place the words *was theatre* after *week*. *To assemble*, ſich verſammeln; *family party*, say Familienzirkel.

[10] *Traditions*, Traditionen; *remained still*, say lebten noch fort.

[11] Place the clause *though—world* after *strangers*, and render the whole of the remaining sentence by Fremde fanden 1831 bei Goethe noch immer freundliche Aufnahme.

[12] Turn *His—us* by 'at the tea-table of his daughter-in-law a place was always open for us.'

passed hours after[1] hours there, and night after[1] night, with the pleasantest talk[2] and music. We read over[3] endless novels and poems *in* French, English, and German. My delight[4] in those days was to make caricatures for children. I was touched to find[5] that they were remembered, and some even kept until the present time;[6]* and very proud to be told, as a lad,[7] that the great Goethe had looked at some of them.

He remained[8] in his private apartments, where only a very few privileged persons were admitted; but he liked to know[9] all that was happening, and interested himself about[10] all strangers. Whenever a countenance struck his fancy,[11] there was an artist settled in Weimar who made a portrait of it. Goethe had quite a gallery of heads, in black and white,[12] taken by this painter. His house was all over[13] pictures, drawings, casts, statues, and medals.

Of course I remember very well[14] the perturbation of spirit with which, as a lad of nineteen,[15] I received the long-expected intimation that the Herr Geheimerath would see me on such a[16] morning. This notable audience[17] took place in a little antechamber of his private apartments, covered all round with antique casts and bas-reliefs. He

[1] Transl. *after* by über; *with*, bei.

[2] *Talk*, say Unterhaltung.

[3] *To read over*, durchlesen.

[4] Render *delight* by größtes Vergnügen, and *to make* by zeichnen.

[5] Turn *I—find* by 'it touched me when I found that one still remembered them.' *To remember*, sich erinnern, governs the genitive of the person or thing remembered.

[6] Turn *some — time* by 'that some even were kept until this (auf den heutigen) day.'

[7] Turn *and—lad* by 'and was as a young man proud of it, when it was told to me.'

[8] *To remain*, here sich aufhalten; *private apartments*, Privatzimmer; *privileged*, here begünstigte; *were admitted*, Zutritt hatten.

[9] See preceding page, note 5.

[10] *About*, after *to interest oneself*, is rendered by für.

[11] *Struck his fancy*, ihm gefiel. Supply so, and see page 25, note 7.

[12] *In—white*, in Kreide; *taken*, say gezeichnet.

[13] *All over* = quite full of; *cast*, here Abguß.

[14] See page 75, note 4. *Perturbation of spirit*, innere Unruhe.

[15] Supply the term 'years.' *Intimation*, here Ankündigung.

[16] *On such a* is in the above phrase rendered by an dem und dem.

[17] *Notable audience*, denkwürdige Audienz; *private apartments*, say here Privatgemächer; *round—casts*, rings mit Abgüssen von Antiquen.

* The above refers to Thackeray's second stay at Weimar in 1854.

was habited[1] in a long grey or drab redingot, with[2] a white neckcloth and a red ribbon in his button-hole.

He kept his hands behind[3] his back, just as in Rauch's statuette. His complexion was very bright,[4] clear, and rosy: his eyes extraordinarily dark, piercing, and brilliant.† * * *

I fancied Goethe must have been still more handsome as *an* old man[5] than even in the days of his youth. His voice was very rich[6] and sweet. He asked me[7] questions about myself, which I answered as best I could. * * *

Though his sun was setting,[8] the sky round about was calm and bright, and that little Weimar illumined by it.[9] In every one of those kind[10] 'salons' the talk was still of art and letters.[11] The theatre,[12] though possessing no very extraordinary actors, was still conducted with *a* noble intelligence[13] and order. The actors read books,[14] and were men of letters and gentlemen,[15] holding a not unkindly relationship with the 'Adel.' At Court the conversation was exceedingly friendly, simple, and polished.[16] The Grand Duchess (the present Grand Duchess Dowager[17]), a lady of

[1] *To be habited,* gekleidet ſein; *drab,* bräunlich.

[2] Render *with* by hatte...um, and supply 'wore' after *and.*

[3] Translate here *behind* by auf, and retain the term *statuette.*

[4] Turn *bright* by 'fresh;' *piercing,* durchdringend.

[5] *Old man,* Greis, which expression denotes 'grey with age.'

[6] Turn *rich* by 'full,' and *sweet* by 'agreeable.'

[7] *To ask any one questions,* an Jemand Fragen ſtellen. Turn *best* by 'well.'

[8] *Was setting,* im Sinken war; *round about,* ringsum; *calm.* say heiter, *bright,* hereſtar; and *that,* das.

[9] *Illumined by it,* war von derſelben erleuchtet.

[10] Render *kind* by freundlich.

[11] *The—letters,* bildeten Kunſt und Literatur noch immer den Gegenſtand der Unterhaltung.

[12] Insert here the auxiliary verb *was,* occurring before *still,* and turn the following clause by 'though it had not any very distinguished actors.'

[13] Render *intelligence* by Geiſt, and *order* by Tact.

[14] Translate *read books* by beſchäftigten ſich mit Lectüre.

[15] See page 147, note 10, and turn the following clause by 'who stood to the Adel in a not unfriendly relation' (Verhältniß).

[16] *Polished,* here fein.

[17] Render the clause *the—Dowager* briefly by jetzt verwittwete (*i.e.* now widowed), placing these terms in a parenthesis before *Grand.*

† Mr. G. H. Lewes, from whose work, "The Life of Goethe," the above letter is taken, remarks here "that this must have been the effect of the position in which he sat with regard to the light. Goethe's eyes were dark brown, but not very dark." Compare Mr. Lewes' description of Goethe, given in the present work, page 41.

very remarkable endowments,[1] would kindly borrow our books from us, lend us her own, and graciously talk to us young men about our literary tastes and pursuits.[2] In the respect paid[3] by this Court to the patriarch of letters there was[4] something ennobling, I think, alike to the subject and[5] sovereign. With[6] a five-and-twenty years' experience since those happy days of which I write, and[7] an acquaintance with an immense variety of human kind,[8] I think I have never seen a society[9] more simple, charitable,[10] courteous, gentlemanlike, than that of the dear little Saxon city, where the good Schiller and the great Goethe lived and lie buried.

Very sincerely[11] yours,

W. M. THACKERAY.

XXVII.

A PARADE IN CANADA.

On a rising ground above[12] the river, which ran gurgling and sparkling through the green ravine beneath,[13] the motley troops, about three or four hundred men, were marshalled—no, not marshalled, but scattered in *a* far

[1] *Of—endowments*, von ungewöhnlicher Begabung. Translate *would kindly* by ließ ſich herab.

[2] *Literary—pursuits*, literariſche Neigungen und Studien.

[3] *Paid*, say der...gezollt wurde, and turn *of letters* by 'of the literature.'

[4] Turn *was* by 'lay,' and insert here the phrase nach meiner Anſicht as an equivalent for *I think*. *Ennobling*, say Erhebendes.

[5] *Alike to...and*, transl. ſowohl für...als den.

[6] Turn *With* by 'after.'

[7] Insert here the preposition bei.

[8] Transl. *variety—kind* by Menge verſchiedenartiger Charaktere, and *I think* by bin ich der Anſicht, daß.

[9] Insert here the relative pronoun die, and after *gentlemanlike* the words geweſen wäre.

[10] *Charitable*, here gutherzig; *gentlemanlike*, fein.

[11] *Very sincerely*, here aufrichtigſt

[12] *Above*, here oberhalb; *sparkling*, ſchimmernd.

[13] *Beneath*, say unter derſelben; and insert here the auxiliary verb *were* (occurring before *marshalled*), translating it by ſtanden. *Motley* bunt; *marshalled*, translate in Reih und Glied.

more picturesque fashion[1] hither and thither: a few log-houses and a saw-mill on the river-bank,[2] and a little wooden church crowning the opposite height, formed the chief features[3] of the scene. The boundless forest spread all around us.[4]

A few men, well mounted and dressed as lancers,[5] in uniforms which were, however, anything but uniform,[6] flourished backwards on the green sward, to the manifest peril of the spectators; themselves[7] and their horses equally wild, disorderly, spirited, undisciplined. But this was perfection[8] compared with the infantry. Here there was no uniformity attempted of[9] dress, of[10] appearance, of movement: a few had[11] coats, others jackets; a greater number had neither coats nor jackets, but appeared in *their* shirt-sleeves, white or checked,[12] *or* clean or dirty, in edifying variety. Some wore hats, others caps, others their own shaggy heads of hair.[13] Some had firelocks; some had old swords suspended in belts[14] or stuck in their waistbands; but the greater number shouldered sticks or umbrellas. Mrs. M—— told[15] us that on a former parade *day* she had heard the[16] word of command *given* thus: "Gentlemen[17] with *the* umbrellas, take ground to the right!

[1] *Fashion* is here synonymous with 'manner,' Weise; *hither and thither* = here and there.

[2] *River-bank* = bank of the river; *crowning* = which adorned.

[3] *Chief features*, Hauptzüge.

[4] *Spread* — *us*, umgab uns nach allen Seiten hin.

[5] Turn *A* — *lancers* by 'some men, who were well mounted and dressed as lancers' (Ulanen).

[6] *Anything but uniform*, nichts weniger als uniform; *to flourish*, here schwenken; *sward*, Rasen.

[7] Turn *themselves* by 'the riders,' and supply 'were' before *equally*. *Spirited* (of horses), feurig.

[8] The above idiomatic phrase, *but—perfection*, requires in German a free rendering; say aber das war noch musterhaft zu nennen. *Compared with*, im Vergleich mit.

[9] *Here—of*, hier wurde nicht einmal der Versuch gemacht zur Uniformität in der.

[10] Render the preposition *of* here and in the following instance by in, to be contracted with the respective def. art.; appearance, Aussehen.

[11] Translate *a few had* by einige wenige hatten ... an, and *a greater number* by die meisten.

[12] *Checked*, here buntfarbig.

[13] *Shaggy—hair*, struppiges Haar.

[14] Translate *suspended in belts* by an Gürteln hängen, *stuck* by stecken, and *waistbands* by Leibgurten.

[15] *To tell*, here erzählen; *on*, bei.

[16] Translate *the* by folgendes, which term will serve at the same time as an equivalent for *thus;* and render *word of command* by Commandowort.

[17] Render *gentlemen* here and in the following instance by die Herren. *Take ground*, stellen sich ... auf.

gentlemen with *the* walking sticks, take ground to the left!" Now they ran after each other,[1] elbowed and kicked each other, stooped, chattered, and if the commanding officer[2] turned his back *for* a moment, very coolly sat down on the bank to rest.—MRS. JAMESON, *Sketches in Canada.*

XXVIII.

DANGEROUS CANNONADES.

At a proper place we dropped down[3] upon the snow. Close along the rocks it was scarred[4] by a furrow six or eight feet deep, and about twelve in width,[5] evidently the track of avalanches, or of rocks let loose[6] from the heights. Into this we descended. The bottom of the channel[7] was firm and roughened by the stones which found a lodgment there.[8] I thought we had here a suitable roadway[9] up the couloir; but I had not time to convert the thought into a suggestion[10] before a crash occurred in the upper regions.

I looked aloft, and right over the snow brow,[11] which here closed the view, I perceived a large brown boulder in the air, while a roar[12] of unseen stones showed that the visible projectile was merely the first shot of a general cannonade. They appeared—pouring straight down[13] upon us—the sides

[1] *Now—other*, jetzt liefen sie hinter einander her; *elbowed*, drängten.

[2] Insert here 'to them,' and transl. *very coolly* by höchst gemüthlich.

[3] *We — down*, ließen wir uns... nieder.

[4] *Scarred*, durchschnitten.

[5] The clauses *six—deep, and—width* qualify the expression *furrow*, here Runse; *in width* = broad.

[6] *Let loose*, die sich gelöst hatten.

[7] *Channel*, here Rinne; *roughened*, uneben.

[8] *Found — there*, sich hier angesammelt hatten.

[9] *Roadway* = way; *up the couloir*, den Alpenpaß hinauf.

[10] Translate *to—suggestion* by dem Gedanken Worte zu geben; *occurred*, say sich hören ließ.

[11] *Snow brow*, Schneekamm; *boulder*, Felsblock.

[12] Render *roar* by Gepolter, and turn *unseen* by 'invisible.' *Projectile*, Projectil.

[13] *Pouring...down*, herabstürzend.

of the couloir preventing[1] them from squandering their force in[2] any other direction. "Schnell!" shouted the man behind me,—and there is a ring in the word when sharply uttered in the Alps[3] that almost lifts a man off his feet.[4] I sprang forward; but, urged by a sterner[5] impulse, the man behind[6] sprung right on to me. We cleared[7] the furrow exactly as the first stone flew by;[8] and once in safety we could calmly[9] admire the wild energy with which the rattling boulders sped along.[10]

Our attention was therefore turned to the rocks at our right, and the thought of assailing[11] them was several times mooted and discussed. They at length seduced[12] us, and we resolved to abandon the couloir. To reach the rocks, however, we had to recross[13] the avalanche channel, which was here very deep. Benen* hewed a gap at the top of its flanking wall,[14] and, stooping over, scooped steps out of the vertical face[15] of indurated snow. He then made a deep hole, in which he anchored[16] his left arm, let himself thus partly down, and with his right pushed[17] the steps to the bottom. While this was going on,[18] small stones were continually flying down the gully.

Benen reached the floor, and I followed. Our companion[19] was still clinging to the snow wall, when a

[1] See Int. page xvi, II. *c.*

[2] *In*, nach...hin.

[3] Turn *and—Alps* by 'and this word, when sharply uttered in the Alps, has a ring' (Klang).

[4] *Almost—feet*, der einen gleichsam vom Boden hebt.

[5] Turn *sterner* by 'stronger,' and use Impuls for *impulse*, placing the verb *sprang* after this term.

[6] Supply here the pronoun *me*, and render *right on to me* by gerade auf mich zu.

[7] Translate *cleared* by kamen glücklich aus.

[8] *To fly by*, vorbeifliegen; *in safety*, geborgen.

[9] *Calmly*, mit Ruhe. Retain the corresponding foreign form of *energy*, and compare page 114, note 1.

[10] *Sped along*, dahinflogen.

[11] *Of assailing*, say zu erklimmen.

[12] *To seduce*, here anlocken.

[13] *We—recross*, mußten wir wieder die Lawinenrinne zurückpassiren.

[14] *Flanking wall*, Seitenwand.

[15] *Scooped—face*, grub er Stufen in die verticale Oberfläche.

[16] *Anchored*, say stemmte.

[17] *Pushed*=made; *to the*, bis zum.

[18] *Was going on*, vor sich ging.

[19] *Gully*, Rinne

Companion, here Gefährte.

* This was the guide who accompanied the author on his ascent of Mont Rosa—from the description of which the above has been extracted—and also on his other mountaineering expeditions in Switzerland.

horrible clatter was heard overhead.[1] It was another stone avalanche, which there was[2] hardly a hope of escaping. Happily a rock was here firmly stuck[3] in the bed of the gully, and I chanced to be[4] beside it when the first huge missile appeared. This was the delinquent which had set the others loose.[5] I was directly in the line of fire;[6] but, ducking behind the boulder, I let the projectile[7] shoot over my head. Behind it came a shoal of smaller fry,[8] each of them, however, quite competent[9] to crack a human life. Benen shouted "Quick!" and never before had I[10] seen his axe so promptly wielded. * * *

Mere scratches in the ice, however, were all the axe could accomplish;[11] and on these we steadied ourselves[12] with the energy of desperate men.[13] Benen was first,[14] and I followed him, while the stones flew thick[15] beside and between us. Once an ugly[16] lump made right at me: I might perhaps have dodged[17] it, but Benen saw it coming, turned, caught[18] it on the handle of his axe as a cricketer[19] catches a ball, and thus deflected it from me. The labour of his axe was here for a time[20] divided between the projectiles and the ice, while at every pause in the volley[21] "he cut[22] a step and sprang forward." Had the peril been

[1] *Overhead*, über uns.

[2] Turn *there was* by 'we had,' and *a* by 'any.'

[3] Turn *a—stuck* by 'stood a rock here firmly.'

[4] *Chanced to be*, war zufällig. Turn *missile* by 'stone.'

[5] *Set...loose*, here losgelöst.

[6] *Directly—fire*, dem Feuer direct ausgesetzt.

[7] Render here *projectile* by Ladung, and *shoot* by hinfliegen.

[8] *A—fry*, eine Menge kleinern Kalibers. Render *each* by ein jeder, placing this expression after *however*. *Of them*, von denen.

[9] *Quite competent*, völlig im Stande war. Turn *to crack* by 'to annihilate,' and form for *human life* a compound expression of *men* and *life* by simple juxtaposition.

[10] Supply here the pronoun *him*.

So promptly wielded, mit solcher Geschwindigkeit handhaben.

[11] *To accomplish*, zu Stande bringen.

[12] *We steadied ourselves*, faßten wir festen Fuß.

[13] Translate *of desperate men* by der Verzweiflung, *i.e.* of despair.

[14] *Was first*, say ging voran.

[15] *Thick*, here in dichten Massen.

[16] Translate *ugly* by gefährlich, *i.e.* dangerous; *made—me*, kam...gerade auf mich zu.

[17] *Dodged*, here ausweichen, which verb governs the dative.

[18] Render *to catch* by auffangen and *on* by mit.

[19] *Cricketer*, Cricketspieler; *to deflect*, ablenken.

[20] *For a time*, eine Zeitlang.

[21] *Volley*, say Ladungen.

[22] *To cut*, here einhauen.

less, it would have been amusing[1] to see our contortions as we fenced with[2] our swarming foes. A final[3] jump landed us on an embankment out[4] of the direct line of fire which raked[5] the gully; and we thus escaped a danger new[6] in this form and extremely exciting to us all.—JOHN TYNDALL, *Mountaineering in* 1861.

XXIX.

A PRISON SCENE.*

(A Souterrain[7] in the Fortress. Prisoners seated[8] at a table. Other prisoners coming in and going off[9] at the side. The scene dimly lighted.)

CHANNEL, FIREBRACE, PALLMALL, *and* BEAVER *on.*[10]

[*All the prisoners are singing, and Pallmall playing his flute, to drown*[11] *the noise without, which at intervals is heard through the chorus.*]

"Rule, Britannia; Britannia, rule the waves!
For Britons never, never shall be slaves."

HEYD. [*Looking in from*[12] *side.*] Another stave—another, and the stars will twinkle on[13] us. [*Disappears.*]

[1] *Amusing*, ergötzlich or amüsant.
[2] *Fenced with*, say uns gegen...vertheidigten; *swarming*, wimmelnden.
[3] Turn *final* by 'last,' and *landed us on* by 'brought us to;' *embankment*, Erhöhung.
[4] *Out*, here außerhalb. The military expression for *line of fire* is Schußlinie.
[5] *Raked* may here be freely translated by beherrschte.
[6] Supply mir before *new*.
[7] The above expression, derived from the Latin *subterraneus*, may also be retained in German.
[8] Turn here *seated* by 'sit.'
[9] *Coming—off*, gehen ein und aus
[10] *On*, say auf der Bühne.
[11] *To drown* (a noise), dämpfen; *without*, von außen
[12] Use the definite article.
[13] *Twinkle on* = shine on.

* For the understanding of the above extract—given with a few omissions—it will suffice to mention that it forms the last scene of the drama "The Prisoner of War," in which some Englishmen are represented as having been made prisoners during the French wars, and trying to effect an escape before their impending transportation to a place of close confinement.

CHAN. Keep up[1] Britannia, my hearts, though our throats crack! [*All sing.*]

"Rule, Britannia; Britannia, rule the waves!
For Britons never, never shall be slaves."

HEYD. The work's done, our cage is open!

FIRST PRISONER. We've had a rare spell of it,[2] but 'tis done at last.

HEYD. Luckily the night is as dark as pitch.[3] When we have swum the moat——

PALLM. What! must we swim?

HEYD. Ay, or sink.

PALLM. Oh, I'm enough[4] *of a* philosopher to know the alternative.[5]

CHAN. Well,[6] lads, what[7] we *have* groaned, have toiled for, is accomplished. Moments are precious. Are all prepared?

ALL. [*Except Firebrace and Beaver.*] All! All!

FIREB. May Freedom shine upon[8] your paths, and light ye scathless to her home, her old abiding-place, her temple, and her rock—England! Farewell!

ALL. How?

FIREB. I do not quit the fortress.

FIRST PRISONER. Wherefore, sir?

FIREB. It matters not.[9] I am master of my will, accountant[10] solely to myself.

CHAN. Not so, sir. This is no private venture.[11] There is no man here—or should be none—who is not inalienably sworn[12] to dare the common peril of this night.

FIREB. Sworn?

[1] *To keep up*, aufrecht erhalten. *Hearts* may here be turned by 'friends.'

[2] *We've—it*, say 'S war ein ſchwer Stück Arbeit.

[3] *As dark as pitch* = pitch-black. *To swim*, here durchſchwimmen.

[4] *Enough* is to be placed after *philosopher*.

[5] Retain the same expression.

[6] *Well*, here nun.

[7] Translate *what . . . for* by was wenach, and supply was wefür before *toiled*. Turn *moments are* by 'the time is.'

[8] *Shine upon*, erhellen; *light ye*, say Euch geleiten; *scathless* = safe.

[9] *It matters not*, einerlei. Turn *master—will* by 'my own master.'

[10] *Accountant*, verantwortlich.

[11] *Private venture*, Privatunternehmen.

[12] *Who—sworn*, der nicht unverbrüchlich geſchworen hätte.

CHAN. Sir, when men join for Freedom, the cause itself does consecrate the act.

FOREST. Lieutenant Firebrace, I am no talker:[1] but this much I'll say. To skulk in an enemy's gaol, when the enemy might be fought[2] upon the sea, is hardly the act[3] of a true sailor; and, if you will, I'll add,[4] of an honest man.

FIREB. Fear not, sir: you shall have another time for these opinions.[5]

CHAN. Lieutenant Firebrace, will you join us? Or, failing,[6] with some grace of honour, render back your commission[7] to the king?

FIREB. My life wrung out by torture first![8] [*Aside.* To be thus stung, humiliated!] On, gentlemen, I'll lead you!

CHAN. No, sir: as senior[9] officer that post is mine. Even as runaways we'll keep up some discipline.

BEAVER. Captain Channel, as a civilian,[10] I am excused this trial.

FIREB. [*To Channel, pointing to Beaver.*] If he remain, I stir not.[11]

CHAN. None are excused[12]—none. It is a common cause, and all must bear their part in it.[13]

FIREB. [*Aside to Heyday, pointing to Beaver.*] Tom, let him not slip.[14]

HEYD. [*Aside to Firebrace.*] Be sure on't.[15]

CHAN. And now, gentlemen, a sudden[16] farewell with all.

[1] *Talker*, Schwätzer; *but—much*, nur ſo viel.

[2] Turn *the—fought* by 'one can fight (bekämpfen) the enemy.'

[3] *Is—act*, say iſt kaum...würdig.

[4] *I'll add*, füg' ich hinzu.

[5] *Have — opinions*, transl. noch Gelegenheit haben dieſe Meinungen zu äußern.

[6] *Failing*, here widrigen Falles; *with — honour*, mit einigem Ehrgefühl.

[7] *Commission* (of an officer), Patent.

[8] *My—first*, eher auf der Folter ſterben; *stung*, verletzt. *Thus* should be repeated before *humiliated*; *on* (as an exclamation), vorwärts.

[9] *Senior* = oldest; *runaway*, Flüchtling.

[10] *Civilian*, Civiliſt; *I am excused*, bleibt mir...erlaſſen.

[11] *I stir not*, weiche ich nicht vom Flecke.

[12] *None are excused*, Niemand darf ſich ausſchließen.

[13] *All—it*, Jeder muß Theil daran nehmen.

[14] *Slip*, here entſchlüpfen.

[15] *Be sure on't*, verlaß dich darauf.

[16] Turn *sudden* by 'short,' and *with all* by the dative of *all*.

FIREB. Captain Channel,—

CHAN. Well, sir?

FIREB. Will you part my enemy?[1]

CHAN. [*Going.*[2]] The time is urgent, sir.

FIREB. Oh think it so![3] Heaven knows, we ne'er may meet again. Part not in[4] anger with me! I have been rash[5] and thankless, but say farewell, Basil! Let the orphan you nourished and protected once more hear your friendly voice, once more grasp[6] your friendly hand. Say farewell, Basil!—one farewell.

CHAN. Farewell, Firebrace, farewell! On! [*All the prisoners are hurrying off, when a party*[7] *of soldiers, commanded by officer, appear at the opposite door with presented arms.*]

OFFICER. Hold!

PRISONERS. Betrayed?

OFFICER. You mistake[8] the route. This way[9] lies the road to Bitche.

CHAN. [*Aside.*] Treason! treason!

OFFICER. You have worked well,[10] gentlemen, but have lost your pains. Fall in,[11] and at the word,—march!

Enter CHENILLE.

CHEN. Captain Channel, ere you quit Verdun, the governor would grant[12] a lady's prayer.

Enter CLARINA *and* POLLY PALLMALL.

CLAR. Father! [*Throwing herself in his arms.*] Leave me not unblest![13]

[1] *My enemy*, say als Feind von mir.

[2] *Going*, im Abgehen; *is urgent*, drängt.

[3] *Think it so*, bedenken Sie das. Turn *we—again* by 'whether we shall see each other again.'

[4] Supply the definite article, and render *with me* by von mir.

[5] *Rash*, unbesonnen; *thankless* = ungrateful.

[6] Translate *grasp* by drücken.

[7] Turn here *party* by 'troop,' and supply 'a' before *officer*. *With—arms*, mit vorgehaltenem Gewehr.

[8] *To mistake*, here sich irren; *the route* = in the way.

[9] *This way*, in dieser Richtung.

[10] *Well*, say tüchtig; *have—pains*, Ihre Mühe war vergebens.

[11] *To fall in*, sich formiren; *at the word*, here auf's Commando.

[12] *Would grant*, will...erfüllen.

[13] *Unblest* = without thy blessing

CHAN. Farewell! thou hast[1] my blessing.

CHEN. Stay,[2] Captain; a letter from the governor.

CHAN. [*Reads.*] "To Captain Channel. Sir,—though *I am made* the gaoler of brave men, I can yet admire their courage. As *a* soldier I am glad that the scoundrel who has betrayed ye does not disgrace[3] the uniform of his king. It would, however, have been my duty to consign you and your comrades to the fortress of Bitche. I am happy to be the medium of a better fortune. Enclosed is an order for the exchange of yourself and others therein named,[4] received this morning from the minister.—Vaillant, governor of the fortress of Verdun." Here's something more:[5]—"As for the traitor Beaver, his destination is"——

CHEN. [*Passing Beaver over*[6] *to the soldiers.*] Bitche. 'Parole d'honneur,' Bitche. [*Beaver is immediately marched off.*[7]]

PALLM. Is[8] my name there? [*Taking paper.*] It is! Then I have friends in London still.[9]

POLLY. Exchanged! Oh, if I get safe[10] to England, and can only recollect my foreign feelings,[11] won't I write[12] a book! And now we're all to go[13] to England.—DOUGLAS JERROLD, *The Prisoner of War.*

[1] Turn *thou hast* by 'I give thee.'

[2] *Stay*, here Halt.

[3] *To disgrace* here schänden; *to consign* zu schaffen; *medium*, say Verfügtiger. Render here *fortune* by Geschick.

[4] *For—named*, zur Auswechselung Ihrer selbst und sonstiger Gefangenen die hier angegeben sind.

[5] *Here's — more*, hier steht noch etwas; *destination*, Bestimmungsort.

[6] *Passing...over*, übergebend.

[7] *Marched off*, fortgeführt.

[8] *Is* = stands. Use the definite article with *paper*, and turn *it is* by 'there it stands.'

[9] Translate *Then... still* by also ...doch noch, placing this expression before *friends*.

[10] Turn *safe* by 'happy.'

[11] Translate *foreign feelings* by Eindrücke in der Fremde.

[12] *Won't I write*, say dann schreib' ich sicherlich.

[13] *We're—go*, gehen wir Alle.

XXX.

A WORD FOR THE GERMANS.

We venture[1] to suggest that this phrase * is quite insufficient to express the 'differentia'[2] of the German people. In the first place, only a small proportion of them are metaphysicians; quite as many are bakers, making[3] excellent bread—not inferior, perhaps, to the British in any quality except heaviness. Secondly, the most eminent *of* German metaphysicians, Kant, is cloudy[4] in no other sense than that in which a mathematician is cloudy to one ignorant of mathematics. What book[5] more nebulous than 'Euclid' to a reader acquainted neither with the subject-matter nor with the terminology? What more Laputan[6] and unpractical than algebraic formulæ to one who has never studied algebra? Kant was a rigorous thinker, who, like all other rigorous thinkers, felt the need of terms undefaced by long currency, free from confusing associations. The recipe for understanding Kant is first to get brains[7] capable of following his argument, and next to master his terminology. Observing[8] this recipe, the "Critique of Pure Reason"[9] is not indeed easy reading, but it is not in the least cloudy. It is not fit for the club[10]

[1] Supply the pron. 'it;' *to suggest*, here anreuten; *phrase*, Redensart.

[2] The corresponding scientific German expression is Merkmale.

[3] Turn *making* by 'who bake.'

[4] *Cloudy*, used figuratively, unklar; *to*, here für.

[5] Supply the verb 'is.'

[6] *What more Laputan*, was ist mehr laputanisch. The expression *Laputan* is taken from Swift's "Gulliver's Travels," and is used to denote strange, visionary theories.

[7] *To get brains*, say sich einen Kopf anzuschaffen, and supply 'which is' before *capable*. *Argument* is here to be rendered by Raisonnement, and *next* by dann.

[8] *Observing* = if we observe.

[9] The German title of the above work is: „Kritik der reinen Vernunft." *Not indeed*, freilich keine; *reading*, here Lectüre.

[10] The word *club* is also used in German: here it forms with *table* a compound expression.

* The phrase alluded to is 'the cloudy metaphysician,' not unfrequently used with reference to the 'typical German.'

table. Some gentleman there, turning over the pages,[1] and seeing such terms as 'synthetic judgments,' 'antinomies,' and the like, would be conscious[2] of superior clearness of head, and say, "Bosh! what dreamers these Germans are!" But, possibly, if that clear-headed clubman were imperatively called upon to declare the meaning of 'coefficient'[3] and 'hypothenuse,' and assured that no smiling would be accepted as legal tender for knowledge, he would discover that these terms also are painfully cloudy. It is one of the interesting weaknesses common to us men to suppose that clearness ends where our own vision fails.

Thirdly, we object to[4] 'cloudy metaphysician' as the accepted periphrasis for a German, because it has begotten another habit of speech which the most constant familiarity could not endear to us. Views are set aside by saying[5] that "they are German." Doubtless there is a peculiarly German view of things,[6] as there is an English view, a French view, a Hindu view, and so on,[7] down to a Patagonian view, perhaps the least metaphysical of all. The English view may be the soundest, and all but born Englishmen may be comparatively pitiable. But the human race has not been educated on a plan of uniformity,[8] and it is precisely that partition of mankind into races and nations, resulting in various national points of view or varieties of national genius, which has been the means of enriching and rendering more and more complete man's knowledge[9] of the inner and outer world. * * * And no one who has an acquaintance worth mentioning[10] with the

[1] Render *turning—pages* by indem er es durchblättert, and turn *seeing* by 'finds.' *Synthetic judgments*, ſynthetiſche Urtheile; *antinomies*, Antinomien.

[2] *To be conscious*, ſich bewußt ſein. Supply 'a' after *of*. *Bosh* (the exclamation), Unſinn.

[3] *Coefficient*, Coefficient.

[4] *We object to*, machen wir Einwürfe gegen den; *begotten*, erzeugt.

[5] *Are — saying*, werden mit den Worten verworfen.

[6] Render *view of things* and *view* throughout the sentence by Anſchauungsweiſe, joining it by means of hyphens to Hindu.

[7] *On*, in the above phrase, weiter, *Patagonian*, patagoniſch.

[8] *On — uniformity*, nach einem gleichförmigen Plane; *resulting in*, say die...hervorbringt.

[9] *Man's knowledge*, say die menſchliche Erkenntniß.

[10] *Worth mentioning*, nennenswerth to be placed before *acquaintance*.

productions of the German mind in any one department is unaware that the peculiarities of that mind, its characteristic qualities, have been the source of pre-eminently important contributions to the sum of our mental wealth.

The German mind possesses in a high degree two tendencies which are often represented as opposed to each other—namely, largeness[1] of theoretic conception and thoroughness in the investigation of facts. So undeniable is it that the typical German has these tendencies, that their excess is the very vice[2] he is reproached with by those who know him and don't like him. Your German, it is said, cannot write about the drama without going back to the Egyptian mysteries; he sees that everything is related to everything else, and is determined to exhaust you and the subject; his doctrine is all-embracing,[3] and so is his detail. Quite true. No man is less disposed than our German to accept a too slight induction, to let pass an inaccuracy of statement, or to report[4] a conclusion from imperfect observation or experiment; on the other hand, no man is more likely to be contemptuous towards desultory[5] labours which are not 'wissenschaftlich' (scientific)—*i.e.* not bound together by a rational doctrine, or conducted in the full sense of a need for such a doctrine. If he is an experimentor,[6] he will be thorough in his experiments; if he is a scholar, he will be thorough in his researches. Accordingly no one in this day really studies any subject without having recourse to German books, or else wishing he knew their language, that he might have recourse to them; and the foot-notes of every good French or English book that appears, whether in[7] scholarship,

[1] Render here *largeness* by eine Fülle, and *conception* by the plural of Begriff. *Thoroughness*, Gründlichkeit.

[2] *The very vice*, gerade der Fehler. Turn *he — with* by 'which is reproached to him.' *Your*, say Ihre pl.

[3] *All-embracing*, allumfassend, *so — details*, ebenso sind auch seine Details.

[4] Translate *to report* by sund zu thun, and *from* by in Folge. By using in the plural the nouns *observation* and *experiment*, which are in German of different genders, a great difficulty as regards the construction will be avoided.

[5] *Desultory*, resultatlos; *bound together*, verknüpft; *need*, here Bedürfniß.

[6] Translate *is an experimentor* by Experimente anstellt.

[7] Render here *in* by betreffend, placing this term after *science*.

history, or natural science,[1] are filled with references to German authors. Without them historical criticism would have been simply nowhere: take away[2] the Germans, with their patience, their thoroughness, their need for a doctrine which refers all transient and material manifestations to subtler and more permanent causes, and all that we most value in our appreciation of early history would have been wanting to us.

In fact, if any one in the present day can be called cultivated who dispenses with[3] a knowledge of German, it is because the two[4] other greatest literatures of the world are now impregnated[5] with the results of German labour and German genius. Let those who know this have the piety[6] to acknowledge it. Let those who do not know it abstain from portraying the typical German until they have made his acquaintance. We have no objection to caricatures; each nation should be content to lend itself[7] to the humour of the world in this passive way. But a caricature, to be good, must come from[8] close observation.—*From the* PALL-MALL GAZETTE (March 7, 1865).

[1] *Natural science,* Naturwiſſenſchaft; *references to,* here Hinweiſungen auf.

[2] *To take away,* here abſtrahiren.

[3] *Dispenses with,* entbehrt.

[4] Turn here *two* by 'both.'

[5] Render here *impregnated* by durchdrungen, and *with* by von.

[6] *Piety,* here Pietät.

[7] *Should—itself,* ſollte ſich willig... hergeben.

[8] Translate *come from* by aus einer...hervorgehen.

PART IV.

I.

LEIGH HUNT.

He was then at Hammersmith, occupying[1] a very plain and shabby little house in a contiguous range of others like it, with no prospect but that of an ugly village street, and certainly nothing to gratify his craving for a tasteful environment, inside or out. A slatternly maid-servant opened the door for us, and he himself stood in the entry—a beautiful, venerable old man, buttoned to the chin in a black dress-coat, tall and slender, with a countenance quietly alive all over, and the gentlest and most naturally courteous manner.

I have said that he was a beautiful old man. In truth I never saw a finer countenance, either as to the mould of features or the expression, nor any that showed the play of feeling so perfectly, without the slightest theatrical emphasis.[2] It was like a child's face in this respect. At my first glimpse of him, when he met us in the entry, I discerned that he was old, his long hair being white and his wrinkles many; it was an aged visage, in short, such as I had not at all expected to see, in spite of dates, because his books talk to the reader with the vivacity of youth. But when he began to speak, and as he grew more earnest in conversation, I ceased to be sensible of

[1] Render *occupying* by wo er...bewohnte; *like it* by eben ſolcher Häuſer and *craving* by Bedürfniß.

[2] *Emphasis*, Emphaſe.

his age: sometimes, indeed, its dusky shadow darkened through the gleam[1] which his sprightly thoughts diffused about his face, but then another flash of youth came out of his eyes, and made an illumination again. I never witnessed such a wonderfully illusive transformation, before or since; and to this day, trusting only to my recollection, I should find it difficult to decide which was his genuine and stable predicament, youth or age.—NATHANIEL HAWTHORNE, *Our Old Home.*

II.

BYRON TO GOETHE.*

ILLUSTRIOUS[2] SIR, Leghorn, July 24, 1823.

I cannot thank you as you ought to be thanked[3] for the lines which my young friend, Mr. Stirling, sent me of yours; and it would but ill become me to pretend to

[1] *Darkened—gleam,* verdunkelte... den Schimmer.
[2] *Illustrious,* say Hochverehrter.
[3] Translate *as—thanked* by wie es sich ziemt, and turn *of yours* by 'from you.'

---

* I subjoin the verses alluded to in the following letter, thinking they cannot fail to be of great interest to the student of German.

An Lord Byron.

1823.

Ein freundlich Wort kommt eines nach dem andern
Von Süden her und bringt uns frohe Stunden;
Es ruft uns auf zum Edelsten zu wandern,
Nicht ist der Geist, doch ist der Fuß gebunden.

Wie soll ich dem, den ich so lang begleitet,
Nun etwas Trauliches in die Ferne sagen?
Ihm der sich selbst im Innersten bestreitet,
Stark angewohnt das nechste Weh zu tragen.

Wohl sei Ihm doch wenn er sich selbst empfindet!
Er wage selbst sich hoch beglückt zu nennen,
Wenn Musenkraft die Schmerzen überwindet;
Und wie ich Ihn erkannt mög' Er sich kennen.

exchange verses* with him who for[1] fifty years has been the undisputed sovereign of European literature. You must therefore accept my most sincere acknowledgments in prose—and in hasty prose too; for I am[2] at present on my voyage to Greece once more, and surrounded by hurry and bustle, which hardly allow a moment even to gratitude and admiration to express themselves.

I sailed from Genoa some days ago, was driven back by a gale of wind, and have since sailed again and arrived here, Leghorn, this morning, to receive on board some Greek passengers for their struggling country.

Here also I found your lines and Mr. Stirling's letter; and I could not have had a more favourable omen, a more agreeable surprise, than a word of Goethe, written by his own hand.

I am returning to Greece, to see if I can be of any little use[3] there. If ever I come back, I will pay a visit to Weimar, to offer the sincere homage of one of the many millions of your admirers. I have the honour to be, ever and most,

Your obliged,[4]

NOEL BYRON.

[1] *For*, here seit.
[2] Insert here abermals, and turn *surrounded by* by 'in the midst of.'
[3] *Of—use*, von einigem Nutzen.
[4] *Obliged* (in concluding a letter), Ergebener.

* Goethe added afterwards, to the verses given on the preceding page, the following remark:

Dieser merkwürdige Mann hatte manches Freundliche schriftlich und mündlich durch Reisende begrüßend nach Weimar gelangen lassen, welches ich durch jene Strophen zu erwiedern für Pflicht hielt. Sie trafen ihn noch glücklicher Weise in Livorno, eben als er für Griechenland sich einzuschiffen im Begriff war, und veranlakten ihn noch zu einer schriftlichen Erwiederung vom 21 Juli 1823, die mir unschätzbar bleibt, etc.

III.

THE FLOOD.[1]

At that moment Maggie felt a startling sensation of sudden cold about her knees and feet: it was water flowing under her. She started up: the stream was flowing under the door that led into the passage. She was not bewildered for an instant—she knew it was the flood! * * *

There was a step down into the room at the door leading to the staircase: she saw that the water was already on a level with the step. While she was looking, something came with a tremendous crash against the window, and sent the leaded panes and the old wooden framework inwards in shivers, the water pouring in after it.

"It is the boat!" cried Maggie.

And without a moment's shudder of fear she plunged through the water, which was rising fast to her knees, and by the glimmering light of the candle she had left on the stairs she mounted on to the window-sill, and crept into the boat, which was left with the prow lodging and protruding through the window.

In the first moment Maggie felt nothing, thought of nothing, but that she had suddenly passed away from that life which she had been dreading; it was the transition of[2] death without its agony: and she was alone in the darkness with God.

The whole thing[3] had been so rapid, so dreamlike, that the threads of ordinary association were broken; she sank down on the seat, clutching the oar mechanically, and for a long while had no distinct conception of her position. The first thing that waked her to fuller consciousness was the cessation of the rain, and a perception that the darkness was divided by the faintest light, which parted the

[1] *Flood* = inundation.

[2] Use here zu with the requisite definite article.

[3] Turn *thing* by 'event,' and translate *association* by Zusammenhang. *Broken* = torn.

overhanging gloom from the immeasurable watery level[1] below. She was driven out upon the flood—that awful visitation of God which her father used to talk of—which had made[2] the nightmare of her childish dreams. And with that thought *there* rushed in[3] the vision of the old home, and Tom, and her mother; they had all listened together.

"O God, where am I? Which is the way home?" she cried out, in the dim loneliness.* * *

She seized an oar and began to paddle[4] the boat forward with the energy of wakening hope: the dawning seemed to advance more swiftly now she was in action; and she could soon see the poor dumb beasts crowding piteously on a mound where they had taken refuge. Onward she paddled and rowed by turns in the growing twilight; her wet clothes clung round her, and her streaming hair was dashed about by the wind, but she was hardly conscious of any bodily sensation—except a sensation of strength, inspired by mighty emotion. Along with[5] the sense of danger and possible rescue for those long-remembered beings at the old home *there* was an undefined sense of reconcilement with her brother: what quarrel, what harshness, what unbelief in each other, can subsist in the presence of a great calamity, when all the artificial vesture[6] of our life is gone, and we are all one with each other in primitive mortal needs?[7] Vaguely Maggie felt this—in the strong resurgent love towards her brother that swept away all the later impressions of hard, cruel offence and misunderstanding, and left only the deep, underlying, unshakable memories of early union. * * *

She must get her boat into the current of the Floss,[8] else she would never be able to pass the Ripple,[8] and approach the house. This was the thought that occurred

[1] *Watery level*, Waſſerfläche.
[2] *Made* = formed.
[3] *Rushed in*, say beſtürmte ſie.
[4] The verb *to paddle* has, in the above signification, no exact equivalent in German. Some render it by mit der Bagaje (paddle) rudern and others briefly by the allied paddeln.
[5] *Along with*, say verbunden mit.
[6] *Vesture*, Hülle.
[7] *Needs*, here Noth.
[8] Retain in German the same expressions.

to her, as she imagined with more and more vividness the state of things round the old home. But then she might be carried very far down, and be unable to guide her boat out of the current again. For the first time distinct ideas of danger began to press upon her; but there was no choice of courses, no room for hesitation, and she floated into the current. Swiftly she went now, without effort; more and more clearly in the lessening distance and the growing light she began to discern the objects that she knew must be the well-known trees and roofs; nay, she was not far off a rushing muddy current, that must be the strangely altered Ripple.* * *

With panting joy that she was there at last—joy that overcame[1] all distress—Maggie neared the front of the house. At first she heard no sound: she saw no object moving. Her boat was on a level with the up-stairs windows. She called out in a loud piercing voice:

"Tom, where are you? Mother, where are you? Here is Maggie!"

Soon, from the window of the attic, in the central gable, she heard Tom's voice:

"Who is it? Have you brought a boat?"

"It is I, Tom—Maggie! Where is mother?"

"She is not here; she went to Garum the day before yesterday. I'll come down to the lower window. Alone, Maggie?" said Tom, in a voice of deep astonishment, as he opened the middle window, on a level with the boat.

"Yes, Tom. God has taken care of me, to bring me to you. Get in quickly. Is there no one else?"

"No," said Tom, stepping into the boat. "Give me the oars, Maggie." * * *

They sat mutely gazing at each other: Maggie with eyes of intense life[2] looking out from a weary, beaten face; Tom pale, with a certain awe and humiliation. Thought was busy, though the lips were silent; and though he could ask no question, he guessed a story of miraculous

[1] Transl. *overcame* by verscheuchte, and turn *up-stairs* by 'upper.'

[2] *Of intense life*, gesteigerter Lebenskraft; *beaten*, here abgemattet.

divinely-protected[1] effort. But at last a mist gathered over[2] the blue-grey eyes, and the lips found a word they could utter—the old childish "Magsie!"

Maggie could make no answer but a long deep sob, of that mysterious, wondrous happiness, that is one with pain.

Tom rowed with untired vigour, and with a different speed from poor Maggie's. The boat was soon in the current of the river again, and soon they would be at Tofton.

Nothing else was said; a new danger was being carried towards them by the river. Some wooden machinery had just given way on one of the wharves, and huge fragments were being floated along. The sun was rising now, and the wide area of the watery desolation[3] was spread out in dreadful clearness round them; in dreadful clearness floated onwards the hurrying, threatening masses. A large company, in a boat that was working its way[4] along under the Tofton houses, observed their danger, and shouted, "Get[5] out of the current!"

But that could not be done at once, and Tom, looking before him, saw death rushing on them.

Huge fragments, clinging together in fatal fellowship, made one wide mass across the stream.

"It is coming, Maggie!" Tom said, in a deep hoarse voice, loosing the oars, and clasping her.

The next instant the boat was no longer seen upon the water, and the huge mass was hurrying on in hideous triumph.

But soon the keel of the boat re-appeared—a black speck on the golden water.

The boat re-appeared, but brother and sister had gone down in an embrace never to be parted; living through again in one supreme moment the days when they had clasped their little hands in love, and roamed the daisied fields together.—GEORGE ELIOT, *The Mill on the Floss*.

[1] *Divinely-protected*, vom Himmel beschützter.
[2] *A—over*, say wurden...überflort.
[3] *Watery desolation*, Wasserwüste.
[4] *Was—way*, sich durcharbeitete.
[5] Turn *Get* by 'quick.'

IV.

INDUSTRY OF MUSICIANS.

Handel[1] was an indefatigable and constant worker; he was never cast down by defeat, but his energy seemed to increase the more that adversity struck him. When a prey to his mortifications as an insolvent debtor,[2] he did not give way for a moment, but in one year produced his "Saul," "Israel," the music for Dryden's "Ode," his "Twelve Grand Concertos," and the opera of "Jupiter in Argos," among[3] the finest of his works. As his biographer said of him, "He braved everything, and by his unaided self accomplished the work of twelve men."

Haydn, speaking of his art, said: "It consists in taking up a subject and pursuing it." "Work," said Mozart, "is my chief pleasure." Beethoven's favourite maxim was: "The barriers are not erected which can say to aspiring talents and industry, 'Thus far and no farther.'" John Sebastian Bach said of himself: "I was industrious. Whoever is equally sedulous, will be equally successful." But there is no doubt that Bach was born with a passion for music, which formed the mainspring of his industry, and was the true secret of his success. When a mere youth, his elder brother, wishing to turn his abilities in another direction, destroyed a collection of studies which the young Sebastian, being denied candles,[4] had copied by moonlight, proving the strong natural bent of the boy's genius. Of Meyerbeer Bayle thus wrote from Milan in 1820: "He is a man of some talent, but no genius; he lives solitary, working fifteen hours a day at music." Years passed, and Meyerbeer's hard work fully brought out[5] his genius, as

[1] In English the modification of the *a* in the name of *Handel* is usually dropped. In German it must be retained.

[2] *As—debtor*, als Insolvent.

[3] Turn *among* by 'which belong to;' *by—self*, durch eigene Kraft.

[4] Turn *being denied candles* by 'since candles were denied to him.'

[5] *To bring out*, here entfalten.

displayed in his "Roberto," "Huguenots," "Prophète," and other works, confessedly among the greatest operas which have been produced in modern times. Although musical composition is not an art in which Englishmen have as yet greatly distinguished themselves, their energies having for the most part taken other and more practical directions, we are not without native illustrations[1] of the power of perseverance in this special pursuit. Arne was an upholsterer's son, intended[2] by his father for the legal profession; but his love of[3] music was so great, that he could not be withheld from pursuing it. While engaged in an attorney's office, his means were very limited; but, to gratify his tastes, he was accustomed to borrow a livery and go into the gallery of the Opera, then appropriated to domestics. Unknown to[4] his father, he made great progress with the violin, and the first knowledge his father had of the circumstance was, when accidentally calling at the house of a neighbouring gentleman, he found his son playing the leading instrument[5] with a party of musicians. This incident decided the fate of Arne. His father offered no further opposition to his wishes, and the world thereby lost a lawyer, but gained a musician of much taste and delicacy of feeling, who added many valuable works to our stores of English music.—SAMUEL SMILES, *Self-Help*.

[1] Translate *native illustrations* by Beiſpiele aus der Heimath.

[2] Turn *intended* by 'destined;' *legal profession*, Advocatenſtand.

[3] See page 62, note 12.

[4] Translate *unknown to* by ohne Wiſſen, which is to be followed by the genitive case.

[5] Turn *leading instrument* by 'first violin.'

V.

COURAGE.

Courage is one of the commonest words in the language. The quality which it denotes is the object of more general admiration and ambition than any other. It is a virtue which is at once common and honourable in the highest degree, and it produces results so broad[1] and striking, that every one considers himself, and in some points of view has a right to consider himself, entitled to form an opinion as to its existence and extent. It seems as if it were from personal experience that the distinction is continually drawn between moral and physical courage, to the advantage[2] of the former. The distinction is interesting, not only in relation to the subject to which it refers, but also because it affords a curious and almost a solitary[3] specimen of the kind of contributions which mere casual observation can make to the examination of mental qualities. The distinction is usually drawn in some such terms as these. Physical courage is readiness to expose oneself to the chance of physical pain or death, and arises principally from the nature of the bodily constitution. Moral courage is readiness to expose oneself to suffering or inconvenience which does not affect the body. It arises from the firmness of moral principle, and is independent of the physical constitution. The courage of the soldier in battle is usually taken as the illustration of the one ; the courage of a religious man, who incurs ridicule by the profession of his belief, is the standing example of the other. * * *

The distinction between moral and physical courage is, in fact, a distinction[4] without a difference. It does not

[1] *Broad,* here umfaſſend.

[2] Render here *to the advantage* by zu Gunſten.

[3] *Solitary,* alleinſtehend.

[4] The synonymous expressions *distinction* and *difference* may be rendered respectively by Unterſcheidung and Unterſchied. Further on *distinction* is to be translated by Unterſchied.

describe two separate qualities, but only two manifestations of the same quality, which are not only not inconsistent with, but can hardly be said to be independent of, each other. Nothing is more easy than to put cases which show that there are many forms of courage to which this distinction has no application. If a soldier risks his life in storming a battery, that, it is said, is physical courage. If a man risks infamy for the sake of friendship or religious principle, that is moral courage. Suppose a man risks his life—as in the case of persecution—for religious principle, is that moral or physical courage? If it is called moral courage, then moral courage may be shown in encountering the risk of physical pain. If it is called physical courage, then physical courage may be independent of the bodily constitution. Most persons would probably accept the first branch of the alternative, and admit that moral courage may be shown in encountering the risk of physical pain; and this is certainly the most plausible view of the case, for no doubt there would seem to be a contrast between the state of mind of the martyr and of the soldier, which does not appear on comparing the martyr in person with the martyr in prospects and reputation. * * *

The most general notion which can be formed of courage is, that it is that mental quality which prompts men to do, or that mental habit which consists in doing, that which, for any reason, they have determined to do, notwithstanding the certainty or the probability that consequences which the person acting dislikes or wishes to avoid will be incurred in doing it.—ESSAYS BY A BARRISTER. (*Reprinted from the* SATURDAY REVIEW.)

VI.

MARTIN LUTHER.

Luther was a native of[1] Eisleben, in Saxony, and, though born of poor parents, had received a learned education, during the progress of which he gave many indications of uncommon vigour and acuteness of genius.[2] His mind was naturally susceptible of serious sentiments, and tinctured with somewhat of that religious melancholy which delights in the solitude and devotion of a monastic life.

The death of a companion, killed by lightning at his side in a violent thunderstorm, made such an impression on his mind as co-operated[3] with his natural temper in inducing him to retire into a convent of Augustinian friars, where, without suffering the entreaties of his parents to divert him from what he thought his duty to God, he assumed the habit of that order. He soon acquired great reputation, not only for piety, but for his love of knowledge and his unwearied application to study. He had been taught[4] the scholastic philosophy and theology which were then in vogue by very able masters, and wanted not penetration to comprehend all the niceties[5] and distinctions with which they abound; but his understanding, naturally sound, and superior to everything frivolous, soon became disgusted with[6] those subtle and uninstructive sciences, and sought for some more solid foundation of knowledge and of piety in the Holy Scriptures. Having found a copy of the Bible, which lay neglected in the library of his monastery, he abandoned[7] all other pursuits,

[1] *A native of,* gebürtig aus.
[2] *Genius,* here Verſtand.
[3] Translate *as co-operated* by daß er in Uebereinſtimmung, and turn *in inducing* by 'induced.'
[4] Turn *taught* by 'instructed in.'
[5] *Niceties,* here Spitzfindigkeiten.
[6] *To become disgusted with,* here einen Widerwillen faſſen gegen. The expression *uninstructive* may here be rendered by wenig belehrenden.
[7] Turn *abandoned* by 'gave up.'

and devoted himself to the study of it with such eagerness and assiduity as astonished the monks, who were little accustomed to derive[1] their theological notions from that source.

The great progress which he made in this uncommon course of study[2] augmented so much the fame both of his sanctity and of his learning, that Frederic, Elector of Saxony, having founded an university at Wittemberg, on the Elbe, the place of his residence, Luther was chosen first to teach philosophy, and afterwards theology there, and discharged both offices in such a manner, that he was deemed the chief ornament of that society.—WILLIAM ROBERTSON, *History of Emperor Charles V.*

VII.

CHRISTMAS.

To-morrow, to-morrow is merry Christmas! and when its night descends, there will be mirth and music and the light sound of the merry twinkling[3] feet in these now so melancholy walls; and sleep, now reigning over[3] all the house save this one room, will be banished far over the sea; and morning will be reluctant to allow her light to break up[4] the innocent orgies.

Were every Christmas of which we have been present at the celebration[5] painted according to nature, what a gallery of pictures! True that a sameness would pervade them all, but only that kind of sameness that pervades the nocturnal heavens. One clear night only is, to common eyes, just like another: for what hath any night to show

[1] *To derive,* here ſchöpfen.
[2] *Course of duty,* Studienrichtung.
[3] *Merry twinkling,* luſtig trippelnder. Turn here *over* by 'in.'
[4] *To break up* = to interrupt.
[5] Turn *were — celebration* by 'if every Christmas at whose celebration we have been present, were.'

but one moon and some stars; a blue vault, *with* here a few braided,[1] and there a few castellated, clouds? Yet no two nights ever bore more than a family resemblance to each other before the studious[2] and instructed eye of him who has long communed with nature, and is familiar with every smile and frown on her changeful, but not capricious, countenance.* * *

My father's house! how it is ringing, like a grove in spring, with the din of creatures happier, a thousand times happier, than all the birds on earth. It is the Christmas holidays — Christmas-day itself — Christmas-night[3]—and joy intensifies love. Never before were we brothers and sisters so dear to one another; never before had our hearts so yearned towards the authors[4] of our being, our blissful being! There they sit, silent in all that outcry, composed in all that disarray, still in all that tumult: yet, as one or other flying imp sweeps round the chair, a father's hand will playfully strive to catch a prisoner; a mother's gentler touch on some sylph's disordered simar[5] be felt almost as a reproof, and for a moment slacken the fairy flight. One old game treads on the heels of another[6]—twenty within the hour—and many a new game, never heard of before or since, struck out by the collision of kindred spirits in their glee, the transitory fancies of genius inventive through very delight.

PROFESSOR WILSON, *Recreations of Christopher North.*

[1] *Braided*, say Federwolken; *castellated*, aufgethürmte.

[2] *Studious*, here forſchend.

[3] The expression *Christmas-night* cannot be literally rendered here, since Chriſtnacht or Weihnachtsabend denotes in German 'the eve preceding the Christmas-day,' and here 'the eve following the Christmas-day' is meant; say therefore der Abend des Weihnachtstages.

[4] Translate here *authors* by Urheber, and *being* by Daſein.

[5] *Simar*, Schärpe.

[6] *Treads — another*, folgt dicht auf das andere; *struck out*, say entſtanden.

VIII.

AN INNOCENT FORGERY.*

ALICE. [*Aside.*] There they are both. Ah! my dear aunt, my dear uncle, such good news!

MRS. BURR. What is it? What is it?

ALICE. Why, as I was returning from my lessons,[1] I met—I met—

SAMSON. [*Significantly.*] The postman, ah!

ALICE. Exactly. The postman—who—who—

SAMSON. Who gave you a letter; that's what postmen frequently do.[2]

ALICE. Yes, but who wrote the letter, dear auntie?[3]

MRS. BURR. I'm sure[4] I can't guess.

ALICE. It's from—from—dear Gussy.[5]

MRS. BURR. Ah! [*Snatches letter from Alice, and opens it hurriedly.*] No; I can't make it out.[6] I can read print pretty well, but I'm a poor hand at writing.

SAMSON. You read it, Alice! [*Whispers.* And mind you do justice to my style.]

ALICE. [*Reads.*] "My dear parents, this comes hoping to find you well, as, thank Heaven, it leaves me at present."[7]

MRS. BURR. The dear boy![8] That's the way a letter

[1] See page 98, note 15.

[2] *That's—do*, das pflegen Briefträger häufig zu thun.

[3] Render *auntie* by Tantchen.

[4] Render *I'm sure* by wirklich, placing it before *guess*.

[5] The corresponding German diminutive is Gusti.

[6] Turn *make it out* by 'read it.' *Print*, Gedrucktes; *I'm — writing*, Geschriebenes wird mir schwer.

[7] The corresponding familiar mode of expression would be in German: Ich befinde mich, Gott sei Dank, recht wohl, und hoffe daß Ihr Euch auch wohl befindet.

[8] Render *dear boy* by gute Junge and turn *that's the way* by 'so.'

* The above scene is taken from the popular play "The Porter's Knot," in which a young man is represented as having caused, by his imprudence, the ruin of his parents. He emigrates, and his father 'forges' a letter in order to comfort his broken-hearted mother. But their adopted daughter secretly adds a postscript, enclosing at the same time some money of her own.

ought to begin, though I don't think he used to write in that way from London.

ALICE. [*Whispers to Samson.*] You know what I told you, uncle; you would——

SAMSON. [*Whispers.*] Pooh! it's all right.

ALICE. "I am working hard,[1] and I'm making lots of money, which you will be glad to hear."

SAMSON. It's a pretty worded thing,[2] isn't it?

MRS. BURR. Does he say anything of his return?

SAMSON. Oh, yes! you have not come to that.

ALICE. [*Whispers.*] Uncle!

SAMSON. Ahem! I mean—he's sure to say something about that, as a matter of course.[3]

ALICE. [*Reads.*] "The time for my departure is not fixed."

SAMSON. [*Aside.*] Unfortunately we could not fix it better under the circumstances.

ALICE. [*Reads.*] "Best love to Alice, and no more at present. From your affectionate son, Augustus."

MRS. BURR. And that's all?

SAMSON. Of course; doesn't the lad say, "No more at present"? Quite enough, too. Ah! when we read a letter like that, we need not regret the money we laid out on Gussy's education.

ALICE. But, uncle, there is a postscript, after all;[4] look here.

SAMSON. Eh! so there is. [*Aside.* That has grown since this morning.]

ALICE. Suppose you read it, uncle.

MRS. BURR. Yes, do, Samson.

SAMSON. "As winter is coming on." [*Aside.* Egad, I know nothing about this.] "As winter is coming on, you will probably stand in need of many little comforts."[5] [*Aside.* This is all news to me.] "I have, therefore,

[1] Turn *hard* by 'heavily,' and *I'm — money* by 'I earn much money.'

[2] Turn *It's—thing* by 'the thing (Ding) is well written.'

[3] Turn *he's—course* by 'he will naturally say something about it.'

[4] *After all*, here ja doch, to be placed after *is*.

[5] *Stand—comforts*, allerhand kleine Bedürfnisse haben. Turn *all news* by 'quite new.'

inclosed you 10*l.* bank-note." Which is here [*producing note from inside the letter*].

MRS. BURR. A ten-pound bank-note!

SAMSON. The dear girl's own saving! Well, a ten-pound note! What do we want with his ten-pound note? I won't *have* it. I'll send it back.

ALICE. Not take the money sent by your own son?

SAMSON. [*Whispers to her.* Bless you, child,[1] take it back.] Well, if a father has not a right to return money sent by his own son, what's the good of being a father at all?

MRS. BURR. But, dear Samson, why should you refuse it?

SAMSON. Why, don't you see that?—why, of course—because—because—

MRS. BURR. The dear boy wishes to assist us in our poverty. It's very natural.

ALICE. Of course it is.

SAMSON. [*Whispers to Alice.*] "Of course it is!" You wicked little baggage,[2] robbing yourself in that way.

MRS. BURR. Your son gives you a lesson in foresight, that I trust will not be thrown away.

SAMSON. Ah! my son gives me a lesson, does he?[3] I am sure[4] I am very much obliged to him.

MRS. BURR. It's his duty, you know.

ALICE. Yes, his duty, uncle.

SAMSON. [*Whispers to Alice.*] You little pussy,[5] to play me such a trick.

MRS. BURR. I never heard such nonsense in my life; ashamed[6] to take money from your own son! Well, if you are so proud, give it to me; I'll soon find a use for it.

JOHN OXENFORD, *The Porter's Knot.*

[1] *Bless you, child,* transl. laß ſein, mein liebes Kind; *what's—all,* wozu iſt man denn überhaupt Vater.

[2] *You—baggage,* Du kleiner Taugenichts.

[3] Turn here, *does he* by 'so.

[4] See page 193, note 4.

[5] Translate here *pussy* by Schelm, i.e. rogue.

[6] *Ashamed,* say ſich ſchämen.

IX.

SIR JAMES MACKINTOSH.

My dear Sir,

You ask for some of your late father's letters. I am sorry to say I have none to send you. Upon[1] principle, I keep no letters except those on business. I have not a single letter from him, nor from any human being, in my possession.

The impression which the great talents and the amiable qualities of your father made upon me will remain as long as I remain. When I turn from living spectacles[2] of stupidity, ignorance, and malice, and wish to think better of the world, I remember my great and benevolent friend Mackintosh.

The first points of character[3] which everybody noticed in him were the total absence of envy, hatred, malice, and uncharitableness.[4] He could not hate; he did not know how to set about it.[5] The gall-bladder was omitted[6] in his composition; and if he could have been persuaded into any scheme of revenging himself upon an enemy, I am sure (unless he had been narrowly watched[7]) it would have ended in proclaiming the good qualities and promoting the interests of his adversary. Truth had so much more power over him than anger, that (whatever might be the provocation) he could not misrepresent nor exaggerate.

A high merit in Sir James Mackintosh was his real and unaffected[8] philanthropy. He did not make[9] the

[1] Render *upon* by aus, and *those on business* by Geſchäftsbriefe.

[2] Turn *spectacles* by 'examples.'

[3] *Points of character*, Charakterzüge.

[4] *Uncharitableness*, Liebloſigkeit.

[5] *How—it*, wie er es anfangen ſollte.

[6] Render *omitted* by fehlte, *composition* by Conſtitution, and *into* by zu.

[7] Translate *unless — watched* by wenn man ihm nicht genau aufpaßte, and supply damit before *ended*, turning the next clause by 'that he proclaimed the good qualities of his adversary, and promoted the interests of the same.'

[8] *Unaffected* = natural.

[9] *Did not make*, say benutzte nicht.

improvement of the great mass of mankind an engine of popularity and a stepping-stone to power,[1] but he had a genuine love of human happiness. Whatever might assuage the angry passions, and arrange the conflicting interests of nations; whatever could promote peace, increase knowledge, extend commerce, diminish crime, and encourage industry; whatever could exalt human character, and could enlarge human understanding, struck at once at[2] the heart of your father, and roused all his faculties. —SYDNEY SMITH, *Letter on the Character of Sir James Mackintosh.*

X.

THE SCIENCE OF HISTORY.[3]

There is yet a third* and *the* highest stage[4] of historical investigation, in which the aim is not simply to compose histories, but to construct a science of history. In this view the whole of the events which have befallen the human race, and the states through which it has passed, are regarded as a series of phenomena produced by causes, and susceptible[5] of explanation. All history is conceived as a progressive[6] chain of causes and effects, or (by an apter metaphor) as a gradually unfolding[7] web,

[1] *An—power*, say zum Werkzeug um populär und zum Mittel um mächtig zu werden.

[2] *Struck—at*, berührte sofort.

[3] The *science of history* is called in German Philosophie der Geschichte. The first traces of this science are found in Kant's „Ideen zur allgemeinen Geschichte," &c. The same system was more fully developed by Herder in his „Ideen zur Philosophie der Geschichte der Menschheit."

[4] See page 91, note 14. *Investigation*, Forschung.

[5] Turn *susceptible* by 'capable,' and *All* by 'the whole.'

[6] *Progressive*, here fortlaufende.

[7] *Unfolding*, sich entfaltend.

* The two other stages are, according to the author: 1st. 'when all ages and forms of human life are referred to the standard of that in which the writer himself lives;' and, 2nd. 'when it is attempted to realize a true and living picture of the past time clothed in its circumstances and peculiarities.'

in which every fresh part that comes to view is a prolongation of the part previously unrolled, whether we can trace the separate threads from the one into the other, or not. The facts of each generation are looked upon as one complex phenomenon caused by the generation preceding, and causing in its turn those of the next in order. That these states must follow one another according to some law is considered[1] certain: how to read that law is deemed the fundamental problem of the science of history. To find on[2] what principles, derived from the nature of man and the laws of the outward world, each state of society and of the human mind produced that which came after it, and whether there can be traced any order of production sufficiently definite to show what future states of society may be expected to emanate from the circumstances which exist at present, is the aim of historical philosophy in its third stage.—JOHN STUART MILL, *Dissertations and Discussions.*

XI.

THE EARL OF CLANCARTY.

Near fourteen years before this time Sunderland, then Secretary of State[3] to Charles the Second, had married[4] his daughter, Lady Elizabeth Spencer, to Donough Macarthy, Earl of Clancarty, the lord[5] of an immense domain in Munster. Both the bridegroom[6] and the bride were mere children; the bridegroom only fifteen, the bride only eleven. After the ceremony[7] they were separated; and

[1] See page 85, note 2. *Fundamental problem*, Grundproblem.

[2] *To find on*, herauszufinden nach.

[3] *Secretary of State*, Staatsminister.

[4] *To marry to, i.e.* to dispose of in wedlock, is rendered in German by verheirathen an.—The marriage alluded to took place in 1684.

[5] Turn *lord* by 'possessor.'

[6] Render *the bridegroom* by der junge Gatte, and *the bride* by die junge Frau.

[7] *Ceremony*, say Trauung.

many years full of strange vicissitudes[1] elapsed before they again met. The boy soon visited his estates in Ireland. He had been bred[2] a member of the Church of England; but his opinions and his practice[3] were loose. He found himself among kinsmen who were zealous Roman Catholics. A Roman Catholic king was on the throne. To turn Roman Catholic was the best recommendation to favour both at Whitehall[4] and at Dublin Castle.[4] Clancarty speedily changed his religion, and from a dissolute Protestant became a dissolute Papist.[5] After the Revolution he followed the fortunes of James; sate in the Celtic Parliament which met at[6] the King's Inns; commanded a regiment in the Celtic army; was forced to surrender himself to Marlborough at Cork; was sent to England, and was imprisoned in the Tower. The Clancarty estates, which were supposed to yield a rent[7] of not much less than ten thousand a year, were confiscated. They were charged[8] with an annuity to the Earl's brother, and with another annuity to his wife: but the greater part was bestowed by the king on Lord Woodstock, the eldest son of Portland.

During some time the prisoner's life was not safe. For the popular voice[9] accused him of outrages for which the utmost licence of civil war would not furnish a plea. It is said that he was threatened with an appeal of[10] murder by the widow of a Protestant clergyman who had been put to death during the troubles. After passing three years in confinement, Clancarty made his escape to the

[1] *Vicissitudes*, here Unglücksfälle.

[2] The rule mentioned page 85, note 2, with regard to the verb betrachten, is here also to be applied to the verb *bred*.

[3] *Practice*, say Lebensweise. Omit the term *Roman* in the following cases.

[4] Retain the same expressions.

[5] Retain the same term, and translate *he—fortunes* by knüpfte er sein Geschick an das.

[6] Turn *met at* by 'assembled in,' and retain the expressions *King's Inns* and *Tower*.

[7] Employ the corresponding foreign expression, and insert the word Pfund after *thousand*.

[8] *Charged*, here belastet; *bestowed*, zugetheilt.

[9] Turn *popular voice* by 'public opinion,' *outrages* by 'crimes.' *Licence*, Zügellosigkeit. *Would* is to be rendered by the imperfect of können, and *furnish a plea* by eine Entschuldigung darbieten.

[10] *Appeal of*, here Anklage auf.—*Troubles*, when applied to 'public disturbances,' is rendered in German by Unruhen or Wirren.

Continent, was graciously received at St. Germains, and was entrusted with the command[1] of a corps of Irish refugees. When the treaty of Ryswick had put[2] an end to the hope that the banished dynasty would be restored by foreign arms, he flattered himself that he might be able to make his peace with the English Government. But he was grievously disappointed. The interest[3] of his wife's family was undoubtedly more than sufficient to obtain *a* pardon for him. But on that interest he could not reckon. The[4] selfish, base, covetous father-in-law was not at all desirous to have a high-born beggar and the posterity of a high-born beggar to maintain. The ruling passion[5] of the brother-in-law was a stern and acrimonious party-spirit. He could not bear to think[6] that he was so nearly connected with an enemy of the Revolution and of the Bill of Rights,[7] and would with pleasure have seen the odious tie severed even by the hand of the executioner.

There was one,[8] however, from whom the ruined, expatriated, proscribed young nobleman[9] might hope *to find* a kind reception. He stole[10] across the Channel in disguise, presented himself[11] at Sunderland's door, and requested to see Lady Clancarty. He was charged,[12] he said, with a message to her from her mother, who was then lying on a sick-bed at Windsor. By this fiction[13] he obtained admission, made himself known[14] to his wife, whose thoughts had probably been constantly fixed on him during many years. The secret was soon discovered and betrayed by a waiting-woman. * * *

[1] Use the corresponding foreign form of *command*, and retain the word *corps*.

[2] Turn *put* by 'made,' and for *dynasty* cf. page 114, note 1.

[3] Turn here *interest* by 'influence.'

[4] Use the dative, and translate *was—desirous* by wäre es durchaus nicht erwünſcht geweſen.

[5] *Ruling passion*, Hauptleidenſchaft.

[6] Turn *to think* by 'the thought.'

[7] Retain the same expression in German.

[8] Supply the noun 'person,' and turn *expatriated* by 'homeless.'

[9] Use Lord for *nobleman*, and render *might* by durfte.

[10] Turn *stole* by 'came secretely,' and render *in disguise* by verkleidet.

[11] Turn *presented himself at* by 'appeared before,' and insert zu dürfen after *see*.

[12] *Charged*, here beauftragt, to be placed after *mother*.

[13] *Fiction*, here Liſt.

[14] *To make oneself known*, ſich zu erkennen geben; *had been fixed on him*, auf ihn gerichtet waren.

The fanatical young Whig,[1] burning with animosity, which he mistook[2] for virtue, and eager to emulate the Corinthian[3] who assassinated his brother, and the Roman who passed sentence of death on his son, flew to Vernon's office, gave information that the Irish rebel, who had once already escaped from custody, was in hiding hard by,[4] and procured a warrant and a guard of soldiers. Clancarty was dragged to the Tower. His wife followed him and implored permission[5] to partake his cell. These events produced a great stir[6] throughout the society of London. * * *

In general, honourable men of both parties, whatever might be their opinion of Clancarty, felt great compassion for his mother, who was dying of a broken heart, and his poor young wife, who was begging piteously to be admitted within the Traitor's Gate.[7] Devonshire and Bedford joined with Ormond to ask[8] for mercy. The aid of a still more powerful intercessor was called in. Lady Russell was esteemed by the king as a valuable friend; she was venerated by the nation generally as a saint, the widow of a martyr; and, when she deigned[9] to solicit favours, it was scarcely possible that she should solicit in vain. She naturally felt a strong sympathy for the unhappy couple, who were parted by the walls of that gloomy old fortress in which she had herself exchanged the last sad endearments[10] with one whose image was never absent from her. She took Lady Clancarty with *her* to the palace, obtained access to William, and put a petition into his hand. Clancarty was pardoned[11] on condition that he should leave the kingdom and never return to it. A pension was granted to him, small when compared with

[1] Retain the same expression. The author refers here to Lord Spencer, the Earl's brother-in-law.

[2] Turn *mistook* by 'took.'

[3] The above refers to Timoleon of Corinth, who killed his own brother, Timophanes, when the latter endeavoured to make himself tyrant of Corinth. The subsequent allusion refers to the well-known story of Brutus.

[4] *Hard by*, ganz in der Nähe; *a guard of soldiers*, ein Commando.

[5] Use the def. article and translate *to partake* by mit ihm theilen zu dürfen, to be placed after *cell*.

[6] *Stir*, here Aufregung.

[7] Retain the same expression.

[8] Turn *joined — ask* by 'asked conjointly with Ormond.' *Intercessor*, here Fürsprecherin.

[9] *Deigned* = condescended.

[10] *Endearments*, Liebeszeichen.

[11] *Pardoned*, here begnadigt.

the magnificent inheritance which he had forfeited, but quite sufficient to enable him to live like a[1] gentleman on the Continent. He retired, accompanied by his Elizabeth, to Altona.—MACAULAY, *History of England.*

XII.

TRUE ELOQUENCE.*

Let no man believe that in the conduct of public affairs there is much value in[2] the mere fluency of language, which is usually termed eloquence. Of the men whom I have known in public life, those who possess the greatest influence over their fellow-countrymen,[3] and I will not except my illustrious predecessor himself, were men who barely possessed the power of placing[4] their thoughts and feelings in ordinary plain English language, but who, as those whom they were addressing knew, spoke what they thought, argued[5] as they felt, and did not attempt to put before them a cunningly-devised and artificial discourse, but opened to those whom they were seeking to convince the whole[6] soul and mind of an honest and an earnest man.

[1] *Like a,* als. See page 147, note 10.

[2] Translate *there—in* by großen Werth habe, and place it after *eloquence. Fluency of language,* Redefluß.

[3] *Fellow-countrymen,* here Mitbürger.

[4] *Placing,* say fleiden; *to address,* here anreden.

[5] *To argue,* here urtheilen; *to put before them,* say ihnen... zu halten, *cunningly-devised,* ſchlau erſonnen.

[6] Translate *the whole* by the adverb vollſtändig, *i.e.* completely, in order to avoid the repetition of the attributive adjective before the equivalents for *soul* and *mind,* which repetition would be required on account of their different gender.

* The above is an extract from a speech which was delivered by the Earl of Derby at a banquet at Pembroke College, on the occasion of his installation as Chancellor of the University at Oxford in 1853. His predecessor was the Duke of Wellington.

That was the eloquence emphatically possessed by[1] the late Duke of Wellington. When a stranger heard him for the first time addressing the House of Lords, he would, perhaps, marvel for some seconds whom[2] that could be, who, with hesitating and stammering accents, hardly able to produce one word after another, yet ventured[3] to speak in the presence of that august assembly. But he would soon find that there was something which deserved to be listened to. He would find that during the long pauses of that elocution the House hung[4] in breathless silence to hear the next word which might fall from[5] those lips, perfectly assured that it would be the right word, the word that would convey the right meaning and substance of what was thought and felt.

XIII.

BÜRGER'S LENORE.

About the year 1793 Bürger's extraordinary poem *of* Lenora found its way to Scotland, and it happened that a translation of it was read at Dugald Stewart's; I think by Mrs. Barbauld. Miss Cranstoun* described this strange work to her friend. The young poet, whose imagination was set on fire[6] by the strange crowd of wild images and novel situations[7] in this singular production, never rested

[1] Turn here the passive into an active voice, viz. 'which the late Duke of Wellington emphatically (vorzugsweise) possessed.'

[2] Use in German the nominative. *Accents*, here Laute.

[3] *Yet ventured*, es dennoch wagte.

[4] *Hung*, say verharrte.

[5] *To fall from*, entfallen, which requires the dative of *lips*.

[6] *Set on fire*, say entflammt.

[7] Use the corresponding foreign expression, and turn *never rested* by 'rested not.'

* Miss Cranstoun, who was the sister-in-law of Dugald Stewart, was subsequently married to the Austrian Count Purgstall. The author learned the above incident relating to the friend of her youth, Sir Walter Scott, during his sojourn at her residence, Schloss Hainfeld, in Styria.

till, by the help of a grammar and dictionary, he contrived to study it in the original; and she, as usual, encouraged him to persevere, and at the end of a few weeks' application to the German language[1] he had made out the sense, and had himself written a poetical translation of that poem.

One morning, at half-past six, Miss Cranstoun was roused by her maid, who said Mr. Scott was in the dining-room, and wished to speak with her immediately. She dressed in *a* great hurry, and hastened down-stairs, wondering what he could have to say to her at that early hour. He met her at the door, and holding up his manuscript, eagerly[2] begged her to listen to his poem. Of course she gave it all attention; and having duly[3] praised it, she sent him away quite happy, after begging permission to retain the poem for a day or two, in order to look it over more carefully. He said she might keep it till he returned from the country, where he was about to proceed on a visit.

His friendly critic was already aware of this intended visit, and an idea having suggested itself to her[4] during his animated perusal of the poem, she lost no time in putting it in execution. As soon as he was gone, she sent for their common[5] friend, Mr. William Erskine, afterwards Lord Kinneder, and confided her scheme to him, of which he fully approved. The confederates then sallied forth to put their plan in train,[6] and having repaired to Mr. Robert Miller, the bookseller, they soon arranged with him to print a few copies of the new translation of "Lenore," one of which was to be thrown off[7] on the finest paper, and bound in the most elegant style.

In a few days the book was ready, and care being taken to dispatch it, addressed to Mr. Scott, so that it should

[1] Render *at—language* by nachdem er einige Wochen Deutsch getrieben hatte.

[2] Render *eagerly* by dringend. *To listen to*, say anzuhören.

[3] *Duly*, here gehörig.

[4] *An — her*, da ihr...ein Einfall gekommen war; *in putting* = to bring.

[5] *Common*, in the above sense, gemeinschaftlich.

[6] *To put in train* = to execute.

[7] *Thrown off*, here abgezogen.

[8] *In—style*, äußerst elegant.

arrive at what was deemed the most propitious moment, it was placed in the poet's hands just as the company were assembled round the tea-table after dinner.

Great curiosity was expressed[1] by the party as the splendid little volume gradually escaped from its folds, and displayed itself to the astonished eyes of the author, who, for the first time, saw himself in print, and who, all unconscious of the glories which awaited him, had possibly never dreamed of appearing in such a dress.[2]

Concealment[3] was out of the question, and he was called upon by the unanimous acclamation of the party to read the poem, of which, as it happened, none of them had ever heard even the name.

Those who have enjoyed the surpassing delight of hearing Sir Walter Scott read poetry[4] will easily understand the effect which this recitation of his own earliest printed work, under the excitement of such a moment, must have produced. — CAPTAIN BASIL HALL, *Schloss Hainfeld.*

XIV.

AMONG THE ICEBERGS.

At noon we were in lat. 60° 31′ S., long. 162° 9′ E.,[5] and again in clear water; but it soon after fell quite calm,[6] and the heavy easterly swell was driving us down again upon the pack,[7] in which were counted from the mast-

[1] *Expressed*, say an den Tag gelegt; *party* = society.

[2] *Dress*, here Gewand.

[3] *Concealment*, Verheimlichung; *out of the question* = impossible.

[4] Turn here *poetry* by 'poems.'

[5] The above geographical signs are given in German in the following manner: 60° 31′ südl. Br. (*i.e.* südlicher Breite), 162° 9′ östl. L. (*i.e.* östlicher Länge.)

[6] *Fell quite calm*, wurde...ganz windstill; *the—swell*, die heftige östliche Dünung.

[7] *Pack*, denoting a large body of separate masses of ice, is rendered by Eisfeld. *Berg* stands in the above extract for *iceberg*.

head eighty-four large bergs, between S. and N.N.W., and some hundreds of smaller dimensions.

We found we were fast closing[1] this chain of bergs, so closely packed together that we could distinguish no opening through which the ships could pass, the waves breaking violently against them, dashing huge masses of pack-ice[2] against the precipitous faces of the bergs; now lifting them nearly to their summit, then forcing them again far beneath their water-line, and sometimes rending them into a multitude of brilliant fragments against their projecting points.

Sublime and magnificent as such a scene must have appeared under different circumstances, to us it was awful, if not appalling. For eight hours we had been gradually drifting towards what to human eyes appeared inevitable destruction; the high waves and deep rolling[3] of our ships rendered towing with the boats impossible, and our situation the more painful and embarrassing from our inability to make any effort to avoid the dreadful calamity that seemed to await us. * * *

We were now within half a mile of the range of bergs. The roar of the surf, which extended each way[4] as far as we could see, and the crashing of the ice fell upon the ear with fearful distinctness, whilst the frequently averted eye as immediately returned[5] to contemplate the awful destruction that threatened in one short hour to close the world and all its hopes, and joys, and sorrows upon us[6] for ever. In this our deep distress "we called upon the Lord: and He heard our voices out of His temple, and our cry came before Him."[7]

A gentle air of wind filled our sails: hope again revived, and the greatest activity prevailed to make the best use of

[1] *We—closing*, daß wir uns raſch... näherten.

[2] *Huge — pack-ice*, eine Menge großer Eisklumpen; *faces*, here Flächen.

[3] *Rolling* (the nautical term), Schlenkern or Schlingern.

[4] *Each way* = on each side. *Fell upon*, here traf.

[5] *Averted — returned*, abgelenkte Blick, eben ſo raſch ſich wieder zurückwandte.

[6] *To—us*, uns der Welt mit all ihren Hoffnungen, Freuden und Leiden... zu entrücken.

[7] Cf. Psalm XVIII. 6.

[8] *Air of wind*, Lufthauch. Render *filled* by ſchwellte, and *revived* by erwachte.

the feeble breeze. As it gradually freshened, our heavy ship began to feel its influence, slowly at first, but more rapidly afterwards; and before dark we found ourselves far removed from every danger.—CAPTAIN SIR J. C. ROSS, *A Voyage in the Southern and Antarctic Regions.*

XV.

THE MAN WHO HUNTS[1] AND DOESN'T LIKE IT.

It seems *to be* odd, at first sight, that there should be any such men *as these;* but their name and number is legion. If we were to deduct from the hunting-crowd[2] farmers and others who hunt because hunting is brought to their door, of the remainder we should find that the "men who don't like it" have the preponderance. It is pretty much the same, I think, with all amusements. How many men go to balls, to races, to the theatre—how many women to concerts and races—simply because it is the thing to do?[3] They have, perhaps, a vague idea that they may ultimately find some joy in the pastime; but, though they do[4] the thing constantly, they never like it. Of all such men, the hunting men are perhaps the most to be pitied.[5]* * *

At the first fence, as he is steadying himself,[6] a butcher passes him roughly in the jump, and nearly takes away the side of his top-boot. He is knocked[7] half out of his

[1] Render here *hunts* by auf die Jagd geht, and turn *doesn't like it* by 'without liking it.'

[2] Turn *hunting-crowd* by 'crowd of the hunters,' and *to their door* by 'to them before the door.'

[3] *Simply—do,* bloß weil es sich so gehört.

[4] *Do,* here treiben; *hunting men* = hunters.

[5] See page 45, note 20.

[6] *To steady oneself,* sich in dem Sattel festsetzen; *away,* here mit; *top-boot,* Stulpenstiefel.

[7] Render *knocked* by geworfen and turn *his* by 'the.'

saddle, and in that condition scrambles through. When he has regained his equilibrium, he sees the happy butcher going into the field beyond. He means[1] to curse the butcher when he catches him; but the butcher is safe. A field and a half before him[2] he still sees the tail hounds,[3] and renews his effort. He has meant to like it to-day, and he will.[4] So he rides at the next fence boldly, where the butcher has left his mark, and does it pretty well—with a slight struggle. Why is it[5] that he can never get over a ditch without some struggle in his saddle, some scramble with his horse? Why does he curse the poor animal so constantly—unless it be that he cannot catch the butcher?

Now he rushes at a gate which others have opened for him, but rushes too late and catches[6] his leg. Mad with pain, he nearly gives it up; but the spark of pluck[7] is still there, and with throbbing knee he perseveres. How he hates it! It is all detestable now. He cannot hold his horse because of his gloves, and he cannot get them off. The sympathetic beast knows that his master is unhappy,[8] and makes himself unhappy and troublesome in consequence.

Our friend is still going,[9] riding wildly, but still keeping a grain of caution for his fences. He has not been down yet,[10] but has barely saved himself more than once. The ploughs[11] are very deep, and his horse, though still boring at him, pants heavily. Oh, that there might come a check, or that the brute[12] of a fox might happily go to ground! But no! The ruck[13] of the hunt is far away

[1] *To mean*, ſich vorneḥmen; to *curse*, mit Flüchen zu beladen; *safe* = in safety.

[2] *A field—him*, anderthalb Felder weit vor ſich.

[3] *The tail hounds*, den Nachtrab der Meute.

[4] Supply es auch. *Mark* = *trace*.

[5] *Why is it* = whence does it come. *Does...curse* is to be rendered by flucht...auf.

[6] *To catch*, here einklemmen; *mad with*, raſend vor.

[7] *Pluck* = courage; *throbbing*, ſchmerzend; *all* = quite.

[8] *Unhappy*, here elend; *troublesome* = disagreeable.

[9] *Is still going*, hält noch immer aus.

[10] *Has—yet*, iſt eigentlich noch nicht geſtürzt; *barely*, here nur noch eben.

[11] *Ploughs*, say Furchen; *still—him*, es noch den Kopf tief hängen läßt.

[12] *The brute*, say das dumme Thier; *go to ground*, erlegt würde.

[13] *Ruck*, say das Getümmel.

from him in front, and the game is running steadily straight for some well-known though still distant protection. But the man who doesn't like it still sees a red coat[1] before him, and perseveres in chasing the wearer of it. The solitary red coat becomes distant, and still more distant, from him ;[2] but he goes on while he can yet keep the line in which that red coat has ridden. He must hurry himself, however, or he will be lost to humanity, and will be alone. He must hurry himself, but his horse now desires to hurry no more. So he puts his spurs to the brute savagely,[3] and then at some little fence, some ignoble ditch, they come down together in the mud, and the question of any further effort is saved for the rider. When he arises the red coat is out of sight,[4] and his own horse is half across the field before him. In such a position is it possible that a man should like it ?—ANTHONY TROLLOPE, *Hunting Sketches.*

XVI.

LIMITS OF MATERIAL IMPROVEMENT[5] IN ANCIENT CIVILIZATION.

The decay of moral principles which hastened the disintegration of Roman society was compensated by no new discoveries in material cultivation. The idea of civilization common to the Greeks and Romans was the highest development of the bodily faculties, together with the imagination ; but in exploring the agencies[6] of the natural

[1] Form a compound term of *red* and *coat* by simply joining them together without inflecting the adjective.

[2] *Becomes—him*, entfernt ſich immer mehr von ihm.

[3] *Savagely*, here wüthend ; *ignoble*, say miſerabel ; *come down*, here ſtürzen ; *saved*, erſpart ; *for the*, dem.

[4] *Out of sight* = disappeared ; *half across*, in der Mitte des.

[5] *Improvement*, here Fortſchritt.

[6] *In — agencies*, im Erforſchen der Wirkſamkeit ; *natural*, say : phyſiſch.

world, and turning its[1] forces to the use of man, the progress soon reached its limits. The Greeks and Romans were almost equally unsteady in tracing the laws of physical phenomena, which they empirically observed, and analyzing the elements of the world round them. Their advance in applied science[2] stopped short with the principles of mechanics, in which they doubtless attained great practical proficiency. Roman engineering, especially, deserves the admiration even of our own times. But the ancients invented no instruments for advancing the science of astronomy; they remained profoundly ignorant of the mysteries of chemistry; their medicine, notwithstanding the careful diagnosis of Hypocrates and Galen, could not free itself from connexion with the most trivial superstitions. The Greeks speculated deeply in ethics and politics;[3] the Romans were intelligent students of legal theory and procedure; but neither[4] could discover from these elementary sciences the compound ideas of public economy. Their principles of commerce and finance were to the last rude and unphilosophical. They made little advance, at the height of their prosperity and knowledge, in the economy of[5] labour and production; they made no provision[6] for the support of the increasing numbers to which the human race, under the operation of natural laws, ought to have attained. We read of no improvements in the common processes[7] of agriculture, none even in the familiar mode of grinding corn, none in the extraction[8] or smelting of ores, none in the art of navigation. Even in war, to which they so ardently devoted themselves, we find the helmet and cuirass, the sword, spear, and buckler, identical in character, and almost in form, from the siege of Troy to the sack of

[1] *Turning its*, in der Anwendung ihrer.

[2] *In applied science*, in der angewandten or ersten Wissenschaft.

[3] *Speculated — politics*, machten tiefe ethische und politische Studien.

[4] Supply 'of them.' *Compound*, say umfassenden; *public economy*, here Staatswirthschaft.

[5] *In—of*, say im nationalökonomischen Verhältniß zwischen; *production*, Production.

[6] *To make provision*, Vorkehrungen treffen.

[7] *Processes*, Verfahren; *familiar*, here gewöhnlich.

[8] *Extraction* (of metals), Ausgrabung or Gewinnung.

Rome. Changes in tactics and discipline were slight and casual, compelled[1] rather by some change in circumstances than spontaneous and scientific. The ancient world had,[2] *in* short, no versatility,[3] no power of adaptation to meet the varying wants of its outward condition. Its ideas were not equal to the extension of its material dominion. A little soul was lodged[4] in a vast body.—CHARLES MERIVALE, *History of the Romans under the Empire.*

XVII.

LIGHT AND WARMTH.

Mr. Carlyle has quoted with some approval a pert phrase, that readers till their twenty-fifth year usually prefer Schiller, after their twenty-fifth year Goethe. If Herder and Novalis are right in their belief[5] that the true elements of wisdom and poetry are found freshest and purest in the young, this is no disparagement to Schiller. It is, certainly, only in proportion as the glow[6] for all that is noble in thought and heroic in character fades from the weaker order of mind,[7] amidst the cavils, disgusts, and scepticism of later life, that the halo[8] around the genius of Schiller, which is but a reflection of all that is noble and heroic, wanes also into feebler lustre. For the stronger nature, which still "feels as the enthusiast, while it learns

[1] *Compelled*, here erzwungen.

[2] Turn *had* by 'possessed,' and place *short* at the beginning of the sentence.

[3] *Versatility*, Verſatilität; *power of adaptation*, Aneignungskraft; *condition*, here Exiſtenz.

[4] *To be lodged*, wohnen.

[5] *In their belief*, mit ihrer Anſicht or Meinung. Translate *in the young* by bei der Jugend.

[6] Turn *glow* by Begeiſterung, and render *that—character* briefly by Edle und Heroiſche. *Fades from* = disappears out of.

[7] Translate *order of mind* by Gemüthern. *disgusts* by Aerger, and see page 42, note 9.

[8] *Halo*, here Lichtglanz; *wanes... into*, erbleicht...zu; *lustre*, Schein.

to see as the world-wise,"* there is no conceivable reason why Schiller should charm less in maturity[1] than youth. Goethe may please a reader more in proportion as his mind can embrace a wider circumference in life; but, unless his mind loses in[2] elevation what it gains in expansion, his eye will still turn with as fond a worship[3] to the lofty star, which is not less holy than the sun-light, though it less fills the atmosphere immediately around us. May I be permitted[4] here to add, that I am ten years older than I was when I began the study of Schiller? Since then I have investigated, with some critical care, the characteristics[5] of those poets whom the world ranks amongst its greatest, and my admiration for Schiller is more profound and reverential than ever.—BULWER, *Life of Schiller.*

XVIII.

FROM THE DIARY OF THOMAS MOORE.

May 10th.—Started for town,[6] leaving our dear boy somewhat better. Found, with my usual good luck, a note from Murray, asking me to meet at dinner "to-day"

[1] Render *in maturity* by in reiferen Jahren.

[2] Render *in*, here and in the following clause, by an.

[3] *As — worship*, ebenſo liebender Verehrung. The expression *immediately around us* (uns unmittelbar umgebende) qualifies the term *atmosphere.*

[4] *May—permitted*, darf ich.

[5] *Characteristics*, Eigenthümlichkeiten. The word Charakteriſtik is also used in German, but only in the sense of a 'description of the characteristic features of a person or thing.' The term *characteristic* (Gr. χαρακτηριστικος) is, however, also frequently rendered by charakteriſtiſches Zeichen or Merkmal.

[6] When *town* stands for 'London,' the latter expression must be used in German.

* The above is a periphrasis of the last verses of Schiller's poem „Licht und Wärme," which run in the original:

„Drum paart zu eurem ſchönſten Glück
Mit Schwärmers Ernſt des Weltmanns Blick."

the man of all others I wanted to shake hands with[1] once more—Washington Irving. Called at Murray's, to say "Yes, yes," with all *my* heart.

11*th*.—Went to the Literary Fund[2] Chambers to see what were the arrangements, and where I was to be seated,[3] having in a note to Blewitt, the secretary, begged him to place me near some of my own present friends. Found that I was to be seated between Hallam and Washington Irving. All right.[4] By the by, Irving had yesterday come to Murray's with the determination, as I found,[5] not to go to the dinner, and all begged of me to use my influence with him to change his resolution. But he told me his mind was made up[6] on the point; that the drinking[7] his health, and the speech he would have to make in return, were more than he durst encounter; that he had broken down[8] at the Dickens' dinner (of which he was chairman) in America, and obliged to stop short in the middle of his oration, which made him resolve not to encounter another such accident. In vain did I represent to him that *a* few words would be quite sufficient in returning thanks.[9] "That Dickens' dinner,"—which he always pronounced with strong emphasis, hammering all the time with his right arm, 'more suo,'—"that Dickens' dinner" still haunted[10] his imagination, and I almost gave up all hope of persuading him. At last I said to him:

[1] Turn *of—with* by 'whom (dem) before all others I wanted to shake *by* the hand.' *With all*, say von ganzem.

[2] The expression *Literary Fund* may be rendered by literarische Stiftung or Schriftsteller-Stiftung, and put in the genitive case after *Chambers*, which expression may be retained, being peculiar to England.

[3] Turn *I—seated* by 'I should sit.' The term *note*, signifying 'a short letter,' is rendered by Billet.

[4] *All right*, here ganz in der Ordnung or mir ganz lieb. *By the by*, here apropos.

[5] Translate here *found* by vernahm, *i.e.* learned, and *with* by the preposition bei.

[6] *To make up one's mind*, einen Entschluß fassen.

[7] Render here *drinking* by Ausbringen, to be followed by the genitive case, and translate *would—return* by darauf halten müßte.

[8] *To break down* (in a speech, &c.), stecken bleiben or aus dem Concept kommen; *Dickens' dinner*, Dickens-Banquet. Turn *to stop short* by 'to leave off,' and *made him resolve* by 'brought him to the resolution.'

[9] *In returning thanks* = in order to thank.

[10] *Still haunted*, say stand noch immer lebhaft vor.

"Well, now, listen to me a moment. If you really wish to distinguish yourself, it is by saying the fewest possible words[1] that you will effect it. The great fault with all the speakers, 'myself' among the number,[2] will be our saying too much. But if you content yourself with[3] merely saying that you feel most deeply the cordial reception you have met with,[4] and have great pleasure in drinking their healths in return, the very simplicity of the address will be more effective from such a man, than all the stammered out rigmaroles[5] that the rest of the speechifiers will vent." This suggestion[6] seemed to touch him; and so there I left him, feeling pretty sure that I had carried my point.[7] It is very odd, that while some of the shallowest fellows go on so glib with the tongue, men whose minds[8] are abounding with matter should find such difficulty in bringing it out. I found that Lockhart also had declined attending this dinner under a similar apprehension, and only consented on condition that his health should not be given.*

[1] Translate *it — words* by indem Sie ſo wenig Worte machen als möglich, and turn *that* by 'so,' placing this expression together with the following clause after *yourself*.

[2] *Among the number* = included.

[3] See page 97, note 2.

[4] *You — with*, die Ihnen zu Theil geworden.

[5] Use in German the singular. The ironical term *speechifier* may here be rendered by Schönredner.

[6] Render here *suggestion* by Vorſchlag, and turn *touch him* by 'make an impression upon him.'

[7] Turn *carry my point* by 'reached my aim,' *fellows* by 'people,' and *go on* by 'are.'

[8] Use the singular, and render *matter* by Stoffen.

* The above extract occurs in Lord John Russell's edition of the "Diary of Thomas Moore," and also in the "Life and Letters of Washington Irving." In the latter work it is placed after Washington Irving's letter, but has been placed here first in order to facilitate the full understanding of the letter.

XIX.

A LETTER FROM WASHINGTON IRVING.

May 13th, 1842.

I have not been able to call on many of my old friends, but have met some of them on public occasions. Many of the literary men I met at an anniversary dinner of the Literary Fund, at which Prince Albert presided. Here I sat beside my friend Moore, the poet, who came to town to attend the dinner. He looks thinner than when I last saw him, and has the cares and troubles of the world thickening upon him[1] as he advances in years. He has two sons: both had commissions[2] *in the army.* The youngest has recently returned home, broken in[3] health, and in danger of a consumption.[4] The elder, Tom, has been rather wild, and is on his return from India, having, for some unknown reason, sold his commission. The expenses of these two sons bear hard upon[5] poor Moore, and he talks with some despondency of the likelihood of his having to come upon the Literary Fund for assistance.

The Literary Fund dinner was very splendid, and there was much dull speaking from[6] various distinguished characters. I had come to it with great reluctance, knowing that my health would be drunk; and though I had determined not to make a speech in reply, yet the very idea of being singled out, and obliged to get on my legs[7] and return thanks, made me nervous throughout the evening. The flattering speech[8] of Sir Robert Inglis, *by* which the

[1] Turn *has—him* briefly by 'his earthly cares and troubles thicken' (häufen ſich).

[2] See page 39, note 13.

[3] *Broken in*, in hinfälliger.

[4] Use *consumption* in the accusative case, and supply the supine zu bekommen. *Wild*, here unbeſonnen.

[5] Render *bear hard upon* by laſten ſchwer auf dem, and *of his—upon* by 'that he will be obliged to have recourse to.'

[6] Turn *there—from* by 'many dull (langweilige) speeches were delivered by,' and *characters* by 'men.'

[7] *To—legs*, aufzuſtehen.

[8] See page 31, note 12.

toast was preceded,[1] and the very warm and prolonged cheering by which it was received, instead of relieving,[2] contributed to agitate me, and I felt as if I would never attend a public dinner again, where I should have to undergo such a trial.[3]—*Life and Letters of Washington Irving, by his Nephew*, Pierre E. Irving.

XX.

EFFECT OF COLD.

It now became rather a painful experiment to touch any metallic substance in the open air with the naked hand; the feeling produced by it exactly resembling that occasioned by the opposite extreme of intense heat, and taking off the skin from the part affected.[4] We found it necessary, therefore, to use great caution in handling our sextants and other instruments, particularly the eye-pieces of the telescopes, which, if suffered to touch the face,[5] occasioned an intense burning pain; but this was easily remedied by covering them over with soft leather. Another effect, with regard to the use of instruments, began to appear[6] about this time. Whenever any instrument which had been some time exposed to the atmosphere, so as to be cooled down[7] to the same temperature, was suddenly brought below into the cabins, the vapour was instantly condensed all around it, so as to give[8] the instrument the appearance of smoking,[9] and the glasses were covered

[1] *Was preceded*, voranging (dem).

[2] *Of relieving*, say mich zu beruhigen.

[3] *To—trial*, eine ſolche Noth auszuſtehen.

[4] *Affected*, afficirt, qualifies *part.*

[5] *If—face*, wenn das Geſicht mit ihnen in Berührung kam. Render *this* by dem, and *remedied* by abgeholfen.

[6] Turn *to appear* by 'to show itself.'

[7] Translate *cooled down* by abgekühlt, and *to* by bis zu.

[8] *As to give* = that it...gave.

[9] *Of smoking* = as if it smoked (dampfte).

almost instantly with a thin coating of ice,[1] the removal of which required great caution, to prevent the risk of injuring them, until it had gradually thawed, as they acquired the temperature of the cabin. When a candle was placed in a certain direction from the instrument with respect to the[2] observer, a number of very minute spiculæ of snow were also seen sparkling around the instrument, at the distance of two or three inches from it, occasioned, as we supposed, by the cold atmosphere[3] produced by the low temperature of the instrument, almost instantaneously congealing into that form the vapour which floated in its immediate neighbourhood.—SIR W. E. PARRY, *Voyage for the Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

XXI.

DE QUINCEY ON GERMAN LITERATURE.

MY DEAR F., Grasmere, Oct. 18th, 1821.

You ask me to direct you generally in your choice of German authors; secondly, and especially,[4] among those authors to name my favourite. In such an ocean as German literature,[5] your first request is of too wide a compass for a letter; and I am not sorry that, by leaving[6] it untouched, and reserving it for[7] some future conversation, I *shall* add one 'moment'[8] (in the language of dynamics) to the attractions of friendship and the local

[1] *Coating of ice*, Eishülle.

[2] *With—the*, mit Rücksicht auf die Stellung des; *minute—snow*, äußerst kleiner Schneeteln.

[3] Supply 'which was.'

[4] Supply 'quite' before *especially*, and turn *among—favourite* by 'to name to you among those my favour.te author.'

[5] Supply es ist, and render *of—compass* by zu umfassent.

[6] See for this and the following pres. part. Int. p. xv. ii. a.

[7] Render here *for* by auf, and turn *some* by 'a.'

[8] Retain the same expression, and use the noun *attractions*, referring to *friendship*, in the singular.

attractions of my residence, insufficient as it seems, of themselves,[1] to draw you so far northwards from London.

Come, therefore, dear F., bring thy ugly countenance to the lakes, and I will engraft[2] such German youth and vigour on thy English trunk, that henceforwards thou shalt bear excellent fruit. I suppose, F., you know that the golden pippin[3] is now almost, if not quite, extinct in England; and why? Clearly[4] from want of some exotic, but congenial inoculation. So it is with literatures of whatsoever[5] land; unless crossed by some other of different breed, they all tend to[6] superannuation. Thence comes it that the French literature is now in the last stage[7] of phthisis—dotage—palsy,[8] or whatever image will best express the most abject state of senile (senile?—no!—of anile) imbecility. * * *

Having this horrid example before our eyes, what should we English do? Why, evidently we should cultivate an intercourse with that literature of Europe which has most of a juvenile constitution. Now THAT is, beyond all doubt, the German. I do not so much insist on the present excellence of the German literature (though, poetry apart,[9] the CURRENT literature of Germany appears to me by much the best in Europe); what weighs most with me is the promise[10] and assurance of future excellence held out by the originality and masculine strength of thought which has moulded the German mind since *the time of* Kant. Before 1789 good authors were rare in Germany; since then they are so numerous, that in any sketch of their

[1] *Of themselves*, an und für ſich ſelbſt.

[2] *To engraft*, pfropfen; *such* = ſo much.

[3] *Golden pippin*, Goldapfel.

[4] *Clearly*, here offenbar; *congenial*, gleichartig.

[5] *Whatsoever* = every; *unless—breed*, wenn ſich dieſelben nicht mit einer andern von verſchiedenem Schlage kreuzen.

[6] Turn *they all tend to* by 'so they all suffer easily of (an).

[7] See page 91, note 14.

[8] *Palsy*, Lähmung; *abject*, erbärmlich; *senile*, Greiſenalter. The Latin expression *anile*, denoting literally hohes Weiberalter, may in the figurative sense be rendered by Stumpfſinn. *Imbecility*, Blödſinn.

[9] *Apart*, abgerechnet. Turn *what weighs most* by 'what has most (am meiſten) weight.'

[10] *Promise* is here synonymous with 'hope.' *Assurance* may be rendered by Zuverſicht, and *held out by* translated by zu welcher berechtigen.

literature all individual notice[1] becomes impossible; you must confine yourself to favourite authors, or notice[2] them by classes. And this leads me to your question—Who is MY favourite author? My answer is, that I have three favourites,[3] and those are Kant, Schiller, and Jean Paul Richter. But setting Kant aside,[4] as hardly belonging to the literature in the true meaning of that word, I have, you[5] see, two. In what respect there is any affinity between them I will notice[6] before I conclude. For the present I shall observe only that, in the case of Schiller, I love his works chiefly because I venerate the memory of the man; whereas, in the case of Richter, my veneration and affection for the man is founded wholly on my knowledge of his works. This distinction will point out[7] Richter as the most eligible AUTHOR for your present purpose.* In point of originality, indeed, there cannot arise a question between the pretensions of Richter and those of any other[8] German author whatsoever. He is no man's representative but his own; nor do I think he will ever have a successor.

The characteristic distinction[9] of Jean Paul amongst German authors,—I will venture to add, amongst modern authors generally,—is the two-headed power which he possesses over the pathetic and the humorous; or, rather, let me say at once[10] what I *have* often felt to be true, and

[1] *All individual notice*, say jede individuelle Berücksichtigung.

[2] *Notice*, here beurtheilen; *by*, nach. Turn *leads* by 'brings,' and *to* by 'upon.'

[3] Turn here *favourites* by 'favourite-authors.'

[4] *But—aside*, Abgesehen aber von Kant; *as hardly belonging* = who hardly belongs.

[5] Supply 'as' before *you*.

[6] *Notice*, here auseinander setzen. Turn *in the case of* by 'what concerns.'

[7] Translate *point out* by bezeichnen and *most eligible* by passendsten.

[8] *Any other...whatsoever*, irgend eines andern. Turn *is — own* by 'represents nobody except himself.'

[9] *Distinction*, here Merkmal; *two-headed*, doppelköpfig.

[10] *Let—once*, ich will es nur sofort aussprechen; *felt to be true*, als wahr erkannt. The clause *and—so* should be turned by 'and the correctness of which I could (as I believe) prove at a fitting opportunity.

* I cannot help adding here that in order to be able to understand and appreciate fully the works of Jean Paul, it is necessary to possess as thorough a knowledge of German as De Quincey undoubtedly possessed.

would (I think) at a fitting opportunity prove to be so,—this power is NOT two-headed, but a one-headed Janus with two faces: the pathetic and the humorous are but different phases of the same orb; they assist each other, melt[1] indiscernibly into each other, and often shine each through each like layers of coloured crystals placed one behind another.

XXII.

INFLUENCE OF NATURAL AGENCIES.[2]

If we inquire[3] *what* those physical agents *are* by which the human race is most powerfully influenced, we shall find that they may be classed under[4] four heads,—namely, Climate, Food, Soil, and the General Aspect of Nature;[5] by which last I mean those appearances which, though presented chiefly to the sight,[6] have, through the medium of that or other senses, directed the association of ideas, and hence in different countries have given rise to[7] different habits of thought. To one of these four classes may be referred[8] all the external phenomena by which man has been permanently affected. The last of these classes, or what I call the General Aspect of Nature, produces its principal results by exciting the[9] imagination, and by

[1] *Melt,* here verſchmelzen. Turn *each through each* by 'one through the other.'

[2] *Natural agencies,* here Naturkräfte.

[3] Render here *to inquire* by forſchen or fragen nach, *agents* by Kräfte, and *human race* by Menſchengeſchlecht.

[4] *To class under,* claſſificiren in; *heads,* here Hauptarten.

[5] *Aspect of Nature,* Naturanſicht or Naturerſcheinung. *By — mean* may be turned by 'under the latter I understand.'

[6] *Though — sight,* obwohl ſie ſich vornehmlich dem Geſichtsorgane offenbaren; *through the medium* = by means of.

[7] *To give rise to* = to produce; *habits of thought,* Arten zu denken, or, somewhat freely, Gedankenkreiſe.

[8] *May be referred,* laſſen ſich... zuſchreiben; *affected* = influenced.

[9] *Produces — the,* wirkt vorzüglich durch die Anregung der.

suggesting those innumerable superstitions[1] which are the great obstacles to advancing knowledge.

The other three agents, namely Climate, Food, and Soil, have, so far as we are aware,[2] had no direct influence of this sort; but they have, as I am about to prove, originated the most important consequences in regard to the general organization of society, and from them there have followed many of those large and conspicuous differences between[3] nations, which are often ascribed to some fundamental difference in the various races into which mankind is divided. But while such original distinctions of race[4] are altogether hypothetical, the discrepancies[5] which are caused by difference of climate, food, and soil are capable of a satisfactory explanation, and, when understood, will be found[6] to clear up many of the difficulties which still obscure the study of history.—HENRY THOMAS BUCKLE, *History of Civilization in England.*

XXIII.

A FATAL JOKE.

Borso[7] lay ill, and his medical advisers[8] pronounced his case hopeless, because they were too ignorant to cure him. His malady was a raging fever. Nature at first

[1] *By — superstitions,* durch die Erweckung jener unzähligen Formen des Aberglaubens. Use *obstacles* in the singular, and turn *to advancing* by 'for the progress of the.'

[2] *So — aware,* so weit es uns bekannt; *have followed,* sind entstanden or entsprungen.

[3] Turn *between* by 'of the.' *Fundamental,* here wesentlich.

[4] *Distinctions of race,* Rassenunterschiede; *are altogether hypothetical* = are nothing but hypotheses.

[5] Insert the words *are capable,* lassen sich, before *the discrepancies,* and render *of—explanation* briefly by befriedigend erklären.

[6] *When — found,* werden bei genauem Verständniß dazu dienen.

[7] Borso ascended the ducal throne of Ferrara in 1441.

[8] *Medical adviser,* Arzt. Turn *pronounced* by 'declared.'

helped him a little, and the prince was enabled to repair to a country residence,[1] where his fever settled into a fierce quartan; but he was not prevented from taking exercise. The whole ducal court was in sorrow because of the condition of their rough but not ungenerous master, and no one grieved more than Gonella.[2] The latter heard that the doctors had asserted that nothing but a sudden fright would shake[3] the malady out of the body of the prince. But, then, who would dare to suddenly frighten such a terrible potentate as Borso of Ferrara? No one but the poor fool, and he did it effectually. While walking in the garden with his moody master, trying in vain to make him smile, the two came up to a deep lake, where the Duke usually took boat,[4] and as he was about stepping in, Gonella, without a moment's hesitation,[5] pushed the Duke into the water. Borso roared aloud for succour, screamed in his agony, and cursed the fool, who ultimately, with the aid he had prepared, drew him out. Borso was carried to bed, where he fell into such a perspiration from his fright and exertion. that he got rid of his fever, and rose free from any disagreeable symptom except his wrath against the jester. The latter was condemned to exile, with a sentence of death[6] in case of his being found upon the soil of Ferrara.

Gonella went into banishment, which he bore with so much impatience, that after a few months he resolved to return, without incurring the threatened consequences. He thus contrived[7] it: filling a cart with the earth of the Paduan district, in which he had been sojourning, he rode boldly into Ferrara, where he pertinaciously maintained, as he sat in the cart, that he was still on the soil of Padua. The Duke ordered him to be seized and beheaded. "I will only pay fright with fright," said Borso; "so when his neck is on the block, let fall upon it, not the axe, but a drop of water; then bid my fool arise. I shall

[1] *Country residence*, Landſchloß.
[2] Gonella was the official court fool of the Duke.
[3] *Shake*, here vertreiben.
[4] *To take boat*, das Boot beſteigen.
[5] Turn *a moment's hesitation* by 'to hesitate a moment.'
[6] *With—death*, say und mit der Todesſtrafe bedroht.
[7] *To contrive*, here anſtellen.

be glad to congratulate him on his and my recovery." All was done[1] as the Duke directed.

Gonella, *made* sad for the first time in his life, was solemnly conveyed to the scaffold. All the usual ceremonies of the lugubrious drama were then enacted, and, these over,[2] the poor jester, with a shake and a sigh, laid down the old insignia of his office, and blindfolded placed his head upon the block. The executioner stepped up, and from a phial let fall a single drop of water on the fool's neck. Then arose[3] a burst of laughter and a clapping of hands, and shouts to Gonella to get up and thank the Duke for the life given him. The fool did not move, and all around laughed the more at the jest which they thought he was perpetuating.[4] Still he remained motionless; at last the headsman went up to him, and raising Gonella from the ground, discovered that he was dead. The drop of water had had all the effect of the sharpest axe; and the spectators went home repeating to one another, "A shocking[5] bad joke, indeed."—Dr. Doran, *History of Court Fools.*

XXIV.

ENGLISH TRADE UNDER ELIZABETH.

Thus it was[6] that the accession of Elizabeth found commerce leaving its old channels and stretching in a thousand new directions. While the fishing trade[7] was ruined by the change of creed, a taste came in[8] for luxuries

[1] *Was done*, say geſchah.

[2] Turn *these over* by 'when these were over;' *with—sigh*, mit Schauern und Seufzen.

[3] *To arise*, erſcholl; *a burst of* = loud: *shouts to*, Zurufe an.

[4] Turn *which — perpetuating* by 'which, as they thought, he continued.'

[5] *Schocking*, here ſchredlich.

[6] *Thus it was*, ſo geſchah es. Turn *the — leaving* by 'at the time of Elizabeth's accession commerce left.'

[7] *Fishing trade* = fish-trade.

[8] Translate *came in* by verbreitete ſich, use *luxuries* in the sing. retaining the correspond. foreign term.

undreamt of in the simpler days which were passing away. Statesmen, accustomed to rule the habits of private life with sumptuary laws, and to measure the imports of the realm by their own conceptions of the necessities of the people, took alarm at the inroads upon established ways and usages, and could see only "a most lamentable spoil to the[2] realm, in the over-quantity of unnecessary wares brought into the port of London."

From India came perfumes, spices, rice, cotton, indigo, and precious stones; from Persia and Turkey carpets, velvets, damasks, cloth of gold, and silk robes "wrought[3] in divers colours." Russia gave its ermines and sables, its wolf and bear skins,[4] its tallow, flax, and hemp, its steel and iron, its ropes, cables, pitch, tar, masts for ships, and even deal boards. The New World sent over sugar, rare woods,[5] gold, silver, and pearls; and these, with the pomegranates, lemons, and oranges, the silks and satins, the scented soaps and oils, and the fanciful variety of ornaments which were imported from the South of Europe, shocked the austere sense of the race of Englishmen who had been bred up in an age when heaven was of more importance than earthly pleasure. Fathers were filled with panic for the morals of their children, and statesmen trembled before the imminent ruin of the realm.—James Anthony Froude, *History of England.*

[1] Render *undreamtof* by the relative clause welcher unerhört war.

[2] *Spoil to the*, Ausbeutung des; *over-quantity*, übergroße Quantität.

[3] *Wrought*, here gewebt.

[4] See page 93, note 16.

[5] *Rare woods*, seltene Holzarten.

[6] *Scented*, parfümirt; *the—variety*, die verschiedenartigsten, phantastischen Schmucksachen.

XXV.

MODERN BORDER FEUDS.

Thus ran on[1] the voluble tongue of my comrade, as we entered a little, close, asthmatic-looking village, smothered between high hedges and trees, and seeming impenetrable to a breath of air:—

"But what signifies, after all, whether a man be Belgian or Frenchman? Yet the miserable beings of this place presume to quarrel about it. This is the frontier village, ridiculously enough arranged. The road, running in the middle, is the line of separation. The right-hand cottages are in Belgium, the left in France. The widow Vanderbroeckellen, there, on one side, sells you tobacco at ten sous a pound; while her opposite[2] neighbour, François Delaporte, must charge you ten francs; and at that house, on the French side, you may drink a bottle of wine for a franc, that is prohibited to the envious and thirsty dog that lives 'en face.' Such are our Custom-house laws, and a nice nest of smugglers they hatch here. And look at those two fellows, searchers of honest people, one French, the other Belgian; how they eye us from each side of the road. This village of La Belle, as it is called, I consider to be a stone-and-mortar[3] reproach against two Governments that think themselves, no doubt, very wise; and as for the stupid dolts that people it, imagine them coming each half-way into their common street to fight for the honour of their different countries."

"I am heartily glad to hear 'that,'" thought I; "it does look like national feeling." But I did not care to interrupt my companion, and we left La Belle behind us.

"There they go!" exclaimed he, as we were about a mile out of the village; "there they go, the real boys of

[1] *Ran on*, say plauderte...weiter.
[2] Supply the word 'residing.'
[3] *Stone-and-mortar* may here be rendered by monumental.

the by-ways![1] Look at those light-footed fellows!" And I remarked, emerging from a little lane, five or six uncommonly active young men, but reckless and vagabond-looking, each with a stick in his hand, and four, five, or more bladders slung over his shoulder, and dangling against him.

"And who are they?" asked I.

"All smugglers," answered he; "brave, open, daylight fellows,[2] who care no more for a gendarme or Custom-house officer[3] than for you and I. They have just come back from selling their tobacco in France, and are well laden with brandy[4] in return. They have made a round to avoid the village, and are now on their road, fearing neither man nor ——."

As he spoke, two mounted gendarmes appeared: a loud shout from the smugglers gave the salutation[5]—and in an instant the whole gang were across the hedges, and away into the thick-planted fields beyond. The gendarmes put spur to their horses, drew their swords, looked in a terrible passion, and kicked up quantities of dust, galloped about, up some lanes, down others, swore quite like troopers, and at last rode off in a quiet pace, side by side, having no doubt done their duty most faithfully.—T. C. GRATTAN, *National Traits.*

[1] *Real—by-ways*, echten Burſche der Schleichwege; *active*, here rührig.

[2] *Daylight-fellows*, Burſche die das Licht nicht ſcheuen.

[3] *Custom-house officer*, Zollbeamter, Turn *they—tobacco* by 'they have just sold their tobacco.'

[4] *Brandy*, here Cognac.

[5] Translate *gave the salutation* by zuſcholl als Gruß.

[6] The popular phrase *to swear like a* trooper is rendered idiomatically by wie ein Landsknecht fluchen.

XXVI.

GERMAN POPULAR BOOKS.

The Germans, if they did not as yet excel in the higher department of typography, were by no means negligent of[1] their own great invention. The books, if we include the smallest, printed in the Empire between 1470 and the close of the century, amount to several thousand editions. A large proportion of these were in their own language. They had a literary public, as we may call it, not merely in their courts and universities, but in their respectable middle class, the burghers of the free cities, and, perhaps, in the artisans whom they employed. Their reading[2] was almost always *with* a serious end; but no people so successfully cultivated the art of moral and satirical fable. These, in many instances, spread with great favour through Cisalpine[3] Europe. Among the works of this kind, in the fifteenth century, two deserve mention; the "Eulenspiegel," popular afterwards in England by the name of "Howleglass," and a superior and better-known production, the "Narrenschiff," or "Ship of Fools," by Sebastian Brandt of Strasburg, the first edition of which is referred[4] by Brunet to 1494. The Latin translation, which bears the title of 1488 in an edition printed at Lyons, ought to be placed,[5] according to the same bibliographer, ten years later, a numerical letter having probably been omitted.* It was translated

[1] Turn *were—of* by 'did by no means neglect.'

[2] Render *reading* by Lectüre; turn *was* by 'had;' *end* here Zweck.

[3] *Cisalpine*, cisalpinisch, to be preceded here by the definite article.

[4] *Is referred...to* 1494, wird...auf das Jahr 1494 festgesetzt.

[5] *To be placed*, here angegeben werden. The preposition auf should be supplied before *ten*. *Numerical letter*, Zahlbuchstabe.

* Besides the explanation quoted by Hallam, there are two more versions to account for the contradictory date between the original and the translation; some biographers being of opinion that there existed an original German edition previous to that of 1494, and others that the Latin translation was made from the author's manuscript.

into English by Barclay, and published early in[1] 1509. It is a metrical satire on the follies of every class, and may possibly have suggested to Erasmus his "Encomium Moriæ."[2] But the idea was not absolutely new; the theatrical company,[3] established at Paris under the name of "Enfants de Sans Souci," as well as the ancient office of jester or fool in our courts and castles, implied the same principle of satirizing mankind with ridicules[4] in general, that every man should feel more pleasure from the humiliation of his neighbours than pain from his own. Brandt does not show much poetical talent; but his morality is clear and sound; he keeps the pure and right-minded reader on his side; and in an age when little better came into competition, his characters of men, though more didactic than descriptive, did not fail to please.* The influence such books of simple fiction[5] and plain moral would possess over a people may be judged by the delight they once gave to children, before we had learned to vitiate the healthy appetite of ignorance by premature refinements and stimulating variety.—HENRY HALLAM, *Introduction to the Literature of Europe.*

[1] *Early in* = at the beginning of the year.

[2] The German for *Encomium Moriæ* is Lob der Narrheit, but the original Latin title may be retained.

[3] *Theatrical company,* Schauſpieler-Geſellſchaft.

[4] *Satirizing...with ridicules,* auf ſatiriſche Weiſe...zuverſpotten.

[5] *Of—fiction,* ungekünſtelter Fabel.

* The fact that the Narrenſchiff was called the 'Secular Bible,' and that Geiler von Kaiserberg, a celebrated contemporary preacher, could venture to choose some of the chapters as texts for his sermons, will fully bear out the author's statement. It may be added here that the poem, which was written in the Suabian dialect, was also rendered into French and Dutch.

XXVII.

STRAWBERRY WEATHER.

(WRITTEN IN JUNE.)

If our article on this subject should be worth little (especially as we are obliged to be brief, and cannot bring to our assistance much quotation or other helps,) we beg leave to say, that we mean to do little more in it than congratulate the reader on the strawberry season, and imply those pleasant interchanges of conventional sympathy which give rise to the common expressions about the weather or the state of the harvest—things which everybody knows what everybody else will say about them, and yet upon which everybody speaks. Such a charm has sympathy, even in its commonest aspect.

A. A fine day to-day.

B. Very fine day.

A. But I think we shall have rain.

B. I think we shall.[1]

And so the two speakers part, all the better pleased with one another merely for having uttered a few words, and those words such as either of them could have reckoned upon beforehand, and has interchanged a thousand times. And justly are they pleased. They are fellow-creatures living in the same world, and all its phases are of importance to them, and themselves to one another.

The meaning of the word is: "I feel as you *do*," or "I am interested in the same subject, and it is a pleasure to me to let you see it." What a pity that mankind do not vent[2] the same feelings of good-will and a mutual understanding on fifty other subjects! And many do—but all might—and, as Bentham says, "with how little trouble!"

[1] Turn *I think we shall* by 'I think it also.'

[2] Render *vent* by äußern and *understanding* by Verſtändniß

There is strawberry weather, for instance, which is as good a point of the weather to talk about as rain or sun. If the phrase seems a little forced,[1] it is perhaps not so much as it seems; for the weather, and fruit, and colour, and the birds, &c. &c. all hang together; and for our parts, we would fain think, and can easily believe, that without this special degree of heat (while we are writing), or mixture of heat and fresh air, the strawberries would not have their special degree of colour and fragrance. The world answers to the spirit that plays upon it as musical instruments to musicians; and if cloud, sunshine, and breeze (the fine playing of Nature) did not descend upon earth precisely as they do at this moment, there is good reason to conclude that neither fruit, nor anything else, would be precisely what it is. The cuckoo would want[2] tone, and the strawberries relish.—LEIGH HUNT, *The Seer*.

XXVIII.

PROGRESS OF MANKIND.

Man is progressive[3] not only as an individual, but as a race. Here, still more, is his superiority to all other animals apparent. He is, in some measure, the heir of the discoveries, the inventions, the thoughts, and the labours of all foregoing time; and each man has, in some measure, for his helper the results of the accumulated knowledge of the world. But the transmission of experience and knowledge from generation to generation is the fundamental condition of progress throughout the successive ages of the life of mankind. To a large extent, of course, we cannot but profit from the labour of our

[1] *Forced*, say gekünſtelt.
[2] *The...would want*, dem würde es an...fehlen.
[3] Turn *progressive* by 'progresses.

predecessors; all those products, and instruments, and agencies, which we style 'civilization,' our roads, our railways, our canals, our courts of law, our houses of legislature, and a thousand other embodiments of the combined and successive efforts of many generations, are our inheritance by birth. But the very guidance and employment of these require for their improvement, or even for their maintenance, ever-increased knowledge and intelligence. The higher the civilization that a community has attained, the more, not the less, necessary is it that its members, as one race succeeds another, should be enlightened and informed. No inheritance of industrial progress can dispense with individual intelligence and judgment, any more than the accumulation of books can save from the need of learning to read and write. But thousands of human beings, born ignorant, are left to repeat unguided the same experiments, and to incur the same failures and penalties as their parents, as their ancestors. Where these stumbled, or slipped, and fell, they too stumble, or slip, and fall, rising again perhaps, but not uninjured by the fall. Nature teaches, it is true, by penalty as well as by reward; but it is surely wise, as far as may be, to anticipate in each case this rough teaching, to aid it by rational explanation, and to confine it within safe bounds. The world, doubtless, advances in spite of all. That industrial progress is what it is proves that the amount of observance of law is, on the whole, largely in excess of its violation; were it otherwise, society would go backward, and humanity would perish. This predominance of good results from the very constitution of human nature and of the world, by which the individual, working even unconsciously and for his own ends, and learning even by failure, achieves a good wider than that he contemplates, and by which progress, in spite of delay and fluctuation, is maintained in the race, if not always in the individual.—Dr. W. B. Hodgson, *Economic Science as a Branch of Education.*

XXIX.

ATHENIAN EDUCATION.

The ten years that lie between the ages of five and fifteen are, as all acknowledge, among the most important of any man's life for the growth of intellect and the formation of character. In most cases, indeed, the total or all but total absence of any records of the boyhood of a great man would make it impossible to reconstruct in any way the history of his education. The present instance, however, is an exceptional one. There was a marked difference in the character of Athenian education in the periods that preceded and followed the Persian war, and we have the most vivid pictures both of the earlier and the later systems.* The latter, under the influence of sophists and rhetoricians, was open to the charge of cultivating sharpness of intellect at the expense of manliness, and strength, and purity. It proposed political success as the one object in life, and that was only to be obtained by the skill of speech, which involved long practice and attendance in the assemblies, deliberative and judicial, of the people. So trained, the youth of Athens became pale and narrow-chested, glib of speech, chattering in the Agora,[1] boasting that they were better than their fathers, calling good evil, and evil good, sinking into all forms of effeminacy.

But the same hand that has drawn us this picture has left us also another. The education which was old-fashioned and obsolete at the beginning of the Peloponnesian war was in full sway between Marathon and Salamis, and under its influence Sophocles must have grown up.

[1] The Agora was originally the place of assembly of the people, and subsequently the market-place at Athens.

* See the elaborate description in the Clouds of Aristophanes (933—993), from which most of the details which follow are taken.—The Author.

The system was one well adapted to bring out all powers of man's mind and body to their highest perfection. The government of Peisistratos had helped to raise the people out of the roughness of their earlier life. Intercourse with the Asiatic Greeks had brought in quicker perceptions of beauty in art, and poetry, and music. It had not as yet brought in, in their fulness, though the tyrants of Greece were doing their best to introduce them, the vices with which all Asiatic society was tainted. The zeal with which Peisistratos had collected and edited the works of Homer had given the youth of Athens a basis upon which their education rested; and its ethical influence, if not always in harmony with the standard of a higher wisdom, and sometimes too subservient to the principles of despotism, at least tended to a reverence for truth, and honour, and manliness.

The Iliad and the Odyssey were free from the deep-dyed stain of later Greek literature. They were fit text-books for an education which aimed at forming the heroic temper, and looked at the training of the body, and skill in music and poetry, as equally contributing to it. Manliness, and self-restraint, and reverence for parents were the key-notes of the whole. We have but to individualize the general features of the picture which the comic dramatist has drawn, to follow the boyhood of Sophocles in its daily life. To go with the other boys of his 'dēme,'[1] marching in due order, bare-headed and unclothed, even though it might snow fast and thick, to the house of the music-teacher, there to learn a manly and vigorous music, free from all tricks and affectations; to pass from that lesson to the school of the trainer, to gain in wrestling, running, leaping, the clear complexion, the blooming health, the well-developed form, which gave promise of a vigorous manhood; to honour father and mother, and pay all due reverence to age; to blush with a genuine shamefastness; to be pure in the midst of the floods of impurity that were beginning to creep in; to be each of

[1] Retain the same expression—derived from the Greek δῆμος (*i.e.* a district or parish in Athens)—also in German.

them in his own person as a very statue of modesty ;—this was the training of the men who fought at Marathon, and this, with somewhat more of intellectual culture, must have been that of Sophocles.—E. H. PLUMPTRE, *The Life and Writings of Sophocles.*

XXX.

A CONVERSION BY POETRY.*

After the manner of pious men of those times, Las Casas and his monks did not fail to commence their undertaking by having recourse to the most fervent prayers, severe fasts, and other mortifications. These lasted several days. They then turned to the secular part of their enterprise, using all the skill that the most accomplished statesmen or men of the world could have brought to bear upon it. The first thing they did was to translate into verse, in the Quiché language, the great doctrines of the Church. In these verses they described the creation of the world, the fall of man, his banishment from Paradise, and the mediation prepared for him ; then the life of Christ, His passion, His death, His resurrection, His ascension ; then His future return to judge all men, the punishment of the wicked and the reward of the good. They divided the work, which was very extensive, into 'coplas,' after the Castilian fashion. We might well wish, for many reasons, that this laudable work remained to us, but I am not aware of there being any traces of its existence.

The good fathers then began to study how they should

* The above extract refers to the conversion, by peaceful means, of some Indian tribes, much dreaded by the Spaniards on account of their warlike character.

introduce their poem to the notice of the Indians of Tuzulutlan; and, availing themselves of a happy thought for this purpose, they called to their aid four Indian merchants, who were in the habit of going with merchandise several times a year into this province called 'the Land of War.' The monks, with great care, taught these four men to repeat the couplets which they had composed. The pupils entered entirely into the views of their instructors. Indeed, they took such pains in learning their lessons, and (with the fine sense for musical intonation which the Indians generally possessed) repeated these verses so well, that there was nothing left to desire. The composition and the teaching occupied three months, and was not completed until the middle of August, 1537. * * * The monks and the merchants, however, were not satisfied until they had brought their labours to much greater perfection,—until, indeed, they had set these verses to music, so that they might be accompanied by the Indian instrument. * * *

The enterprise was now ready to be carried into action, to be transplanted from the schools into the world. It was resolved that the merchants should commence their journey into 'the Land of War,' carrying with them not only their own merchandises, but being furnished by Las Casas with the usual small wares to please aborigines, such as scissors, knives, looking-glasses, and bells. The pupils and the teachers parted; the merchants making their accustomed journey into the territories of Quiché and Zacapula, their destination being a certain pueblo[1] of a great cacique of those parts, a wise and warlike chief, who had many powerful alliances. * * *

The merchants were received, as was the custom in a country without inns, into the palace of the cacique, where they met with a better reception than usual, being enabled to make him presents of these new things from Castille. They then set up their tent, and began to sell their goods

[1] Retain the Spanish expression *pueblo*, signifying 'a town, village,' &c. For the word *cacique*, which is the title of a king or chief among several tribes of Indians in America, we use in German *Rajih*.

as they were wont to do, their customers thronging about them to see the Spanish novelties. When the sale was over for that day, the chief men amongst the Indians remained with the cacique to do him honour. In the evening the merchants asked for a 'teplanastl,' an instrument of music which we may suppose to have been the same as the Mexican 'teponaztli' or drum. They then produced some timbrels and bells which they had brought with them, and began to sing the verses which they had learned by heart, accompanying themselves on the musical instruments. The effect produced was very great. The sudden change of character, not often made, from a merchant to a priest, at once arrested the attention of the assemblage. Then, if the music was beyond anything that these Indians had heard, the words were still more extraordinary; for the good fathers had not hesitated to put into their verses the questionable assertion that idols were demons, and the certain fact that human sacrifices were abominable. The main body of the audience was delighted, and pronounced these merchants to be ambassadors from new gods.

The cacique, with the caution of a man in authority, suspended his judgment until he had heard more of the matter. The next day, and for seven succeeding days, this sermon in song was repeated. In public and in private, the person who insisted most on this repetition was the cacique, and he expressed a wish to fathom the matter, and to know the origin and meaning of these things. The prudent merchants replied, that they only sang what they had heard, that it was not their business to explain these verses, for that office belonged to certain 'padres' who instructed the people. "And who are 'padres'?" asked the chief. In answer to that question the merchants painted pictures of the Dominican monks, in their robes of black and white, and their tonsured heads. The merchants then described the lives of these 'padres;' how they did not eat meat, and how they did not desire gold, or feathers, or cocoa; that they were not married, that night and day they sang the

praises of God, and that they knelt before very beautiful images.

The Indian chief resolved to see and hear these marvellous men in black and white, with their hair in the form of a garland, who were so different from other men; and for this purpose, when the merchants returned, he sent in company with them a brother of his, a young man of twenty-two years of age, who was to invite the Dominicans to visit his brother's country, and to carry them presents. * * *

While the Indian prince was occupied in visiting the town of Santiago, the monks debated amongst themselves what course they should pursue in reference to the invitation which they had received from the cacique. Guided throughout by great prudence, they resolved not to risk the safety of the whole of their body, but to send only one monk at first as an ambassador and explorer. Their choice fell upon Father Luis Cancér, who probably was the most skilled of all the four in the language that was likely to be best understood in Tuzulutlan. Meanwhile the cacique's brother and his attendants made their observations of the mode of life of the monks, who gratified him and them by little presents. It was time now to return; and the whole party, consisting of Luis Cancér, the cacique's brother, his Indians, and the four merchants of Guatemala, set off from Santiago on their way to the cacique's country. * * *

The journey of Father Luis was a continued triumph. Everywhere the difference was noticed between his dress, customs, and manners, and those of the Spaniards who had already been seen in Tuzulutlan. When he came into the cacique's territory, he was received under triumphal arches, and the ways were made clean before him, as if he had been a monarch traversing his kingdom. At the entrance of the cacique's own town, the chief himself came out to meet Father Luis, and, bending before him, cast down his eyes, showing him the same mark of reverence that he would have shown to the priests of that country. More substantial and abiding honours soon followed. At

the cacique's order a church was built, and in it the Father said mass in the presence of the chief, who was especially delighted with the cleanliness of the sacerdotal garments; for the priests of his own country, like those of Mexico, affected filth and darkness as the fitting accompaniments for a religion of terror. * * *

In a word, the mission of Father Luis was supremely successful; and after he had visited other parts of the country subject to the converted cacique, he returned, according to the plan that had been determined upon by the brethren, to the town of Santiago, where Las Casas and the other monks received with ineffable delight the good tidings which their brother had to communicate to them.—Arthur Helps, *The Life of Las Casas.*

XXXI.

A PARALLEL.

By way of a beginning, let us ask ourselves—What is education? And, above all things, what is our ideal of a thorough liberal education?—of that education which, if we could begin life again, we would give ourselves—the education which, if we could mould the fates to our own will, we would give our children? Well, I know not what may be your conception upon this matter, but I will tell you mine; and I hope I shall find that our views are not very discrepant. Suppose it were perfectly certain that the life and fortune of every one of us would one day or other depend upon his winning or losing a game of chess, don't you think we should all consider it to be a primary duty to learn at least the names and the moves of the pieces? to have a notion of a gambit, and a keen eye for all the means of giving and getting out of check? Do

you not think that we should look with disapprobation amounting to scorn upon the father who allowed his son, or the State which allowed its members, to grow up without knowing a pawn from a knight? Now, it is a very plain and elementary truth that the life, the fortune, and the happiness of every one of us, and, more or less, of those who are connected with us, do depend upon our knowing something of the rules of a game infinitely more difficult and complicated than chess. It is a game which has been played for untold ages: every man and woman of us being one of the two players in a game of his or her own. The chess-board is the world, the pieces the phenomena of the universe, the rules of the game are what we call the laws of nature. The player on the other side is hidden from us. All we know is that his play is always fair, just, and patient; but, also, that he never overlooks a mistake or makes the smallest allowance for ignorance. To the man who plays well the highest stakes are paid with that sort of overflowing generosity with which the strong shows delight in strength. And one who plays ill is checkmated without haste, but without remorse. My metaphor will remind some of you of the famous picture in which Retzsch has depicted Satan playing at chess with man for his soul. Substitute for the mocking fiend in that picture a calm, strong angel, who is playing for love, as we say, and would rather lose than win, and I should accept it as an image of human life. Well, now, what I mean with education is learning the rules of this mighty game. In other words, education is the instruction of the intellect in the laws of nature, and the fashioning of the affections and of the will into harmony with those laws.—T. H. Huxley, *On Education.*

XXXII.

INTERLACHEN.

Interlachen! how peacefully, by the margin of the swift-rushing Aar, thou liest on the broad lap of those romantic meadows, all overshadowed by the wide arms of giant trees! Only the round towers of thine ancient cloister rise above their summits; the round towers themselves but a child's playthings under the great church-towers of the mountains! Close beside thee are lakes, which the flowing band of the river ties together. Before thee opens the magnificent valley of Lauterbrunnen, where the cloud-hooded monk and pale virgin stand like Saint Francis and his bride of snow; and around thee are fields, and orchards, and hamlets green, from which the churchbells answer each other at evening. The evening sun was setting when I first beheld thee! The sun of life will set ere I forget thee! * * *

Paul Flemming alighted at one of the principal hotels. The landlord came out to meet him. He had great eyes and a green coat, and reminded Flemming of the innkeeper mentioned in the Golden Ass, who had been changed by magic into a frog, and croaked to his customers from the lees of a wine-cask. His house, he said, was full, and so was every house in Interlachen; but if the gentleman would walk in, he would procure a chamber for him in the neighbourhood.

On the sofa sat a gentleman, reading; a stout gentleman of perhaps forty-five, round, ruddy, and with a head which, being a little bald on the top, looked not unlike a crow's nest with one egg in it. A good-humoured face turned from the book as Flemming entered, and a good-humoured voice exclaimed:

"Ha! ha! Mr. Flemming! Is it you or your apparition? I told you we should meet again, though you were for taking an eternal farewell of your fellow-traveller."

Saying these words, the stout gentleman rose and shook Flemming heartily by the hand. And Flemming returned the shake as heartily, recognising in this ruddy personage a former travelling companion, Mr. Berkley, whom he had left, a week or two previously, toiling up the Righi. Mr. Berkley was an Englishman of fortune ; a good-humoured, humane, old bachelor, remarkable alike for his common sense and his eccentricity. This is to say, the basis of his character was good, sound common sense, trodden down and smoothed by education ; but this level ground-work his strange and whimsical fancy used as a dancing-floor, whereon to exhibit her eccentric tricks. His ruling passion was cold bathing ; and he usually ate his breakfast sitting in a tub of cold water, and reading a newspaper. He kissed every child he met, and to every old man said in passing, "God bless you!" with such an expression of voice and countenance, that no one could doubt his sincerity. He reminded one of Roger Bontemps, or the little man in gray, though with a difference.

"The last time I had the pleasure of seeing you, Mr. Berkley," said Flemming, "was at Goldau, just as you were going up the Righi. I hope you were gratified with a fine sunrise of the mountain-top?"

"No, I was not," replied Mr. Berkley. "It is all a humbug! a confounded humbug! They made such a noise about their sunrise, that I determined I would not see it. So I lay snug in bed, and only peeped through the window-curtain. That was enough. Just above the house, on the top of the hill, stood some fifty half-dressed, romantic individuals, shivering in the wet grass, and, a short distance from them, a miserable wretch blowing a long wooden horn. 'That's your sunrise on the Righi, is it?' said I, and went to sleep again. * * * Take my word for it, the Righi is a great humbug!"—H. W. Longfellow, *Hyperion.*

XXXIII.

THE HISTORY OF A WORD.

What a record of great social revolutions, revolutions in nations and in the feelings of nations, the one word 'frank' contains, which is used, as we all know, to express aught that is generous, straightforward, and free. The Franks, I need not remind you, were a powerful German tribe, or association of tribes, which at the breaking up of the Roman empire possessed themselves of Gaul, to which they gave their own name. They were the ruling conquering people, honourably distinguished from the Gauls and degenerate Romans, among whom they established themselves by their independence, their love of truth, their love of freedom, their hatred of a lie; they had, in short, the virtues which belong to a conquering and dominant race in the midst of an inferior and conquered. And thus it came to pass that by degrees the name 'frank,' which originally indicated a merely national, came to involve as well a moral distinction; and a 'frank' man was synonymous not merely with a man of the conquering German race, but was an epithet applied to a person possessed of certain high moral qualities, which for the most part appertained to, and were found only in, men of that stock. And thus in men's daily discourse, when they speak of a person as being 'frank,'[1] or when they use the words 'franchise,' 'enfranchisement,' to express civil liberties and immunities, their language here is the outgrowth, the record, and the result of great historic changes, and bears testimony to facts of history, whereof it may well happen that the speakers have never heard.—R. C. Trench, *On the Study of Words.*

[1] The word frank is also used in the same sense in German, but the expression altfränkisch is employed to denote both persons and things which are as good and sterling as they were with the old Franks, and also in the sense of 'antiquated, obsolete.'

XXXIV.

SHAKESPEARE'S BIOGRAPHY.

Shakespeare is the only biographer of Shakespeare; and even he can tell nothing, except to the Shakespeare within us—that is, to our most apprehensive and sympathetic hour. He cannot step from off his tripod, and give us anecdotes of his inspirations. Read the antique documents extricated, analyzed, and compared by the assiduous Dyce and Collier, and now read one of those skiey sentences—aërolites—which seem to have fallen out of heaven, and which not your experience, but the man within the breast, has accepted as words of fate, and tell me if they match, if the former account in any manner for the latter, or which gives the most historical insight into the man.

Hence, though our external history is so meagre, yet with Shakespeare for biographer, instead of Aubrey and Rowe, we have really the information which is material, that which describes character and fortune, that which, if we were about to meet the man and deal with him, would most import us to know. We have his recorded convictions on those questions which knock for answer at every heart—on life and death, on love, on wealth and poverty, on the prizes of life, and the ways whereby we come at them; on the characters of men, and the influences, occult and open, which affect their fortunes; and on those mysterious and demoniacal powers which defy our science, and yet interweave their malice and their gift in our brightest hours. Who ever read the volume of the "Sonnets" without finding that the poet had there revealed, under masks that are no masks to the intelligent, the lore of friendship and of love; the confusion of sentiments in the most succeptible and, at the same time, the most intellectual of men? What trait of his private mind has he hidden in his dramas? One can discern, in his ample pictures of the gentleman and the king, what forms and

humanities pleased him; his delight in troops of friends, in large hospitality, in cheerful giving. Let Timon, let Warwick, let Antonio the Merchant answer for his great heart. So far from Shakespeare's being the least known, he is the one person, in all modern history, known to us. What point of morals, of manners, of economy, of philosophy, of religion, of taste, of the conduct of life, has he not settled? What mystery has he not signified his knowledge of? What office, or function, or district of man's work has he not remembered? What king has he not taught state, as Talma taught Napoleon? What sage has he not outseen? What gentleman has he not instructed in the rudeness of his behaviour?—Ralph Waldo Emerson, *Representative Men.*

XXXV.

DISTINCTIVE CHARACTER OF NATIONS.

Be this as it may, it is at least clear that, during five successive centuries, the lowlands of our island were chiefly peopled, and were exclusively governed, by members of the great Teutonic family. In France, throughout the same period, there was a vast numerical preponderance of the Gallic, or Roman-Gallic, over the Teutonic element of society. What was the effect of the slow and imperfect fusion of the two races in that kingdom I have attempted in a former lecture to explain. What was the effect of the undisturbed development of the German habits of thought and action in our own land it remains for us to inquire.

I have already avowed my belief that to each of the nations of the earth belongs, by a divine decree, a distinctive character adapted to the peculiar office assigned to each in the great and comprehensive system of human affairs. Thus to France was appointed, by the Supreme Ruler of mankind, the duty of civilizing and humanizing the European world. To England it has been given to

guide all other States to excellence in the practical arts of life, to commercial wealth, to political wisdom, and to spiritual liberty. But to Germany was delegated the highest and the noblest trust which has been committed to any people since the Hebrews, the Greeks, and the Romans fulfilled their respective commission of imparting to our race the blessings of religion, of learning, and of law. * * *

Weakened as she has been in defensive as well as in aggressive war by the division of her territory into so many separate States, yet in that very weakness she has found her strength in the unambitious but benificent career which, by the prescient will of the Creator himself, she was destined to pursue. The fathers of some of the most aged amongst us witnessed her first assumption of her rank and proper station in the republic of letters, and we ourselves are witnesses how, in that comparatively new region of national prowess, she has exhibited the same indestructible character which, more than a thousand years ago, enabled her to lay in this island the basis of a government, of which (if our posterity be true to their trust) another thousand years will scarcely witness the subversion. That England has her patrimony on the seas, France on the land, and Germany in the clouds, is a sarcasm at which a German may well afford to smile. For reverence in the contemplation of whatever is elevated, and imagination in the embellishment of whatever is beautiful, and tenderness in cherishing whatever is lovely, and patience in the pursuit of the most recondite truths, and courage in the avowal of every deliberate conviction, and charity in tolerating every form of honest dissent—these are now, as they have ever been, the vital elements of the Teutonic mind.—Sir James Stephen, *Lectures on the History of France.*

GRAMMATICAL INDEX.*

[N.B.—The Arabic figures before the letter *n.* refer to the Pages, and those following that letter, as well as the italic letters given in brackets, refer to the *Notes*. The *Pages* and *Divisions* of the *Grammatical Introduction* are indicated by Roman figures.]

A.

About, to be, when rendered by im Begriff ſein, or wollte, 40, *n.* 12.

Accusative, used in elliptical clauses, 35, *n.* 13.

Accusative, with infinitive, construction of, Gr. Int. xvii. III.

Accusatives, two, not used with verbs of choosing, appointing, etc., 36, *n.* 4.

Adjectives denoting colour, use of, 2, *n.* 10.

Adjectives, formation of, from proper names; (1) by iſch, 66, *n.* 5; (2) by er, 95, *n.* 20.

Adjectives referring to erklären, halten, etc., 92, *n.* 14.

Adjectives, repetition of terminations of comparative and superlative of, 92, *n.* 6.

Adjectives upon which the objective clause or supine depends followed by a preposition, 97, *n.* 2.

Adjective Sentences. Caution about the formation of them, Gr. Int. xiv. etc., I.

Adverbial Expressions. I. Place of, (1), of *manner*, 7, *n.* 32 (*a*), (2) of *place* and *time*, 1, *n.* 4 (*a*).

II. — of *time*, rendered by the genitive, 27, *n.* 6.

III. Elliptical use of adv. expres. of place, 36, *n.* 12.

Adverbs, relative superlative of, how formed, 87, *n.* 1.

Affair, when rendered by Ereigniß, Vorfall, or Begebenheit, 58, *n.* 16.

Allowed, to be, transl. of, 5, *n.* 22 (*b*).

Among, when rendered by the prep. bei, 5, *n.* 22.

Apposition, agreement of, with the nouns qualified, Gr. Int. xix. IV., 85, *n.* 9.

Article. I. *Use* of def. (1) with abstract nouns, 1, *n.* 1, and 8, *n.* 35 (*a*); (2) with common names, 1, *n.* 2; (3) with names of materials, 2, *n.* 5 (*a*); (4) with names of mountains, 6, *n.* 30; (5) instead of possessive pronouns, 8, *n.* 34 (*b*); (6) with names of countries preceded by adjectives, 66, *n.* 14; (7) with foreign proper names, 3, *n.*

* The utility of a *Grammatical Index* like the above is so obvious that it seems to us quite superfluous to point it out more fully. The intelligent student will also at once find out the manner in which the *Index* is to be used. We will, therefore, here limit ourselves to calling the attention of all students of German, who use this book, to the desirability of first consulting the *Index* before referring to a Grammar or Dictionary. In a great many instances the translators will find the required help, whenever a difficulty offers itself in rendering the Extracts, and very often also a kind of help for which they would look in

15 (*a*), and 9, *n.* 40 (*b*); (8) after alle, 68, *n.* 4; (9) before meiſte, 91, *n.* 6.

II. Omission of —, with common names used as titles, 28, *n.* 6.

III. *General definition* of —, 76, *n.* 10.

IV. *Place* of —, when used with adj., 31, *n.* 18; 49, *n.* 13.

V. *Repetition* of, Gr. Int. xix. IV., 42, *n.* 9; 91, *n.* 10.

As, various transl. of conj., 43, *n.* 11; 76, *n.* 4.

As if, when rendered by als ob... wollte, 39, *n.* 5.

Assertion, placed (1) *after* the subject, 2, *n.* 5 (*b*); (2) *before* the subject, 3, *n.* 12 (*a*).

Audience, various renderings of, 32, *n.* 6; 163, *n.* 17.

Aux. Verbs, of mood, when used in the infinitive instead of in the past part. 52, *n.* 1.

Aux. Verbs, of tense, see *Verbs*.

B.

Baffle, to, rendering of, 49, *n.* 6.

Be, insep. prefix, transforms intransitive verbs into transitive ones, 39, *n.* 1.

Be, to, when rendered by ſich befinden, 94, *n.* 2.

Bedürfen, governs genitive case, 6, *n.* 29.

Befehlen, requires the supine, 89, *n.* 1.

Befleißen (ſich), governs gen. case, 86, *n.* 2.

Body, rendered (1) by Körper, 4, *n.* 18; (2) by Leiche, or Leichnam, 154, *n.* 11; (3) by Körperſchaft, 160, *n.* 10.

But, transl. of, (1) by aber, or ſondern, 24, *n.* 8; (2) by als, 62, *n.* 1; (3) by nur or bloß, 41, *n.* 14.

But for when turned by *if not*, 55, *n.* 7.

By, when rendered (1) by durch 11, *n.* 46; (2) by von, 52, *n.* 17.

C.

Cannon, when rendered by Geſchütz, or Kanone, 49, *n.* 10.

Certain, when rendered by unfehlbar, or gewiß, 111, *n.* 21.

Characteristics, rendering of, 212, *n.* 5.

Chivalry, when rendered by Rittertum, Ritterweſen, or Ritterſchaft, 57, *n.* 1.

Clauses, see *Sentences*.

Composition, when rendered by Ausarbeitung, 62, *n.* 6.

Compound Expressions, two, having the same subordinate member, 93, *n.* 16.

Conditional mood, used (1) in clauses expressing supposition, 48, *n.* 9; (2) in adverbial clauses of time, 96, *n.* 11; (3) for the present participle after *but for*, 55, *n.* 7; (4) instead of the conjunctive, 74, *n.* 16.

Conjunctive mood, use of, 26, *n.* 16; 29, *n.* 3.

Conqueror, when rendered by Sieger, 36, *n.* 1.

vain in other works; more particularly as regards the synonyms explained in the *Notes*. Our *Index* might also be utilised in another respect. By occasionally going through it, the students will be able to test their knowledge of the *Rules*, contained in *Notes*, which comprise by far the greater portion of the Syntax, and, besides, many essentials of German Accidence. Considerable pains have been taken to make the *Index* as complete as possible, and it is hoped that it will fulfil the object for which it was composed, viz., to be a *Grammatical Key* to the present volume.

Consider, to, rendered by (1) überlegen, or by erwägen, 71, *n.* 13; (2) by anſehen, or betrachten, etc., and used with als, 85, *n.* 2.
Construction, characteristics of German, Int. xiv. I.
Construction, elliptical, 35, *n.* 13.
Continue, to, when expressed by weiter, or fort, 37, *n.* 17.
Country, when rendered by Vaterland, 9, *n.* 39.
Could, when rendered by konnte, or by könnte, 67, *n.* 5.
Curious, when rendered by merkwürdig, 108, *n.* 2.

D.

Da, or dar, when added to prepositions, 97, *n.* 2.
Date, place of, in German, 98, *n.* 1.
Dative, idiomatic use of, 85, *n.* 15.
Dies, use of the abbreviated form, 90, *n.* 18.
Dress, when rendered by Kleid, or Kleidung, 78, *n.* 18.

E.

Emphasis, of Verbs, how expressed in German, 34, *n.* 13.
Enemy, used as a military term, 14, *n.* 5.
English, when rendered by engliſch, and when by Engländer, 73, *n.* 17.
Es, (1) supplies the place of the *Object*, Gr. Int. xx. V., and 17, *n.* 7; (2) used as grammatical subject, 81, *n.* 10.
Ever, when rendered by je, or jemals, 17, *n.* 5.
Euer, when written Ew., 40, *n.* 10.

F.

Fact, when rendered by That, Thatſache, or Factum (pl. Facta, Facten), 48, *n.* 8.
Favourite, rendered by the genitive of Liebling, 125, *n.* 4.
First and *Second*, when rendered by dieſer and jener, 118, *n.* 9.
Food, when rendered by Nahrung or Speiſe, 65, *n.* 6.
For, when rendered by für, or denn, 89, *n.* 8.
For, how rendered, when expressing duration of time, 59, *n.* 2.
Frank, when rendered by frank, or altfränkiſch, 242, *n.* 1.
für, when used with adjectives, 92, *n.* 14.
Future, English emphatic, how rendered in German, 38, *n.* 22.

G.

Gegenüber, place of the prep., 61, *n.* 14.
Genitive, (1) place of, in common prose, 14, *n.* 4; (2) with proper nouns, 3, *n.* 11 (*a*); *n.* 15; (3) used to express time, 79, *n.* 5.
Genitive, rendering of objective, 62, *n.* 12.
Genitive, partitive, generally rendered by von, 6, *n.* 26 (*b*); 87, *n.* 8.
Gentleman, when not translated, 147, *n.* 10.
Glass, when rendered by Glasgeſchirr, 29, *n.* 8.
Go, to, when rendered by wollen, 70, *n.* 16.
Good (and well), when rendered by gut, and when by wohl, 75, *n.* 4.

H.

Haben, aux. v. when omitted, 12, *n.* 47 (*e*).
Help, to, when rendered by ſich bedienen, anbieten, or reichen, 27, *n.* 12.
His, before names of titles, 39, etc., *n.* 17.
Honour, to, when rendered by ehren, and when by beehren, 35, *n.* 3.

I.

If, suppressed in conditional clauses, 48, *n.* 9.
In, transl. of prep. (1) before the date of a year, 13, *n.* 49 (*b*); (1) when referring to the reign of a sovereign, 3, *n.* 12.
Indian, when rendered by Inder, Inderin, or Indianer, 44, *n.* 6.
Infinitive, accusative with, (1) how construed in German, (2) used with ſehen, hören, etc., Gr. Int. xvii., III., etc.
Infinitive, preceded by *as*, and referring to the demonstr. *so*, 4, *n.* 18.
Infinitive, preceded by *as if*, 39, *n.* 5.
Infinitive, without zu after auxil. verbs of mood, 11, *n.* 45 (*b*).
Inversions, not admissible in *dependent sentences*, 3, *n.* 15 (*b*).
It is, *It was*, when omitted in German, 34, *n.* 13.

K.

Kennen, use of, 162, *n.* 5.
Know, to, when rendered by kennen, or wiſſen, 162, *n.* 5.

L.

Leben (life), when not used in the plural, 5, *n.* 25 (*c*).
Like, when rendered by artig, or mäßig, 83, *n.* 8.

M.

Man, rendered (1) by Menſch, 3, *n.* 14; (2) by Mann, 65, *n.* 16.
May, when transl. by können, 8, *n.* 37 (*d*).
Mayor, when rendered by Bürgermeiſter, and when not translated, 100, *n.* 2.
Meer, used figuratively, 129, *n.* 9.
Might, when rendered by the indicat. of können, or by the pres. cond. of dürfen (*i.e.* dürfte), 71, *n.* 10.
Moor, when rendered by Maure, Mohr, or Neger, 124, *n.* 5.
Most (meiſte), used with def. article, 91, *n.* 6.
Mount, to, rendered by ſteigen, or beſteigen, 39, *n.* 1.

N.

Names of Materials, not used in the plural, 8, *n.* 36 (*c*).
Names, common, when used without an article, 28, *n.* 6.
Names, proper, see *Proper Names*.
Next, when rendered by folgend, and when by nächſt, 68, *n.* 12.
Nor, when rendered by auch ... nicht, or noch, 42, *n.* 2.
Nouns, plural of, ending in ium, 91, *n.* 14.
Nouns, Abstract, (1) used with def. article, 1, *n.* 1; 8, *n.* 35 (*a*); (2) used in the singular only, 12, *n.* 47 (*c*).
Nouns, used in the singular only, (1) when denoting unlimited plurality, 6, *n.* 28; (2) when used as terms of weight, measure, or number, 7, *n.* 32 (*d*).
Nouns, collective, generally require the verb and pronoun in the singular only, 72, *n.* 3.
Nouns, compound, see *Substantives*.

O.

Object (place of the), supplied by es, Gr. Int. xx. V.
Of, not transl. (1) after the *common names*, Inſel, Land, Stadt, Königreich, etc., 5, *n.* 24 (*a*); (2) after names of number, weight, or measure, 4, *n.* 20, and *n.* 21 (*a*).

Of, (1) before names of materials of which a thing is made, 1, *n.* 3; (2) before names of places and countries, 9, *n.* 40 (*c*); (3) before names of places, where battles were fought, 49, *n.* 1.
Officer, when rendered by Offizier, and when by Beamter, 74, *n.* 14.
One, used after an adjective, not expressed in German, 19, *n.* 10.

P.

Participial Constructions, (1) changed into a regular clause with a conjunction indicating time; (2) changed into a relative clause; (3) changed into a regular sentence, introduced with da; (4) changed into attributive adjectives; (5) turned by finite verbs and connected by und; (6) rendered by adverbial expressions; (7) when used also in German, and how expressed in common prose, Introd. xv., etc., II. *a—g*; (8) changed into a regular clause and introduced by ohne daß, 88, *n.* 4.
Participial Constructions, English passive, expressed by the supine in the active form, 45, *n.* 20.
Participle, present, implying concession, how turned, 43, *n.* 1.
Passive Voice, (1) use of, 1, *n.* 4 (*b*); changed into the *active voice*, 2, *n.* 8; (2) changed into Reflective form, 10, *n.* 41 (*b*); (3) when used impersonally only, 5, *n.* 22 (*b*).
People, rendered by Leute, or Volk, 41, *n.* 11.
Prefixes, inseparable, advantages of, 35, *n.* 3.
Prepositions, (1) joined to the demonstrative da, or dar, 97, *n.* 2; (2) two —, used to express direction, 23, *n.* 12.
Prince, when rendered by Prinz, or Fürſt, 80, *n.* 13.
Pronouns, possessive, repetition of, 53, *n.* 5; 106, *n.* 9.
Pronoun, relative, (1) not omitted in German, 5, *n.* 23; (2) when to use der, die, das, for welcher, etc., 68, *n.* 10.
Proper Names, declension of foreign, (1) ending in a sibilant, 3, *n.* 15 (*a*); 9, *n.* 40 (*b*); 54, *n.* 7; (2) not ending in a sibilant, 9, *n.* 40 (*b*).
Proper Names, place of, used in the genitive, 3, *n.* 11 (*a*).
Proper Names of Countries, preceded by adjectives, 66, *n.* 14.
Proper Names of Rivers, gender of, 135, *n.* 13.
Possibility, expressed by wohl, 138, *n.* 10.
Pupil, when rendered by Pupille, or Augapfel, 42, *n.* 6.
Purple, when rendered by violett, or purpurn, 103, *n.* 17.

R.

Residence, when rendered by Wohnort, Wohnſitz, Wohnung, or by Reſidenz, Reſidenzſtadt, 85, *n.* 5.
Rivers, names of, gender of, 82, *n* 1; 135, *n.* 13.

S.

Said, it is, rendered by ſollen, 11, *n.* 45 (*a*).
Say, they, *ibid.*
Schritt, when employed to denote distance, 136, *n.* 6.
Season, rendered (1) by Seſſion, 30, *n.* 13; (2) by Saiſon, or Jahreszeit, 99, *n.* 11.
Sein, aux. v., when omitted, 12, *n.* 47 (*e*).
Sentences, dependent (1) expressing a *condition*, and preceding a *principal* clause, 2, *n.* 7; (2) require the inflected verb to be

placed at the end, 3, *n.* 12 (*b*); (3) do not admit of inversions, 3, *n.* 15 (*b*).

So, conj., when placed before principal sentences, 2, *n.* 7.

So, when rendered by wofern, wenn nur, 18, *n.* 17.

Sollen, used for *it is said; they say*, 11, *n.* 45 (*a*).

Some, when rendered by irgend ein, 60, *n.* 5.

Speech, when rendered by Rede, and when by Sprache, 31, *n.* 12.

Square, rendering of, 67, *n.* 15.

Stage, when rendered by Stadium, 91, *n.* 14.

Subject, grammatical, use of, 81, *n.* 10.

Substantives, compound, (1) advantage of forming, 22, *n.* 3; (2) formed without any connecting link, or by means of the gen., 59, *n.* 10; 72, *n.* 1 and 10; (3) formed with adjectives, 59, *n.* 9; (4) mode of writing two compounds having the same subordinate member, 93, *n.* 16.

Substantives, (1) frequentative, how formed, 15, *n.* 4; (2) gender of abstract —, formed from adjectives, 92, *n.* 7.
[See also *Nouns*.]

Suffer, to, when rendered by laſſen, 102, *n.* 15.

Superlative, relative, of adverbs, 87, *n.* 1.

Supine, (1) definition of, and its general use, 2, *n.* 9 (*a*); (2) with *verbal forms* in *-ing* preceded by *of*, *instead of*, *for*, or *without*, 7, *n.* 31 (*a*); (3) with verbs expressing that something *can* or *should* be done, 9, *n.* 38; (4) with befehlen, 89, *n.* 1; (5) Not used after aux. verbs of mood, and ſehen, hören, etc., 11, *n.* 45 (*b*); 37, *n.* 4.

Surgeon, when rendered by Arzt, Wundarzt, or Chirurg, 77, *n.* 11.

Syrup, when rendered by Sirup, Fruchtſaft 28, *n.* 14.

T.

That, the conjunction, (1) omitted, 33, *n.* 17; (2) expressed, 45, *n.* 19.

Term, when rendered by Wort, or Ausdruck, 2, *n.* 9.

There is, there was, rendered by (1) es gibt, es gab; by es iſt, es war, 25, *n.* 7; (2) by iſt vorhanden, 107, *n.* 17.

Thing, when rendered by Ding, and when by Sache, 70, *n.* 1.

Think, to, when rendered by gedenken, 15, *n.* 3.

Time, (1) duration of, expressed by the accusative, 59, *n.* 2; (2) point of —, expressed by an with the dative, 88, *n.* 15; by the genitive, 79, *n.* 5.

Time, by this, rendered by jetzt, or nun, 17, *n.* 1.

Times, when used in the singular only, 13, *n.* 50 (*a*).

Titles, English, not translated, 31, *n.* 7.

To, between two cardinal numbers, 7, *n.* 32 (*c*).

Town, when rendered by London, 212, *n.* 6.

U.

Um, precedes the *supine*, 2, *n.* 9 (*a*).

Uniformity, when rendered by Gleichförmigkeit, or Einförmigkeit 91, *n.* 5.

V.

Ver, use of insep. prefix, 96, *n.* 14.

Verbs. I. (1) When conjugated with ſein; (2) Omission of aux. verbs of tense, haben and ſein, 12, *n.* 47 (*c*); (3) Use of aux. — of mood, 52, *n.* 1.

II. (1) Use of the passive voice, 1, *n.* 4. (*b*); (2) use of active voice instead of passive

voice, 2, *n.* 8; (3) use of the reflective instead of passive voice, 10, *n.* 41 (*b*).

III. Government of — of choosing, appointing, etc., Gr. Intr., xviii.; 36, *n.* 4.

IV. (1) Verbs governing a direct and indirect object, 5, *n.* 22 (*b*), 109, *n.* 11 and 13; (2) government of insep. comp. — 2, *n.* 9 (*b*); (3) government of sep. comp. verbs, compounded with an, auf, bei, etc., 5, *n.* 25 (*a*); (4) government of — denoting motion, 24, *n.* 10; (5) government of — denoting want, 87, *n.* 10.

V. (1) Place of finite — containing *assertion*, 2, *n.* 5 (*b*); 3, *n.* 12 (*a*); (2) place of — in dependent sentences, 3, *n.* 12 (*b*).

VI. Intransitive —, how transformed into transitive ones, 29, *n.* 14.

Verbs, upon which the objective clause or the supine depends, followed by a preposition, 97, *n.* 2.

Verbal Forms in *-ing*, transl. of, (1) when preceded by *of*, *instead of*, *for*, or *without*, 7, *n.* 31 (*a*); (2) when used substantively, 15, *n.* 1.

Verfaſſung, when used for *Composition*, 62, *n.* 6.

Very, rendered (1) by ſelbſt, 23, *n.* 5; (2) by wahr, 37, *n.* 3.

Vorangehen, gov. dative, 5, *n.* 25 (*a*).

W.

Well (and good), rendered by gut, or wohl, 75, *n.* 4.

When, the conj., when rendered (1) by als, wenn, wann, worauf, 41, *n.* 9; (*b*) by wo, 50, *n.* 22.

While, when omitted, 36, *n.* 12.

Why, when rendered by wahrhaftig, 144, *n.* 1.

Wiſſen, use of, 162, *n.* 5.

Wohl, expressing probability, place of adv., 41, *n.* 6.

Words, when rendered by Worte, or Wörter, 84, *n.* 10.

Y.

Yet, when rendered by dennoch, 71, *n.* 11.

You, rendered (1) by man, Jemand, or Niemand, 38, *n.* 4; (2) by the second person singular, 71, *n.* 16; (3) by the second person plural, 90, *n.* 12.

THE END.

London: R. Clay, Sons, and Taylor.

A CLASSIFIED LIST

OF

EDUCATIONAL WORKS

PUBLISHED BY

GEORGE BELL & SONS.

Full Catalogues will be sent post free on application.

BIBLIOTHECA CLASSICA.

A Series of Greek and Latin Authors, with English Notes, edited by eminent Scholars. 8vo.

Æschylus. By F. A. Paley, M.A. 18*s.*

Cicero's Orations. By G. Long, M.A. 4 vols. 16*s.*, 14*s.*, 16*s.*, 18*s.*

Demosthenes. By R. Whiston, M.A. 2 vols. 16*s.* each.

Euripides. By F. A. Paley, M.A. 3 vols. 16*s.* each.

Homer. By F. A. Paley, M.A. Vol. I. 12*s.*; Vol. II. 14*s.*

Herodotus. By Rev. J. W. Blakesley, B.D. 2 vols. 32*s.*

Hesiod. By F. A. Paley, M.A. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Horace. By Rev. A. J. Macleane, M.A. 18*s.*

Juvenal and Persius. By Rev. A. J. Macleane, M.A. 12*s.*

Plato. By W. H. Thompson, D.D. 2 vols. 7*s.* 6*d.* each.

Sophocles. By Rev. F. H. Blaydes, M.A. Vol. I. 18*s.*

——— Philoctetes. Electra. Ajax and Trachiniæ. By F. A. Paley, M.A. 12*s.*

Tacitus: The Annals. By the Rev. P. Frost. 15*s.*

Terence. By E. St. J. Parry, M.A. 18*s.*

Virgil. By J. Conington, M.A. 3 vols. 12*s.*, 14*s.*, 14*s.*

An Atlas of Classical Geography; Twenty-four Maps. By W. Hughes and George Long, M.A. New edition, with coloured outlines. Imperial 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

Uniform with above.

A Complete Latin Grammar. By J. W. Donaldson, D.D. 3rd Edition. 14*s.*

GRAMMAR-SCHOOL CLASSICS.

A Series of Greek and Latin Authors, with English Notes. Fcap. 8vo.

Cæsar: De Bello Gallico. By George Long, M.A. 5*s.* 6*d.*

——— Books I.–III. For Junior Classes. By G. Long, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Catullus, Tibullus, and Propertius. Selected Poems. With I. By Rev. A. H. Wratislaw. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Cicero: De Senectute, De Amicitia, and Select Epistles. By George Long, M.A. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Cornelius Nepos. By Rev. J. F. Macmichael. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Homer: Iliad. Books I.–XII. By F. A. Paley, M.A. 6*s.* 6*d.*

Horace. With Life. By A. J. Macleane, M.A. 6*s.* 6*d.* [In 2 parts. 3*s.* 6*d.* each.]

Juvenal: Sixteen Satires. By H. Prior, M.A. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Martial: Select Epigrams. With Life. By F. A. Paley, M.A. 6*s.* 6*d.*

Ovid: the Fasti. By F. A. Paley, M.A. 5*s.*

Sallust: Catilina and Jugurtha. With Life. By G. Long, M.A. 5*s.*

Tacitus: Germania and Agricola. By Rev. P. Frost. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Virgil: Bucolics, Georgics, and Æneid, Books I.–IV. Abridged from Professor Conington's Edition. 5*s.* 6*d.*
(The Bucolics and Georgics in one volume. 3*s.*)

——— Æneid, Books V.–XII. Abridged from Professor Conington's Edition. 5*s.* 6*d.*

Xenophon: The Anabasis. With Life. By Rev. J. F. Macmichael. 5*s.*

——— The Cyropædia. By G. M. Gorham, M.A. 6*s.*

——— Memorabilia. By Percival Frost, M.A. 4*s.* 6*d.*

A Grammar-School Atlas of Classical Geography, containing Ten selected Maps. Imperial 8vo. 5*s.*

Uniform with the Series.

The New Testament, in Greek. With English Notes, &c. By Rev. J. F. Macmichael. 7*s.* 6*d.*

CAMBRIDGE GREEK AND LATIN TEXTS.

Æschylus. By F. A. Paley, M.A. 3*s.*

Cæsar: De Bello Gallico. By G. Long, M.A. 2*s.*

Cicero: De Senectute et de Amicitia, et Epistolæ Selectæ. By G. Long, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Ciceronis Orationes. Vol. I. (in Verrem.) By G. Long, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Euripides. By F. A. Paley, M.A. 3 vols. 3*s.* 6*d.* each.

Herodotus. By J. G. Blakesley, B.D. 2 vols. 7*s.*

Homeri Ilias. I.–XII. By F. A. Paley, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Horatius. By A. J. Macleane, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Juvenal et Persius. By A. J. Macleane, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Lucretius. By H. A. J. Munro, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Sallusti Crispi Catilina et Jugurtha. By G. Long, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Terenti Comœdiæ. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. 3*s.*

Thucydides. By J. G. Donaldson, D.D. 2 vols. 7*s.*

Virgilius. By J. Conington, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Xenophontis Expeditio Cyri. By J. F. Macmichael, B.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Novum Testamentum Græcum. By F. H. Scrivener, M.A. 4*s.* 6*d.* An edition with wide margin for notes, half bound, 12*s.*

CAMBRIDGE TEXTS WITH NOTES.

A Selection of the most usually read of the Greek and Latin Authors, Annotated for Schools. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. each.

Euripides. Alcestis.—Medea.—Hippolytus.—Hecuba.—Bacchæ. Ion.—Orestes.—Phoenissæ. By F. A. Paley, M.A.

Æschylus. Prometheus Vinctus.—Septem contra Thebas.—Agamemnon. By F. A. Paley, M.A.

Cicero's De Senectute—De Amicitia and Epistolæ Selectæ. By G. Long, M.A.

Ovid. Selections. By A. J. Macleane, M.A.

Others in preparation.

PUBLIC SCHOOL SERIES.

A Series of Classical Texts, annotated by well-known Scholars. Crown 8vo.

Aristophanes. The Peace. By F. A. Paley, M.A. *4s. 6d.*

——— The Acharnians. By F. A. Paley, M.A. *4s. 6d.*

——— The Frogs. By F. A. Paley, M.A. *4s. 6d.*

Cicero. The Letters to Atticus. Bk. I. By A. Pretor, M.A. *4s. 6d.*

Demosthenes de Falsa Legatione. By R. Shilleto, M.A. *6s.*

——— The Law of Leptines. By B. W. Beatson, M.A. *3s. 6d.*

Plato. The Apology of Socrates and Crito. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. 4th Edition. *4s. 6d.*

——— The Phædo. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. *5s. 6d.*

——— The Protagoras. By W. Wayte, M.A. *4s. 6d.*

——— The Euthyphro. By G. H. Wells. *3s.*

Plautus. The Aulularia. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. 2nd edition. *4s. 6d.*

——— Trinummus. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. 2nd edition. *4s. 6d.*

——— The Menaechmei. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. *4s. 6d.*

Sophoclis Trachiniæ. By A. Pretor, M.A. *4s. 6d.*

Terence. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. *10s. 6d.*

Theocritus. By F. A. Paley, M.A. *4s. 6d.*

Others in preparation.

CRITICAL AND ANNOTATED EDITIONS.

Ætna. By H. A. J. Munro, M.A. *3s. 6d.*

Aristophanis Comœdiæ. By H. A. Holden, LL.D. 8vo. 2 vols. 23s. 6d. Plays sold separately.

——— Pax. By F. A. Paley, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Catullus. By H. A. J. Munro, M.A. *7s. 6d.*

Horace. Quinti Horatii Flacci Opera. By H. A. J. Munro, M.A. Large 8vo. 1l. 1s.

Livy. The first five Books. By J. Prendeville. 12mo. roan, *5s.* Or Books I.-III. 3s. 6d. IV. and V. 3s. 6d.

Lucretius. Titi Lucretii Cari de Rerum Natura Libri Sex. With a Translation and Notes. By H. A. J. Munro, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo. Vol. I. Text, 16s. Vol. II. Translation, 6s. (Sold separately.)

Ovid. P. Ovidii Nasonis Heroides XIV. By A. Palmer, M.A. 8vo. 6*s*.

Propertius. Sex Aurelii Propertii Carmina. By F. A. Paley, M.A. 8vo. Cloth, 9*s*.

Sex. Propertii Elegiarum. Lib. IV. By A. Palmer. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s*.

Sophocles. The Ajax. By C. E. Palmer, M.A. 4*s*. 6*d*.

Thucydides. The History of the Peloponnesian War. By Richard Shilleto, M.A. Book I. 8vo. 6*s*. 6*d*. (Book II. *in the press*.)

Greek Testament. By Henry Alford, D.D. 4 vols. 8vo. (Sold separately.) Vol. I. 1*l*. 8*s*. Vol. II. 1*l*. 4*s*. Vol. III. 18*s*. Vol. IV. Part I. 18*s*.; Part II. 14*s*.; or in one Vol. 32*s*.

LATIN AND GREEK CLASS-BOOKS.

Auxilia Latina. A Series of Progressive Latin Exercises. By M. J. B. Baddeley, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. Part I. Accidence. 1*s*. 6*d*. Part II. Second Edition, 2*s*. Key, 2*s*. 6*d*.

Latin Prose Lessons. By A. J. Church, M.A. 2nd Edit. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s*. 6*d*.

Latin Exercises and Grammar Papers. By T. Collins, M.A. 2nd Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s*. 6*d*.

Unseen Papers in Prose and Verse. With Examination Questions. By T. Collins, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s*. 6*d*.

Analytical Latin Exercises. By C. P. Mason, B.A. 2nd Edit. 3*s*. 6*d*.

Scala Græca: a Series of Elementary Greek Exercises. By Rev. J. W. Davis, M.A., and R. W. Baddeley, M.A. 3rd Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s*. 6*d*.

Greek Verse Composition. By G. Preston, M.A. Crown 8vo. 4*s*. 6*d*.

By the Rev. P. Frost, M.A., St. John's College, Cambridge.

Eclogæ Latinæ; or, First Latin Reading-Book, with English Notes and a Dictionary. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s*. 6*d*.

Materials for Latin Prose Composition. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s*. 6*d*. Key, 4*s*.

A Latin Verse-Book. An Introductory Work on Hexameters and Pentameters. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s*. Key, 5*s*.

Analecta Græca Minora, with Introductory Sentences, English Notes, and a Dictionary. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s*. 6*d*.

Materials for Greek Prose Composition. New Edit. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s*. 6*d*. Key, 5*s*.

Florilegium Poeticum. Elegiac Extracts from Ovid and Tibullus. New Edition. With Notes. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s*.

By the Rev. F. E. Gretton.

A First Cheque-book for Latin Verse-makers. 1*s*. 6*d*.

A Latin Version for Masters. 2*s*. 6*d*.

Reddenda; or Passages with Parallel Hints for Translation into Latin Prose and Verse. Crown 8vo. 4*s*. 6*d*.

Reddenda Reddita (*see next page*).

By H. A. Holden, LL.D.

Foliorum Silvula. Part I. Passages for Translation into Latin Elegiac and Heroic Verse. 9th Edition. Post 8vo. 7*s*. 6*d*.

——— Part II. Select Passages for Translation into Latin Lyric and Comic Iambic Verse. 3rd Edition. Post 8vo. 5*s*.

——— Part III. Select Passages for Translation into Greek Verse. 3rd Edition. Post 8vo. 8*s*.

Folia Silvulæ, sive Eclogæ Poetarum Anglicorum in Latinum et Græcum conversæ. 8vo. Vol. I. 10*s.* 6*d.* Vol. II. 12*s.*

Foliorum Centuriæ. Select Passages for Translation into Latin and Greek Prose. 6th Edition. Post 8vo. 8*s.*

TRANSLATIONS, SELECTIONS, &c.

*** Many of the following books are well adapted for School Prizes.

Æschylus. Translated into English Prose by F. A. Paley, M.A. 2nd Edition. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

——— Translated into English Verse by Anna Swanwick. Crown 8vo. 2 vols. 12*s.*

——— Folio Edition, with 33 Illustrations after Flaxman. 2*l.* 2*s.*

Anthologia Græca. A Selection of Choice Greek Poetry, with Notes. By F. St. John Thackeray. *4th and Cheaper Edition.* 16mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Anthologia Latina. A Selection of Choice Latin Poetry, from Nævius to Boëthius, with Notes. By Rev. F. St. John Thackeray. Revised and Cheaper Edition. 16mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Aristophanes: The Peace. Text and Metrical Translation. By B. B. Rogers, M.A. Fcap. 4to. 7*s.* 6*d.*

——— The Wasps. Text and Metrical Translation. By B. B. Rogers, M.A. Fcap. 4to. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Corpus Poetarum Catinorum. Edited by Walker. 1 vol. 8vo. 18*s.*

Horace. The Odes and Carmen Sæculare. In English Verse by J. Conington, M.A. 7th edition. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.* 6*d.*

——— The Satires and Epistles. In English Verse by J. Conington, M.A. 4th edition. 6*s.* 6*d.*

——— Illustrated from Antique Gems by C. W. King, M.A. The text revised with Introduction by H. A. J. Munro, M.A. Large 8vo. 1*l.* 1*s.*

Horace's Odes. Englished and Imitated by various hands. Edited by C. W. F. Cooper. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

Mvsæ Etonenses, sive Carminvm Etonæ Conditorvm Delectvs. By Richard Okes. 2 vols. 8vo. 15*s.*

Propertius. Verse translations from Book V., with revised Latin Text. By F. A. Paley, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.*

Plato. Gorgias. Translated by E. M. Cope, M.A. 8vo. 7*s.*

——— Philebus. Translated by F. A. Paley, M.A. Small 8vo. 4*s.*

——— Theætetus. Translated by F. A. Paley, M.A. Small 8vo, 4*s.*

——— Analysis and Index of the Dialogues. By Dr. Day. Post 8vo. 5*s.*

Reddenda Reddita: Passages from English Poetry, with a Latin Verse Translation. By F. E. Gretton. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Sabrinæ Corolla in hortulis Regiæ Scholæ Salopiensis contexuerunt tres viri floribus legendis. Editio tertia. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

Sertum Carthusianum Floribus trium Seculorum Contextum. By W. H. Brown. 8vo. 14*s.*

Theocritus. In English Verse, by C. S. Calverley, M.A. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Translations into English and Latin. By C. S. Calverley, M.A. Post 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

——— By R. C. Jebb, M.A.; H. Jackson, M.A., and W. E. Currey, M.A. Crown 8vo. 8*s.*

——— into Greek and Latin Verse. By R. C. Jebb. 4to. cloth gilt. 10*s.* 6*d.*

REFERENCE VOLUMES.

A Latin Grammar. By T. H. Key, M.A. 6th Thousand. Post 8vo. 8s.

A Short Latin Grammar for Schools. By T. H. Key, M.A., F.R.S. 11th Edition. Post 8vo. 3s. 6d.

A Guide to the Choice of Classical Books. By J. B. Mayor, M.A. Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s.

The Theatre of the Greeks. By J. W. Donaldson, D.D. 8th Edition. Post 8vo. 5s.

A Dictionary of Latin and Greek Quotations. By H. T. Riley. Post 8vo. 5s. With Index Verborum, 6s.

A History of Roman Literature. By W. S. Teuffel, Professor at the University of Tübingen. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. 2 vols. Demy 8vo. 21s.

Student's Guide to the University of Cambridge. 4th Edition revised. Fcap. 8vo. [*Immediately.*

CLASSICAL TABLES.

Greek Verbs. A Catalogue of Verbs, Irregular and Defective; their leading formations, tenses, and inflexions, with Paradigms for conjugation, Rules for formation of tenses, &c. &c. By J. S. Baird, T.C.D. 2s. 6d.

Greek Accents (Notes on). By A. Barry, D.D. New Edition. 1s.

Homeric Dialect. Its Leading Forms and Peculiarities. By J. S. Baird, T.C.D. New edition, by W. G. Rutherford. 1s.

Greek Accidence. By the Rev. P. Frost, M.A. New Edition. 1s.

Latin Accidence. By the Rev. P. Frost, M.A. 1s.

Latin Versification. 1s.

Notabilia Quædam; or the Principal Tenses of most of the Irregular Greek Verbs and Elementary Greek, Latin, and French Construction. New edition. 1s.

Richmond Rules for the Ovidian Distich, &c. By J. Tate, M.A. 1s.

The Principles of Latin Syntax. 1s.

CAMBRIDGE SCHOOL AND COLLEGE TEXT-BOOKS.

A Series of Elementary Treatises for the use of Students in the Universities, Schools, and Candidates for the Public Examinations. Fcap. 8vo.

Arithmetic. By Rev. C. Elsee, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 10th Edit. 3s. 6d.

Algebra. By the Rev. C. Elsee, M.A. 5th Edit. 4s.

Arithmetic. By A. Wrigley, M.A. 3s. 6d.

——— A Progressive Course of Examples. With Answers. By J. Watson, M.A. 4th Edition. 2s. 6d.

Algebra. Progressive Course of Examples. By Rev. W. F. M'Michael, M.A., and R. Prowde Smith, M.A. 3s. 6d. With Answers. 4s. 6d.

Plane Astronomy, An Introduction to. By P. T. Main, M.A. 3rd Edition. 4*s.*

Conic Sections treated Geometrically. By W. H. Besant, M.A. 3rd Edition. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Elementary Conic Sections treated Geometrically. By W. H. Besant, M.A. [*In the Press.*

Statics, Elementary. By Rev. H. Goodwin, D.D. 2nd Edit. 3*s.*

Hydrostatics, Elementary. By W. H. Besant, M.A. 9th Edit. 4*s.*

Mensuration, An Elementary Treatise on. By B. T. Moore, M.A. 5*s.*

Newton's Principia, The First Three Sections of, with an Appendix; and the Ninth and Eleventh Sections. By J. H. Evans, M.A. 5th Edition, by P. T. Main, M.A. 4*s.*

Trigonometry, Elementary. By T. P. Hudson, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Optics, Geometrical. With Answers. By W. S. Aldis, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Analytical Geometry for Schools. By T. G. Vyvyan. 3rd Edit. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Greek Testament, Companion to the. By A. C. Barrett, A.M. 3rd Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

Book of Common Prayer, An Historical and Explanatory Treatise on the. By W. G. Humphry, B.D. 5th Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Music, Text-book of. By H. C. Banister 8th Edit. revised. 5*s.*

——— Concise History of. By Rev. H. G. Bonavia Hunt, B. Mus. Oxon. 4th Edition revised. 3*s.* 6*d.*

ARITHMETIC AND ALGEBRA.

See also foregoing Series.

Principles and Practice of Arithmetic. By J. Hind, M.A. 9th Edit. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Elements of Algebra. By J. Hind, M.A. 6th Edit. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Choice and Chance. A Treatise on Permutations and Combinations. By W. A. Whitworth. 2nd Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

GEOMETRY AND EUCLID.

Text-Book of Geometry. By T. S. Aldis, M.A. Small 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.* Part I. 2*s.* 6*d.* Part II. 2*s.*

The Elements of Euclid. By H. J. Hose. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.* Exercises separately, 1*s.*

——— The First Six Books, with Commentary by Dr. Lardner. 10th Edition. 8vo. 6*s.*

——— The First Two Books explained to Beginners. By C. P. Mason, B.A. 2nd Edition. Fcap 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The Enunciations and Figures to Euclid's Elements. By Rev. J. Brasse, D.D. 3rd Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* On Cards, in case, 5*s.* 6*d.* Without the Figures, 6*d.*

Exercises on Euclid and in Modern Geometry. By J. McDowell, B.A. Crown 8vo. 2nd Edition revised. 6*s.*

Geometrical Conic Sections. By W. H. Besant, M.A. 3rd Edit. 4s. 6d.

Elementary Geometrical Conic Sections. By W. H. Besant, M.A. [*In the Press.*

The Geometry of Conics. By C. Taylor, M.A. 2nd Edit. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

Solutions of Geometrical Problems, proposed at St. John's College from 1830 to 1846. By T. Gaskin, M.A. 8vo. 12s.

TRIGONOMETRY.

The Shrewsbury Trigonometry. By J. C. P. Aldous. Crown 8vo. 2s.

Elementary Trigonometry. By T. P. Hudson, M.A. 3s. 6d.

Elements of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry. By J. Hind, M.A. 5th Edition. 12mo. 6s.

An Elementary Treatise on Mensuration. By B. T. Moore, M.A. 5s.

ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY AND DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS.

An Introduction to Analytical Plane Geometry. By W. P. Turnbull, M.A. 8vo. 12s.

Treatise on Plane Co-ordinate Geometry. By M. O'Brien, M.A. 8vo. 9s.

Problems on the Principles of Plane Co-ordinate Geometry. By W. Walton, M.A. 8vo. 16s.

Trilinear Co-ordinates, and Modern Analytical Geometry of Two Dimensions. By W. A. Whitworth, M.A. 8vo. 16s.

An Elementary Treatise on Solid Geometry. By W. S. Aldis, M.A. 2nd Edition revised. 8vo. 8s.

Geometrical Illustrations of the Differential Calculus. By M. B. Pell. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

Elementary Treatise on the Differential Calculus. By M. O'Brien, M.A. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Notes on Roulettes and Glissettes. By W. H. Besant, M.A. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Elliptic Functions, Elementary Treatise on. By A. Cayley, M.A. Demy 8vo. 15s.

MECHANICS & NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.

Statics, Elementary. By H. Goodwin, D.D. Fcap. 8vo. 2nd Edition. 3s.

Statics, Treatise on. By S. Earnshaw, M.A. 4th Edition. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Dynamics, A Treatise on Elementary. By W. Garnett, M.A. 2nd Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

Statics and Dynamics, Problems in. By W. Walton, M.A. New Edition. Crown 8vo.

Theoretical Mechanics, Problems in. By W. Walton. 2nd Edit. revised and enlarged. Demy 8vo. 16*s.*

Mechanics, An Elementary Treatise on. By Prof. Potter. 4th Edition revised. 8*s.* 6*d.*

Hydrostatics, Elementary. By Prof. Potter. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Hydrostatics. By W. H. Besant, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 9th Edition. 4*s.*

Hydromechanics, A Treatise on. By W. H. Besant, M.A. 8vo. New Edition revised. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Dynamics of a Particle, A Treatise on the. By W. H. Besant, M.A. [*Preparing.*

Dynamics of a Rigid Body, Solutions of Examples on the. By W. N. Griffin, M.A. 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

Motion, An Elementary Treatise on. By J. R. Lunn, M.A. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Optics, Geometrical. By W. S. Aldis, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Double Refraction, A Chapter on Fresnel's Theory of. By W. S. Aldis, M.A. 8vo. 2*s.*

Optics, An Elementary Treatise on. By Prof. Potter. Part I. 3rd Edition. 9*s.* 6*d.* Part II. 12*s.* 6*d.*

Optics, Physical; or the Nature and Properties of Light. By Prof. Potter, A.M. 6*s.* 6*d.* Part II. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Heat, An Elementary Treatise on. By W. Garnett, M.A. Crown 8vo. 2nd Edition revised. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Geometrical Optics, Figures Illustrative of. From Schelbach. By W. B. Hopkins. Folio. Plates. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Newton's Principia, The First Three Sections of, with an Appendix; and the Ninth and Eleventh Sections. By J. H. Evans, M.A. 5th Edition. Edited by P. T. Main, M.A. 4*s.*

Astronomy, An Introduction to Plane. By P. T. Main, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. cloth. 4*s.*

Astronomy, Practical and Spherical. By R. Main, M.A. 8vo. 14*s.*

Astronomy, Elementary Chapters on, from the 'Astronomie Physique' of Biot. By H. Goodwin, D.D. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Pure Mathematics and Natural Philosophy, A Compendium of Facts and Formulæ in. By G. R. Smalley. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Elementary Course of Mathematics. By H. Goodwin, D.D. 6th Edition. 8vo. 16*s.*

Problems and Examples, adapted to the 'Elementary Course of Mathematics.' 3rd Edition. 8vo. 5*s.*

Solutions of Goodwin's Collection of Problems and Examples. By W. W. Hutt, M.A. 3rd Edition, revised and enlarged. 8vo. 9*s.*

Pure Mathematics, Elementary Examples in. By J. Taylor. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Euclid, Mechanical. By the late W. Whewell, D.D. 5th Edition. 5*s.*

Mechanics of Construction. With numerous Examples. By S. Fenwick, F.R.A.S. 8vo. 12*s.*

Anti-Logarithms, Table of. By H. E. Filipowski. 3rd Edition. 8vo. 15*s.*

Mathematical and other Writings of R. L. Ellis, M.A. 8vo. 16*s.*

Pure and Applied Calculation, Notes on the Principles of. By Rev. J. Challis, M.A. Demy 8vo. 15*s.*

Physics, The Mathematical Principle of. By Rev. J. Challis, M.A. Demy 8vo. 5*s.*

HISTORY, TOPOGRAPHY, &c.

Rome and the Campagna. By R. Burn, M.A. With 85 Engravings and 26 Maps and Plans. With Appendix. 4to. 3*l.* 3*s.*

Old Rome. A Handbook for Travellers. By R. Burn, M.A. With Maps and Plans. Demy 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Modern Europe. By Dr. T. H. Dyer. 2nd Edition revised and continued. 5 vols. Demy 8vo. 2*l.* 12*s.* 6*d.*

The History of the Kings of Rome. By Dr. T. H. Dyer. 8vo. 16*s.*

A Plea for Livy. By Dr. T. H. Dyer. 8vo. 1*s.*

Roma Regalis. By Dr. T. H. Dyer. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The History of Pompeii: its Buildings and Antiquities. By T. H. Dyer. 3rd Edition, brought down to 1874. Post 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Ancient Athens: its History, Topography, and Remains. By T. H. Dyer. Super-royal 8vo. Cloth. 1*l.* 5*s.*

The Decline of the Roman Republic. By G. Long. 5 vols. 8vo. 14*s.* each.

A History of England during the Early and Middle Ages. By C. H. Pearson, M.A. 2nd Edition revised and enlarged. 8vo. Vol. I. 16*s.* Vol. II. 14*s.*

Historical Maps of England. By C. H. Pearson. Folio. 2nd Edition revised. 31*s.* 6*d.*

History of England, 1800–15. By Harriet Martineau, with new and copious Index. 1 vol. 3*s.* 6*d.*

History of the Thirty Years' Peace, 1815–46. By Harriet Martineau. 4 vols. 3*s.* 6*d.* each.

A Practical Synopsis of English History. By A. Bowes. 4th Edition. 8vo. 2*s.*

Student's Text-Book of English and General History. By D. Beale. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Lives of the Queens of England. By A. Strickland. Library Edition, 8 vols. 7*s.* 6*d.* each. Cheaper Edition, 6 vols. 5*s.* each. Abridged Edition, 1 vol. 6*s.* 6*d.*

Eginhard's Life of Karl the Great (Charlemagne). Translated with Notes, by W. Glaister, M.A., B.C.L. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Outlines of Indian History. By A. W. Hughes. Small post 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Elements of General History. By Prof. Tytler. New Edition, brought down to 1874. Small post 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

ATLASES.

An Atlas of Classical Geography. 24 Maps. By W. Hughes and G. Long, M.A. New Edition. Imperial 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

A Grammar-School Atlas of Classical Geography. Ten Maps selected from the above. New Edition. Imperial 8vo. 5*s.*

First Classical Maps. By the Rev. J. Tate, M.A. 3rd Edition. Imperial 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Standard Library Atlas of Classical Geography. Imp. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

PHILOLOGY.

WEBSTER'S DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. Re-edited by N. Porter and C. A. Goodrich. With Dr. Mahn's Etymology. 1 vol. 21*s.* With Appendices and 70 additional pages of Illustrations, 31*s.* 6*d.*

'THE BEST PRACTICAL ENGLISH DICTIONARY EXTANT.'—*Quarterly Review*, 1873.

Prospectuses, with specimen pages, post free on application.

New Dictionary of the English Language. Combining Explanation with Etymology, and copiously illustrated by Quotations from the best Authorities. By Dr. Richardson. New Edition, with a Supplement. 2 vols. 4to. 4*l.* 14*s.* 6*d.*; half russia, 5*l.* 15*s.* 6*d.*; russia, 6*l.* 12*s.* Supplement separately. 4to. 12*s.*

An 8vo. Edit. without the Quotations, 15*s.*; half russia, 20*s.*; russia, 24*s.*

Supplementary English Glossary. By T. L. O. Davies. Demy 8vo. *In the press.*

The Elements of the English Language. By E. Adams, Ph.D. 15th Edition. Post 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Philological Essays. By T. H. Key, M.A., F.R.S. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Language, its Origin and Development. By T. H. Key, M.A., F.R.S. 8vo. 14*s.*

Synonyms and Antonyms of the English Language. By Archdeacon Smith. 2nd Edition. Post 8vo. 5*s.*

Synonyms Discriminated. By Archdeacon Smith. Demy 8vo. 16*s.*

The Queen's English. A Manual of Idiom and Usage. By Dean Alford. 5th Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

Etymological Glossary of nearly 2500 English Words in Common Use derived from the Greek. By the Rev. E. J. Boyce. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

A Syriac Grammar. By G. Phillips, D.D. 3rd Edition, enlarged. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

A Grammar of the Arabic Language. By Rev. W. J. Beaumont, M.A. 12mo. 7*s.*

Who Wrote It? A Dictionary of Common Poetical Quotations. 3rd Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

DIVINITY, MORAL PHILOSOPHY, &c.

Novum Testamentum Græcum, Textus Stephanici, 1550. By F. H. Scrivener, A.M., LL.D. New Edition. 16mo. 4*s.* 6*d.* Also on Writing Paper, with Wide Margin. Half-bound. 12*s.*

By the same Author.

Codex Bezæ Cantabrigiensis. 4to. 26*s.*

A Full Collation of the Codex Sinaiticus with the Received Text of the New Testament, with Critical Introduction. 2nd Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

A Plain Introduction to the Criticism of the New Testament. With Forty Facsimiles from Ancient Manuscripts. 2nd Edition. 8vo. 16*s.*

Six Lectures on the Text of the New Testament. For English Readers. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

The New Testament for English Readers. By the late H. Alford, D.D. Vol. I. Part I. 3rd Edit. 12*s.* Vol. I. Part II. 2nd Edit. 10*s.* 6*d.* Vol. II. Part I. 2nd Edit. 16*s.* Vol. II. Part II. 2nd Edit. 16*s.*

The Greek Testament. By the late H. Alford, D.D. Vol. I. 6th Edit. 1*l.* 8*s.* Vol. II. 6th Edit. 1*l.* 4*s.* Vol. III. 5th Edit. 18*s.* Vol. IV. Part I. 4th Edit. 18*s.* Vol. IV. Part II. 4th Edit. 14*s.* Vol. IV. 1*l.* 12*s.*

Companion to the Greek Testament. By A. C. Barrett, M.A. 3rd Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

Liber Apologeticus. The Apology of Tertullian, with English Notes, by H. A. Woodham, LL.D. 2nd Edition. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

The Book of Psalms. A New Translation, with Introductions, &c. By the Very Rev. J. J. Stewart Perowne, D.D. 8vo. Vol. I. 4th Edition, 18*s.* Vol. II. 4th Edit. 16*s.*

——— Abridged for Schools. 3rd Edition. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

History of the Articles of Religion. By C. H. Hardwick. 3rd Edition. Post 8vo. 5*s.*

History of the Creeds. By J. R. Lumby, D.D. 2nd Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Pearson on the Creed. Carefully printed from an early edition. With Analysis and Index by E. Walford, M.A. Post 8vo. 5*s.*

Doctrinal System of St. John as Evidence of the Date of his Gospel. By Rev. J. J. Lias, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

An Historical and Explanatory Treatise on the Book of Common Prayer. By Rev. W. G. Humphry, B.D. 5th Edition, enlarged. Small post 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

The New Table of Lessons Explained. By Rev. W. G. Humphry, B.D. Fcap. 1*s.* 6*d.*

A Commentary on the Gospels for the Sundays and other Holy Days of the Christian Year. By Rev. W. Denton, A.M. New Edition. 3 vols. 8vo. 54*s.* Sold separately.

Commentary on the Epistles for the Sundays and other Holy Days of the Christian Year. By Rev. W. Denton, A.M. 2 vols. 36*s.* Sold separately.

Commentary on the Acts. By Rev. W. Denton, A.M. Vol. I. 8vo. 18*s.* Vol. II. 14*s.*

Notes on the Catechism. By Rev. A. Barry, D.D. 5th Edit. Fcap. 2*s.*

Catechetical Hints and Helps. By Rev. E. J. Boyce, M.A. 3rd Edition, revised. Fcap. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Examination Papers on Religious Instruction. By Rev. E. J. Boyce. Sewed. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Church Teaching for the Church's Children. An Exposition of the Catechism. By the Rev. F. W. Harper. Sq. fcap. 2*s.*

The Winton Church Catechist. Questions and Answers on the Teaching of the Church Catechism. By the late Rev. J. S. B. Monsell, LL.D. 3rd Edition. Cloth, 3*s.*; or in Four Parts, sewed.

The Church Teacher's Manual of Christian Instruction. By Rev. M. F. Sadler. 16th Thousand. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Short Explanation of the Epistles and Gospels of the Christian Year, with Questions. Royal 32mo. 2*s.* 6*d.*; calf, 4*s.* 6*d.*

Butler's Analogy of Religion; with Introduction and Index by Rev. Dr. Steere. New Edition. Fcap. 3*s.* 6*d.*

——— **Three Sermons on Human Nature,** and Dissertation on Virtue. By W. Whewell, D.D. 4th Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Lectures on the History of Moral Philosophy in England. By W. Whewell, D.D. Crown 8vo. 8*s.*

Elements of Morality, including Polity. By W. Whewell, D.D. New Edition, in 8vo. 15*s.*

Astronomy and General Physics (Bridgewater Treatise). New Edition. 5*s.*

Kent's Commentary on International Law. By J. T. Abdy, LL.D. New and Cheap Edition. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

A Manual of the Roman Civil Law. By G. Leapingwell, LL.D. 8vo. 12*s.*

FOREIGN CLASSICS.

A series for use in Schools, with English Notes, grammatical and explanatory, and renderings of difficult idiomatic expressions. Fcap. 8vo.

Schiller's Wallenstein. By Dr. A. Buchheim. New Edit. 6*s.* 6*d.* Or the Lager and Piccolomini, 3*s.* 6*d.* Wallenstein's Tod, 3*s.* 6*d.*

——— **Maid of Orleans.** By Dr. W. Wagner. 3*s.* 6*d.*

——— **Maria Stuart.** By V. Kastner. 3*s.*

Goethe's Hermann and Dorothea. By E. Bell, M.A., and E. Wölfel. 2*s.* 6*d.*

German Ballads, from Uhland, Goethe, and Schiller. By C. L. Bielefeld. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Charles XII., par Voltaire. By L. Direy. 3rd Edition. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Aventures de Télémaque, par Fénélon. By C. J. Delille. 2nd Edition. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Select Fables of La Fontaine. By F. E. A. Gasc. New Edition. 3*s.*

Picciola, by X. B. Saintine. By Dr. Dubuc. 4th Edition. 3*s.* 6*d.*

FRENCH CLASS-BOOKS.

Twenty Lessons in French. With Vocabulary, giving the Pronunciation. By W. Brebner. Post 8vo. 4*s.*

French Grammar for Public Schools. By Rev. A. C. Clapin, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 7th Edit. 2*s.* 6*d.*

French Primer. By Rev. A. C. Clapin, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 3rd Edit. 1*s.*

Primer of French Philology. By Rev. A. C. Clapin. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.*

Le Nouveau Tresor; or, French Student's Companion. By M. E. S. 16th Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

F. E. A. GASC'S FRENCH COURSE.

First French Book. Fcap 8vo. 76th Thousand. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Second French Book. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Key to First and Second French Books. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

French Fables for Beginners, in Prose, with Index. New Edition. 12mo. 2*s.*

Select Fables of La Fontaine. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.*

Histoires Amusantes et Instructives. With Notes. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Practical Guide to Modern French Conversation. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

French Poetry for the Young. With Notes. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.*

Materials for French Prose Composition; or, Selections from the best English Prose Writers. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.* Key, 6*s.*

Prosateurs Contemporains. With Notes. 8vo. New Edition, revised. 5*s.*

Le Petit Compagnon; a French Talk-Book for Little Children. 16mo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

An Improved Modern Pocket Dictionary of the French and English Languages. 25th Thousand, with additions. 16mo. Cloth. 4*s.* Also in 2 vols., in neat leatherette, 5*s.*

Modern French-English and English-French Dictionary. 2nd Edition, revised. In 1 vol. 12*s.* 6*d.* (formerly 2 vols. 25*s.*)

GOMBERT'S FRENCH DRAMA.

Being a Selection of the best Tragedies and Comedies of Molière, Racine, Corneille, and Voltaire. With Arguments and Notes by A. Gombert. New Edition, revised by F. E. A. Gasc. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* each; sewed, 6*d.*

CONTENTS.

MOLIERE:—Le Misanthrope. L'Avare. Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme. Le Tartuffe. Le Malade Imaginaire. Les Femmes Savantes. Les Fourberies de Scapin. Les Précieuses Ridicules. L'Ecole des Femmes. L'Ecole des Maris. Le Médecin malgré Lui.

RACINE:—Phédre. Esther. Athalie. Iphigénie. Les Plaideurs. Thébaïde; or, Les Frères Ennemis. Andromaque. Britannicus.

P. CORNEILLE:—Le Cid. Horace. Cinna. Polyeucte.

VOLTAIRE:—Zaïre.

GERMAN CLASS-BOOKS.

Materials for German Prose Composition. By Dr Buchheim. 6th Edition, revised, with an Index. Fcap. 4*s.* 6*d.* Key, 3*s.*

A German Grammar for Public Schools. By the Rev. A. C. Clapin and F. Holl Müller. 2nd Edition. Fcap. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Kotzebue's Der Gefangene. With Notes by Dr. W. Stromberg. 1*s*

ENGLISH CLASS-BOOKS.

The Elements of the English Language. By E. Adams, Ph.D. 15th Edition. Post 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

The Rudiments of English Grammar and Analysis. By E. Adams, Ph.D. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.*

By C. P. MASON, Fellow of Univ. Coll. London.

First Notions of Grammar for Young Learners. Fcap. 8vo. Cloth. 8*d.*

First Steps in English Grammar for Junior Classes. Demy 18mo. New Edition. 1*s.*

Outlines of English Grammar for the use of Junior Classes. 6th Edition. Crown 8vo. 2*s.*

English Grammar, including the Principles of Grammatical Analysis. 23rd Edition. Post 8vo. 3s. 6d.

A Shorter English Grammar, with copious Exercises. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

English Grammar Practice, being the Exercises separately. 1s.

The Analysis of Sentences applied to Latin. Post 8vo. 1s. 6d.

Analytical Latin Exercises: Accidence and Simple Sentences, &c. Post 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Edited for Middle-Class Examinations.

With Notes on the Analysis and Parsing, and Explanatory Remarks.

Milton's Paradise Lost, Book I. With Life. 3rd Edit. Post 8vo. 2s

——— Book II. With Life. 2nd Edit. Post 8vo. 2s.

——— Book III. With Life. Post 8vo. 2s.

Goldsmith's Deserted Village. With Life. Post 8vo. 1s. 6d.

Cowper's Task, Book II. With Life. Post 8vo. 2s.

Thomson's Spring. With Life. Post 8vo. s.

——— Winter. With Life. Post 8vo. 2s.

Practical Hints on Teaching. By Rev. J. Menet, M.A. 4th Edit. Crown 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.; paper, 2s.

Test Lessons in Dictation. Paper cover, 1s. 6d.

Questions for Examinations in English Literature. By Rev. W. W. Skeat. 2s. 6d.

Drawing Copies. By P. H. Delamotte. Oblong 8vo. 12s. Sold also in parts at 1s. each.

Poetry for the School-room. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

Select Parables from Nature, for Use in Schools. By Mrs. A. Gatty. Fcap. 8vo. Cloth. 1s.

School Record for Young Ladies' Schools. 6d.

Geographical Text-Book; a Practical Geography. By M. E. S. 12mo. 2s.
The Blank Maps done up separately, 4to. 2s. coloured.

A First Book of Geography. By Rev. C. A. Johns, B.A., F.L.S. &c. Illustrated. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

Loudon's (Mrs.) Entertaining Naturalist. New Edition. Revised by W. S. Dallas, F.L.S. 5s.

——— **Handbook of Botany.** New Edition, greatly enlarged by D. Wooster. Fcap. 2s. 6d.

The Botanist's Pocket-Book. With a copious Index. By W. R. Hayward. 2nd Edit. revised. Crown 8vo. Cloth limp. 4s. 6d.

Experimental Chemistry, founded on the Work of Dr. Stöckhardt By C. W. Heaton. Post 8vo. 5s.

Double Entry Elucidated. By B. W. Foster. 7th Edit. 4to. 8s 6d.

A New Manual of Book-keeping. By P. Crellin, Accountant. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Picture School-Books. In Simple Language, with numerous Illustrations. Royal 16mo.

School Primer. 6*d.*—School Reader. By J. Tilleard. 1*s.*—Poetry Book for Schools. 1*s.*—The Life of Joseph. 1*s.*—The Scripture Parables. By the Rev. J. E. Clarke. 1*s.*—The Scripture Miracles. By the Rev. J. E. Clarke. 1*s.*—The New Testament History. By the Rev. J. G. Wood, M.A. 1*s.*—The Old Testament History. By the Rev. J. G. Wood, M.A. 1*s.*—The Story of Bunyan's Pilgrim's Progress. 1*s.*—The Life of Christopher Columbus. By Sarah Crompton. 1*s.*—The Life of Martin Luther. By Sarah Crompton. 1*s.*

BOOKS FOR YOUNG READERS.

In 8 vols. Limp cloth, 6*d.* each.

The Cat and the Hen; Sam and his Dog Red-leg; Bob and Tom Lee; A Wreck——The New-born Lamb; Rosewood Box; Poor Fan; Wise Dog——The Three Monkeys——Story of a Cat, told by Herself——The Blind Boy; The Mute Girl; A New Tale of Babes in a Wood——The Dey and the Knight; The New Bank-note; The Royal Visit; A King's Walk on a Winter's Day——Queen Bee and Busy Bee——Gull's Crag, a Story of the Sea.

BELL'S READING-BOOKS.

FOR SCHOOLS AND PAROCHIAL LIBRARIES.

The popularity which the 'Books for Young Readers' have attained is a sufficient proof that teachers and pupils alike approve of the use of interesting stories, with a simple plot in place of the dry combination of letters and syllables, making no impression on the mind, of which elementary reading-books generally consist.

The Publishers have therefore thought it advisable to extend the application of this principle to books adapted for more advanced readers.

Now Ready. Post 8vo. Strongly bound.

Masterman Ready. By Captain Marryat, R.N. 1*s.* 6*d.*
The Settlers in Canada. By Captain Marryat. R.N. 1*s.* 6*d.*
Parables from Nature. (Selected.) By Mrs. Gatty. 1*s.*
Friends in Fur and Feathers. By Gwynfryn. 1*s.*
Robinson Crusoe. 1*s.* 6*d.*
Andersen's Danish Tales. (Selected.) By E. Bell, M.A. 1*s.*
Southey's Life of Nelson. (Abridged.) 1*s.*
Grimm's German Tales. (Selected.) By E. Bell, M.A. 1*s.*
Life of the Duke of Wellington, with Maps and Plans. 1*s.*
Marie; or, Glimpses of Life in France. By A. R. Ellis. 1*s.*

Others in Preparation.

LONDON:
Printed by STRANGEWAYS & SONS, Tower Street, Upper St. Martin's Lane.

LaG.Gr.
B9194m

Author Buchheim, Karl Adolf
Title Materials for German prose composition.

221822

University of Toronto
Library

DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU